

An Introduction to Persian

An Introduction to Persian

Revised Fourth Edition

Wheeler M. Thackston



lbex Publishers, Bethesda, Maryland An Introduction to Persian Revised Fourth Edition by Wheeler M. Thackston

Copyright © 2009 Ibex Publishers, Inc. '

ISBN-10: 1-58814-055-5 ISBN-13: 978-1-58814-055-5

Calligraphy on cover (16th-17th Centuries) courtesy of the Sackler Gallery of Art.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or retransmitted in any manner whatsoever except in the form of a review, without permission from the publisher.

Manufactured in the United States of America

The paper used in this book meets the minimum requirements of the American National Standard for Information Services—Permanence of Paper for Printed Library Materials, ANSI Z39.48–1984

A CD set of the Persian sections of this book is available. (ISBN-10: 1-58814-057-1 / ISBN-13: 978-1-58814-057-9).

A Key to Exercises is available. (ISBN-10: 1-58814-054-7 / ISBN-13: 978-1-58814-054-8)

Ibex Publishers, Inc.
Post Office Box 30087
Bethesda, Maryland 20824
Telephone: 301–718–8188
Facsimile: 301–907–8707
www.ibexpublishers.com

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CATALOGING-IN-PUBLICATION INFORMATION

Thackston, W. M. (Wheeler McIntosh), 1944-An introduction to Persian / Wheeler M. Thackston. — Rev. 4th ed. p. cm. ISBN 978-1-58814-055-5 (alk. paper) Persian language—Grammar. I. Title.

PK6235.T47 2007 491'.55—dc22

فهرست مندرجات Contents

Pṛefaceix
Introduction: Phonology and Scriptxi
The Phonology of Persianxiii
Syllabificationxvi
Stress xvii
The Persian Alphabetxviii
Pronunciation Exercisexxxiv
Reading Exericisexxxv
Part One: The Grammar of Modern Persian1
Lesson One
§ 1 Word Order. § 2 Stress. § 3 Gender. § 4 State of the noun. § 5 Orthography of the indefinite enclitic. § 6 Adjectival order. § 7 The plural. § 8 The non-specific plural.
Lesson Two8
§ 9 Demonstrative adjectives and pronouns. § 10 Verbal agreement with the plural. § 11 Co-ordination. § 12 Adverbs. § 13 Interrogative sentences. Supplementary Vocabulary: Courtesy Phrases.
Lesson Three
§ 14 The ezâfe. § 15 The noun in the predicate position.
Lesson Four
§ 16 Pronouns. § 17 Present copulas. § 18 The negative copula. § 19 کیست kist and چیست chist. Supplementary Vocabulary: Courtesy phrases.

Lesson Five26
§ 20 The vocative. § 21 The possessive ezâfe. § 22 The long copula.
Review I
Lesson Six
§ 23 The infinitive. § 24 The past stem and the past absolute tense. § 25 The specific direct-object marker $\sqrt{-r\hat{a}}$. Supplementary Vocabulary: Countries, Peoples, and Languages.
Lesson Seven41
§ 26 Compound verbs. § 27 the continuous prefix. § 28 The past participle. § 29 The past narrative tense.
Lesson Eight
§ 30 Uses of چه che and کدام kodâm. § 31 Comparison of adjectives.
Lesson Nine
§ 32 Other plurals. § 33 Pronominal possessives.
Lesson Ten60
§ 34 The present stem. § 35 The present indicative.
Review II66
Lesson Eleven
§ 36 Pronominal enclitics. § 37 Reflexive pronouns.
Lesson Twelve75
§ 38 Cardinal numbers. § 39 Ordinal numbers. Supplementary vocabulary: Weights and Measures.
Lesson Thirteen
§ 40 Relative clauses. § 41 The past perfect tense. § 42 The past perfect narrative tense.
Lesson Fourteen90
§ 43 The future tense. § 44 Other numerical expressions. Supplementary Vocabulary: Family Relationships.
Lesson Fifteen
§ 45 The imperative. § 46 Resumptive-sentence construction. Supplementary Vocabulary: Foodstuffs.
Review III
Lesson Sixteen

Uses of the present subjunctive I. Supplementary Vocabulary: Articles of Clothing.
Lesson Seventeen
§ 50 Impersonal constructions. § 51 Uses of the present subjuctive II.
Lesson Eighteen
§ 52 Totally impersonal constructions.§ 53 The participial absolute.§ 54 Reported speech and verbs of sense perception.
Lesson Nineteen 127
§ 55 The past subjunctive. § 56 Back-formation of infinitives and denominative verbs. § 57 Temportal use of $\sqrt[3]{ke}$. § 58 Impersonals with $\sqrt[3]{adam}$.
Lesson Twenty
§ 59 Uses of the subjunctive III: Adjectival clauses. § 60 Uses of the infinitive. Supplementary Vocabulary: Common Materials.
Review IV
Additional Vocabulary: Academic Fields and Related Vocabulary143
*L'esson Twenty-One
§ 61 Conditionals. § 62 Other irrealis constructions. § 63 Expressions of temporal duration. Additional Vocabulary: Mishaps.
Lesson Twenty-Two
Lesson Twenty-Two
§ 64 Uses of the subjunctive IV: Adverbial clauses. § 65 Participial
§ 64 Uses of the subjunctive IV: Adverbial clauses. § 65 Participial forms. Additional Vocabulary: Travel.
§ 64 Uses of the subjunctive IV: Adverbial clauses. § 65 Participial forms. Additional Vocabulary: Travel. Lesson Twenty-Three
§ 64 Uses of the subjunctive IV: Adverbial clauses. § 65 Participial forms. Additional Vocabulary: Travel. Lesson Twenty-Three
§ 64 Uses of the subjunctive IV: Adverbial clauses. § 65 Participial forms. Additional Vocabulary: Travel. Lesson Twenty-Three
§ 64 Uses of the subjunctive IV: Adverbial clauses. § 65 Participial forms. Additional Vocabulary: Travel. Lesson Twenty-Three

Part Two: Classical and Archaic Usages
§ 78 The majhul vowels. § 79 Euphonic -d § 80 The optative and negative imperative. § 81 The vocative enclitic. § 82 Dative usages. § 83 Circumpositions. § 84 The perfective aspect; the be- prefix. § 85 ($\dot{\upsilon}$) \sim Cho(n). § 86 The continuous marker \sim hami. § 87 The past habitual and conditional. § 88 The archaic present stem of budan. § 89 The archaic negative copula. § 90 The archaic past narrative. § 91 The gnomic past.
Part Three: Colloquial Transformations
§ 92 Phonological transformations. § 93 The copulas. § 94 Verbal inflections. § 95 Reduced, altered, and contracted verbal stems. § 96 The present and past progressive. § 97 Direct-object marker. § 98 The emphasizing particle <i>ke</i> . § 99 Pronominal enclitics. § 100 Prepositions.
Appendix A: The Uses of tâ
Appendix B: Telling Time, Days of the Week, Months of the Year, Reading
Dates, Arithmetical Operations
Examples of Contemporary Persian Prose
(۱) کاشی ترمو (۲) خسرو شافینی، عینک طبّی (۳) ایرج پُرسگزاد، دائی جان ناپلؤن (۴) رضا بابامقدم، مرزبان (۵) فریدون تنک ابنی، جدول کلات متقاطع (ع) بهرام صادقی، اذان
غروب (۷) محد بهمن بیکی، بخارای من ایل من (۸) صل دق مدایت، طلب آمرزش
Examples of Classical Persian Prose
(۱) امیر عنصر المعالی، قابو سامه (۲) نظام اللک، ساستنامه (۳) ابوالمعالی نصر الله، کلیله و
دمنهٔ ببرامثابی (۴) تعدی، گلتان (۵) نظامی عروضی، چیار مقاله
Vocabularies
English-Persian248
Persian-English254
Index

م پیشکفتار

Preface

This book is intended to serve as an introduction on the elementary level to the modern Persian language. A member of the Indo-Iranian branch of the Indo-European family, this language is called New Persian to distinguish it from Old Persian, the language of the Achaemenid Empire (6th—4th centuries B.C.), and from Middle Persian, the language of the Sassanians (3rd—7th centuries A.D.). In its present form Persian emerged during the tenth century of our era and, with the exception of certain items of vocabulary and a very few features of grammar and syntax, has changed remarkably little since then. In its classical form, Persian became the language par excellence of poetry and mystical expression and, especially after the Mongol invasion of the thirteenth century, was the medium of culture and literature throughout the non-Arab Islamic world. From Constantinople to Bengal and from Central Asia to India, Persian reigned for centuries as the language of high culture and belles-lettres.

At present Persian is the official language of Iran. Although there are areas in Iran where Persian is not the mother tongue (Azerbaijan, Kurdistan, Luristan, e.g.), it is spoken by almost everyone. In Afghanistan, where it is often called Dari, it enjoys official status along with Pashto; it is the native language of around half the population and is spoken by all educated persons. Called Tajiki, it is the language of Tajikistan, where until recently it was written in the Cyrillic alphabet.

Persian is remarkably simple in terms of formal grammar: no gender, no noun inflection, no adjectival agreement, and no irregularities in verbal conjugation. However—and rather like English in this respect—for what it lacks in inflection it more than makes up in syntactic and idiomatic complexity; and it is to the syntax and idiom of Persian that the student's attention should be turned from the very beginning. The importance of understanding the proper relationships among the various members of a Persian sentence cannot be overstated (especially in view of the fact that the most important indicator of syntactic relationships is not usually indicated in the writing system), for even the simplest ex-

The Phonology of Persian

Vowels and glides. International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA) equivalents are given in square brackets for those familiar with them.

i	и
e	0
a	â
ay,	aw

- is a high front open vowel, [i], like the 'ea' in 'please' but without the 'y'-glide characteristic of English. Contrast سي si with 'sea.'
- e is a middle front open vowel [ɛ], like the 'e' in 'bet.' This vowel is in fairly free variation with [ɪ], like the 'i' in 'bit,' i.e. while 'bet' and 'bit' are two different words in English, they would be two variant pronunciations of the same word in Persian. Word-finally this vowel is always realized as [ɛ]. Compare شن shen and 'shin.'
- a is a low front open vowel, IPA [æ], like the 'a' in 'cat' but slightly lower. Word-finally this phoneme is always realized as [ɛ] in modern Iranian pronunciation, which will be reflected in the transcription employed here. Compare با bad and 'bad,' ج jam and 'jam.'
- u is a high back rounded vowel [u], like the 'oo' of 'moon' but without the off-glide characteristic of English. Compare نسون nun with 'noon' and سود sud with 'sued.'
- o is a middle to high middle back rounded vowel [0] with the quality of the 'o' in 'coat' but considerably shorter and without the 'w' off-glide that accompanies most American pronunciations of 'o.' This vowel is also realized in free variation as [v], like the 'oo' of 'book,' i.e. a word like تب bot may be pronounced either [bot], like the English 'boat' (but a much shorter vowel), or [but], rhyming with 'put.' Contrast kot with 'coat' and por with 'poor.'
- is a low back open vowel [p] between the 'a' of 'father' [q] and 'bald' [o] but without the lip-rounding of the English [o]. Compare $b\hat{a}l$ and 'ball,' $b\hat{a}m$ and 'balm.'
- ay is a glide [ej] exactly like the 'a' in 'wade.' Compare and may and

'may,' سيف sayf and 'safe.' سيف sayf and 'safe.'

aw is a 'w'-glide [ow] exactly like the 'o' in 'bone.' Compare و raw and 'row (a boat),' حوض hawz and 'hose,' جو jaw and 'Joe.'

Speakers of English must exercise particular care to distinguish a from \hat{a} , particularly before r. Contrast the following:

رست rast 'he escaped' راست râst 'straight' راست dar 'in' دار dâr 'gibbet' بار bar 'over' بار bâr 'wet' تار tar 'wet' بار dâsht 'westeland' دشت rast 'he escaped' رست râst 'straight' دست

Similarly, e-ay and o-aw must be distinguished. Contrast the following:

دور dawr 'around' دور dawr 'around' دور do 'two' عن daw 'run' دوز joz 'except' جوز jawz 'walnut' خلا 'ke 'that' خلا sayr 'travel' سیر sayr 'travel' سیل sel 'tuberculosis' سیل

When followed in the same syllable by a consonant cluster, the "short" vowel a, e, and o are considerably lengthened, but the quality is unaffected. Contrast the vowel lengths in the following:

shah [ʃæh] 'king' شهر shahr [ʃæ:hr] 'city' ور var [vær] 'and if' ورز var [væ:rz] 'exercise' هر meh [meh] 'mist' هر por [por] 'full' پرس pors [po:rs] 'ask' أ

Vowels in Persian are never reduced. All vowels, even in unstressed syllables, are given their full quality—unlike English, where many unstressed vowels tend to be "slurred over" with an "uh" sound. The sound "uh" [ə] does not exist in educated Iranian speech.

Consonants

Stops							
voiceless	p		t		\boldsymbol{k}		,
voiced	b		d		g	q	
Fricatives							
voiceless		f	S	sh		kh	h
voiced		v	z	zh			
			xiv				

Affricates

 voiceless
 ch

 voiced
 j

 Nasals
 m

 Lateral
 l

 Flap
 r

 Semivowel

The stops p, b, t, and d are realized similarly to their English counterparts; p and t, however, are heavily aspirated in all environments. Contrast aspan 'horses' with 'Aspen' and $b\hat{a}st\hat{a}n$ 'ancient' with 'Boston.'

- k, and g are pronounced like English k [k] and "hard g" as in 'go' [g]. When syllable-final, k and g are palatalized as [k^j] and [g^j], i.e. a 'y' sound is heard after the k and g, much like the 'c' in 'cute.' Practice the following words with 'your instructor: مسئ pak 'pure,' مسئ sag 'dog,' مسئ sag 'dog,' مسئ sag 'rock'.
- q is normally a back velar or front uvular stop [G] and is generally accompanied by a slight trace of voicing. It is pronounced similarly to g but farther back in the throat. When q occurs between two vowels, it tends toward a uvular fricative [γ] with the two allophones in fairly free variation, i.e. $\hat{a}q\hat{a}$ 'sir' is pronounced either [DGD] or [D γ D].
- is the glottal stop [?]. This sound occurs in English between the syllables of 'uh-oh' and in dialect pronunciations of 'bottle' and 'little' as "bo'l" and "li'l." Syllable-final as well as doubled glottal stop is alien to English and must be practiced carefully. Contrast the following:

منيه mani 'egotism' منيع mani' 'impregnable' منيه man 'I' به man' 'prevention' منع jam 'Jamshid' جم jam' 'collection' جمع moqa''ar 'concave' مقمر sho'â' 'ray' مقعا ashe''e 'rays'

- v has two conditioned allophones, [v] and [w]. In prevocalic and postconsonantal positions it is realized as [v]. Following a in the same syllable, v becomes the semi-vowel [w] in the glide aw; it is [v] after all other vowels and consonants, as داوطلب 'demon,' داوطلب 'dâvtalab 'volunteer,' and المحترف jozv 'part.'
- f is like the f in 'fish' [f] as in فيل 'elephant' and صاف $s\hat{a}f$ 'flat.'
- s is like the s in 'say' [s] as in سایه $s\hat{a}ye$ 'shadow' and ساسا $as\hat{a}s$ 'foundation.' sh_i is like the sh in 'shine' [ʃ] as in شاد $sh\hat{a}d$ 'happy' and پیش pish 'forward.'

- zh is like the French j and the g in 'beige' [3] as in الله zhâle 'dew' and مسترده mozhde 'good news.'
- kh is like the ch in German Bach or Scottish 'loch.' It is a scraping sound produced against the velar ridge [x] as in خاك khâk 'earth' and خلا kâkh 'palace.'
- h is like the English h [h]. Intervocalic h is, as in English, a breathy vibration of the vocal cords. The Persian h occurs in environments unfamiliar to English, such as syllable- and word-final. It also occurs in clusters alien to English. Practice pronouncing the following words:

fahmid فهمید	sohbat صحبت	noh نه	mehr محر
shâh شاه	sehhat صحت	نهت boht	sharh شرح
kuh کوہ	<i>beh</i> به	فهم $fahm$	shahr شهر
bahs بحث	shabih شبيه	dahr دهر	sath سطح

ch is like the ch in 'church' [ts] as in \Leftrightarrow che 'what?' and \Rightarrow gach 'chalk.'

- j is like the j in 'judge' [dʒ] as in $-j\hat{a}$ 'place' and $t\hat{a}j$ 'crown.'
- m is like the m in 'moon' [m] as in ماند mând 's/he stayed' and سيم sim 'silver.'
- n is like the n in 'noon' [n] as in نان nân 'bread' and خون khun 'blood'. Before b, n is always pronounced 'm,' as in تنبل, spelled tanbal, pronounced tambal [tæmbæl] 'lazy.'
- l is liquid in all environments [1], like the 'l' in "leek," never the dull 'l' [1] of English "all," which does not exist in Persian. Contrast آل âl with 'all, عسلى 'ali with 'alley, عسلى fil with 'feel.'
- r is a flap [r], never the constriction of American English. Doubled rr is trilled like the 'rr' in Spanish [rr]. Contrast در و dare [dærɛ] 'valley' and در و dar rah [dærræh] 'on the road,' إسارو pâru [pɒru] 'oar' and porru [porru] 'cheeky.'
- y is like the y in 'yes' [j] as in ياد yâd 'memory' and موى muy 'hair.'

All doubled consonants in Persian are pronounced doubled. Doubled consonants in English occur only across word boundaries, as in 'pen knife' and 'coat tail.' Contrast the following:

Syllabification

For the purposes of syllabification, Persian sounds represented by two English letters (ch, kh, zh, sh) are counted as one consonant.

All syllables in Persian contain one and only one vowel or glide. There are thus as many syllables in a word as there are vowels or glides. The first syllable in a word may begin with a vowel ($1 \text{ a} \text{ a} \text{ mad}, \frac{1}{1} \text{ ist}, \frac{1}{1} \text{ oftad}$), but all subsequent syllables begin with one and only one consonant (including '). No internal syllable may begin with a vowel. Syllables may end in (1) a vowel (1 a vowel oftad), or (3) two consonants (1 a mad d e), (2) one consonant (1 a shahr ind), or (3) two consonants (1 a shahr ind). The syllabic division falls therefore between the two consonants in a two-consonant cluster and between the second and third consonants of a three-consonant cluster, which is the maximum that occurs.

For purposes of syllabification, the hyphens that indicate enclitics are ignored (ست $pedar-am-ast = pe^*da^*ra^*mast$, کتابی $ket\hat{a}b-i-r\hat{a}-ke = ke^*t\hat{a}^*bi^*r\hat{a}^*$ ke).

These rules of syllabification apply to modern Persian as it is spoken in Iran. They do not apply to the scansion of Persian poetry or to Persian as it is spoken outside of Iran.

Stress

The stress patterns of nouns, adjectives, and prepositions.

خانه All Persian nouns and adjectives are stressed on the last syllable, e.g.: خانه khâné, بدر pedár, برادر barâdár, خوشمزه khoshmazé. خوشمزه khoshmazé.

When **enclitics** are added, stress remains on the final syllable of the base word, e.g.: خانهایست که *khâné-i-st-ke*, پدرم pedár-am, برادررا barâdár-râ, پدرم dâneshjú-i-râ-ke.

خانه: When **suffixes** are added, stress is moved to the final syllable of the suffix: خانه khâné > خانه khânehấ, پدر pedar پدر pedarâné, برادر barâdár > برادران barâdár خانه dâneshjú برادر dâneshjú خانگی bachché ؛ bachché دانشجو bachché دانشجو bachché.

Verbs have their own stress patterns, and they will be taken up along with the various, tenses and moods. The hierarchy of stress in verbs is given here for reference:

- (1) the negative prefix ná- is stressed: برفتند náraftand 'they did not go.'
- (2) the final syllable of the non-verbal element of compound verbs is stressed: عگاه کوم negấh-kardam 'I looked, عگاه کوم bár-dâshtam 'I picked up.'
- (3) the habitual/continuous prefix mi- is stressed: ميرفتيم miraftim 'we used to go, we were going.'
- (4) the subjunctive prefix bé- is stressed: بشنود béshnavad 'let him hear.'
- (5) the final syllable of the stem is stressed: گفت geréft 'he grabbed.'

The Persian Alphabet

Persian is written in a slightly modified form of the Arabic alphabet. This alphabet, written from right to left, has a total of thirty-two characters, all but one of which represent consonants. The Arabic alphabet does not normally represent the "short" vowels a, e, and o; only the "long" vowels \hat{a} , i, and u and the glides ay and aw have graphic representations.

The alphabet is a "script" in that most letters must be connected one to another. There are no separate letter forms corresponding to Latin-alphabet printing. All letters have at least two forms and at most four.

Those letters that connect on both sides have four forms: (1) the initial form, used when the letter is the first letter of a word and followed by another letter, or when the letter is preceded by a non-connecting letter and followed by another letter; (2) the medial form, used when the letter is both preceded and followed by connecting letters; (3) the final form, used when it is the last letter in a word and is preceded by a connecting letter; and (4) the alone form, used only when it is the last letter in the word and preceded by a non-connecting letter.

The seven letters that do not connect forward—i.e. to the next letter to the left—have only two forms, (1) the initial-alone form and (2) the medial-final form. All non-connecting letters are followed by initial (or alone) forms.

There are three varieties of the Arabic script in common use in Iran today. The first, نستخ naskh, is the base for type fonts and the typewriter; it should not be taken as the model for handwriting. The second style, نستعليق, nasta'liq, is the basic cursive script and the model for good handwriting. The third variety, actually a variant of nasta'liq, is called شكسته shekaste. In this style many orthographic breaks that are mandatory in naskh and nasta'liq are bridged, certain letters have wildly divergent forms, and "shorthand" ligatures abound. Shekaste script is beyond the scope of this introductory book.

The Alphabet

NAME LETTER SOUND GROUP alef — 1 be b 2 pe p 2 te t 2 se s 2 jim j 3 che , ch 3				
be \cdot b2pe \downarrow p2te $$ t2se $$ s2jim $$ j3	NAME	LETTER	SOUND	GROUP
pe پ p 2 te ت t 2 se ث s 2 jim ج j 3		1		1
te	be	·	b	2
se ث s 2 jim j 3	pe	Ų	p	2
jim j 3	te	ت	t	2
jim	se	ث	S	2
che e , ch 3	jim	7	j	3
	che	_	, ch	3

he-jimi	7	h	3
khe	<u>خ</u>	kh	3
dâl	ح د د	d	4
zâl	ذ	z	4
re .	ر	r	5
ze	j	z	5
zhe	ژ	zh	5
sin	س	s	6
shin	ز ش ش ص ض ط	sh	6
sâd	ص	s	7
zâd	ض	z	7
tâ, tayn	ط	t	8
zâ	ظ	Z	8
ayn	ع . ق <u>وغ</u> . ل گ	,	9
qayn	غ	q	9
fe	ف	f	10
qâf	. ق	q	10
kâf	ک	k	11
gâf	گ	g	11
lâm	ل	1	12
mim		m	13
nun	ر ن	n	2
vâv	, و	v	14
he	ه	h	15
ye	ی	у	2

Additional signs

	lâm-alef	, Y	lâ
23kz	alef-tanvin	ĺ	-an
	alef-madde	Ī	â
	hamze	£	,
ŀ	te-tammat	ö	-atan
x s.	tashdid		(doubling

There are three s's, two t's, four z's, and two h's in the alphabet. There is no differentiation whatsoever in pronunciation, and learning which letter is used in any given word is simply a matter of spelling—not unlike English.

Group by group, the letters of the alphabet will be given in their printed forms. In Arabic there are numerous ligatures (combinations of various letters) that occur in print, but these are not commonly used in printed Persian. They are used, however, in Persian handwriting, and the versions to be imitated in handwriting will also be given. In the observations, what any one letter in a group does, all the letters that share the same shape do likewise.

Group 1

This group contains only *alef*, a non-connecting letter that stands initially for all initial vowels. Following consonants, *alef* indicates the vowel \hat{a} . Other uses of *alef* will be treated under the vowels and other signs. In handwriting, the initial/ alone *alef* is written with a down-stroke, while the medial/final *alef* is written with an up-stroke. The bottoms of both forms are on the writing line.



Group 2

This group consists of be, pe, te, se, nun, and ye. It is a connecting shape. The basic shapes are:

	be	pe	te	se	nun	ye
initial	ب	پ	ڗ	ژ	ز	یـ
medial	<u> </u>	-	ت	ث	<u>ن</u> ـ	
final	ب	پ	ـت	ـث	ٺ	ی
alone	$\dot{\mathcal{L}}$	پ	ت	ث	ن	ی
nastaʻliq	·	پ	ت	ث	U	ی

Handwritten and nasta'liq examples of these letters combined with b follow:



The initial and medial forms of all letters in this group consist of a "tooth" (and and distinguishing dots above or below. The dots are written either after the whole word has been written or at the end of a graphic unit (i.e. after any nonconnecting letter). In handwriting two dots are written either (1) as a straight line over or under the letter (a) or (b) as something resembling a tilda (a); three dots over or under a letter are handwritten like a circumflex accent (a). Final and alone be/pe/te/se is a "dish" shape, while final and alone nun is a "bowl" shape. Final and alone ye is an S-curve without the dots followed by a "bowl." In handwriting, final nun and ye come off the top of the "tooth" characteristic of this group; thus ye b-y-n is handwritten as ye b-y-n-y is handwritten as ye have not followed by a final ye takes the shape ye. The "bowls" of the final and alone nun and ye descend below the line.

The letter $\stackrel{*}{\smile}$ stands for 'th' as in 'thing' in Arabic and is transliterated th or <u>s</u>; it is the least common of the three letters for s in Persian.

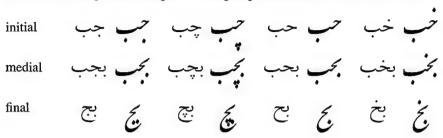
Group 3

This connecting shape consists of *jim*, *che*, *he-jimi*, and *khe*. This *he* is called *he-jimi* or *he-hotti* to distinguish it from the other *he* (*he-havvaz*, Group 15). In Arabic these two *h*'s are quite distinct, but in Persian they are identical. In transliteration *he-jimi* is represented by *h*.

	jim	che	he	khe
initial	<u> </u>	چ	>	خ
medial	ج	چـ	ح	خ
final	ج	چ	ح	خ
alone	<u>5</u>	3 3	ح ح	خ خ

In handwriting the connection into any member of this group is from above. A "tooth" preceding any member of this group is raised, e.g. بخت bakht is written as مخرب , and بخت , and نخب , and نخب . Any two successive letters from this group are "stacked" in handwriting; thus, نخب nakhchir is handwritten as

and عجت hojjat is fre "tails" of the final and alone forms descend below the writing line. Examples of this group combined with b are as follows:



Group 4

This non-connecting shape consists of dâl and zâl.

	dâl	zâl
initial/alone	و د	ز ذ
medial/final	1	نہ

Zâl occurs, with only a few exceptions, in words of Arabic origin and is usually transliterated dh or \underline{z} . It is one of the least common of the four letters for z, but it occurs in two very common Persian words. The handwritten form of the medial/final $d\hat{a}l/z\hat{a}l$ differs slightly from the printed version, e.g. bad is handwritten as $\underline{\lambda}$ and $\underline{\lambda} bad$ is $\underline{\lambda} bad$. The upstroke into the $d\hat{a}l$ is mandatory. Examples combined with \underline{b} are as follows:

medial/final	٠ بد	بذ بذ
	_	

Group 5

This non-connecting shape includes re, ze, and zhe.

	re	ze	zhe .
initial/alone	ر ر	jj	ڙ ژ
medial/final	_ر	. خ	ہ ۔ر
combined with b	الم بر	الم بز	تر بژ

When this shape is preceded by a medial "tooth," the "tooth" is rounded into a "hump" that descends directly into the re, as in babr, which is handwritten as babr, and babr, and babr. The "tail" in which all forms of this shape

end descends slightly below the writing line. In handwriting the re shape goes directly down from the writing line, while $d\hat{a}l$ goes up and then down, but not as far down as the re. Compare the following: pbar and pbad, par and par par

Group 6

This connecting shape includes sin and shin.

	sin	shin
initial	. س	, ش
medial		_ش_
final	ـس	ـشـ
alone	<i>س</i> س	ش ش
Combined with b:	رب سب	شب شب
	ب بسب	شب بشب
	س بس	ب ش بش

Before any jim shape and mim (Group 13), the teeth of the sin/shin are raised in handwriting. Thus, we sahar is written as and and shomord is written as shomord is written as shomord is written as shomord is written as group, as we basi is written as we are is written as written are teeth" or with an extended line, e.g. whas may be handwritten as or or written as written

Group 7

A connecting shape, this group includes $s\hat{a}d$ and $z\hat{a}d$, both of which occur exclusively in words of Arabic origin. They are transliterated as s and d (or \dot{z}).

inițial [*]	sâd -≁	zâd خــ
	<i>—</i>	xxiii

medial	-2-	غـ
final	<u>ص</u>	<u> </u>
alone	ص ص	ص ض

Final ye and re/ze/zhe come directly off the top of the final "tooth" of this group, as صى s-y is handwritten as بصر basar is handwritten as عند. Sâd and zâd are raised before a jim-shape and mim, as عند sohbat is handwritten as مرابع عند amir is handwritten as مرابع تعمد zamir is handwritten as مرابع المعادية والمعادية المعادية المع

initial	مب صب	ضب ضب
medial	بصب بصب	بضب بضب
final	<i>بص</i> بص	بض بض

Group 8

This is a connecting shape and includes $t\hat{a}$ (tayn) and $z\hat{a}$, again letters that occur mainly in Arabic words. They are transliterated t and z respectively.

	tâ	zâ
initial	ط	ظ
medial	<u>لط</u>	ظ
final	ط	ظ
alone	ط ط	ط ظ

This shape requires two strokes of the pen. It should never be made in one stroke. The vertical stroke is placed at the same time as the dots, i.e. after completion of the word or graphic unit. All forms sit directly on the writing line un. less they are raised before a jim or a mim (as in sath and latme became). Examples of the forms combined with b are:

initial	طب	طب	ظب	ظ
medial	بطب	بطب	بظب	بظب

ط بظ بط بط final

Group 9

A connecting shape, *ayn* (transliterated as ') occurs only in Arabic words. *Qayn* (transliterated *gh*) occurs mainly in Arabic but also in some Persian and Turkish words.

initial ayn qayninitial e \dot{e} medial e \dot{e} final e e \dot{e} alone e e e e

In handwriting, ayn and ghayn are raised before any jim-shape and mim, e.g. ajam is written as set, and se gham is written as set. The "tails" of the

final and alone forms descend below the writing line, e.g. tiq. Examples combined with b are:

Group 10

A connecting shape. Qâf is pronounced exactly like qayn.

fe qaf
initial ف ق
medial ف ق ق
final ف ق ق

Initial and medial fe and qâf are round shapes; the round medial fe (i) must be



Group 11

Kâf and gâf are connective. They are never written in one stroke: the diagonal top-strokes of these letters are added in a downward fashion after the word or graphic unit is completed.

	kâf	gâf
initial	5	5
medial	<i>S</i> .	گ
final	ر ک	ا گ
alone	ک ک	ک گ

In handwriting, kâf and gâf come directly down into the mim, as کمان kamar is written as , and the sequence kâf-mim-alef is written as کمان kamân and کمان gomân are handwritten as عمان . All forms of these letters sit on the writing line. Examples combined with b are as follows:



Group 12

Lâm, a connector, is the only letter in this shape group. It is a vertical like alef but connects forward. The final and alone forms end in the "bowl" shape of the nun, which descends below the writing line. Lâm takes a special form when followed by alef (lâm-alef, see Additional Signs).

initial J final J medial · J alone J J

In handwriting, lam comes directly down into mim, e.g. الما lam is handwritten as الما . Lâm is raised and angled to the left before any jim-shape, e.g. المخت lakht is written as المحت (cf. bakht المحت), and المحت is handwritten as المحت . Examples combined with b follow:

initial بل بل final بل بل medial بلب بلب

Group 13

A connecting letter, *mim* is the only representative of this group. The "tail" of the final and alone forms descend far below the writing line.

initial: __ final
medial __ alone

In print all forms of this letter have a small hollow middle, but in handwriting they do not. In handwriting the initial form is ____, the medial form is ____, and the alone form is ____, Before mim all connecting letters are raised in handwriting; thus,

"tooth" + final mim: + medial mim: i namad + final mim: | z jam ìim + medial mim: shomord sin/shin + final mim: + medial mim: $s\hat{a}d/z\hat{a}d$ + final mim: samzamân صال + medial mim: $t\hat{a}/z\hat{a}$ + final mim: $\int zam$ + medial mim: ayn/qayn + final mim: \ \natheref{e} qam + medial mim: fe/qaf + final mim: 2 qom + medial mim: xxvii

			ım: 🥦 momeaa
he	+ final mim: ham	+ medial m	im: بمان hamân
			curs in the common name
Mol محمد	hammad. handwritten as	. Kâf/gâf and	lâm followed by mim are
handwritte	نما، کے = کہ :n as follows	= Lam, 2 =	. Examples combined
with b are:			,
initial	مب مب		
		final.	
medial	بب	final	مم بم
			1
Group 14			
A non-con	nnector, vâv is the only re	epresentative of	this group. It has a rounded
"head" and	d then ends, like re, in a	non-connecting	"tail" that descends slightly
below the	writing line.		•
initial/alon	ne 9 9	medial/fina	او بو as in و
In a few w	ords vâv is silent after khe	خویش as in?	khâhesh. خواهش khâhesh.
			een the initial/alone forms of
the vav (3)	and the dâl (3), as in cec	aua, nandwritte	n as 177.
~ 4.			
Group 15			
			s shapes of which have little
or no appa	rent connection one with	another.	
. initial	ھ	final	ط
medial	4 or	alone	٥
	-f- or -c		- ·
			nall "teeth" with an inverted
			ny jim-shape and mim, e.g.
العجري	is handwitten as 6,	and an nam is i	nandwritten as . In hand-
writing the	e final he is a very short st	roke down from	the writing line, e.g. & ke
and as me	h are handwritten as \int an	d 🗻 . Example:	s combined with b are as
follows:			
initial	مِ هب	final	س به
			•
		xxviii	

medial alone لهب بهب

In nasta'liq the combination initial he + alef(b) has a special form, λ , as in الله khânehâ, handwritten as خانه ها

The Vowels

 \hat{a} is written (1) word-initially with alef-madde as in \hat{j} $\hat{a}n$

(2) elsewhere with alef as in bb bâbâ

in این in word-initially with alef-ye as in i is written

(2) elsewhere with ye as in بينى bini

(1) word-initially with alef-vâv as in اوت ut u is written

(2) elsewhere with vâv as in رويوش rupush

ay is written (1) word-initially with alef-ye as in ايوان ayvân

(2) elsewhere with ye as in مسيل sayl

aw is written (1) word-initially with alef-vâv as in פלב awlâd

(2) elsewhere with $v\hat{a}v$ as in $\rightarrow jaw$

The "short" vowels (a, e, o) are indicated initially by alef:

ash اسب esm اسم olfat الفت

Word internally the short vowels are not normally written or indicated. Where confusion might arise they can be indicated by the following signs, written over or under the letter they follow in pronunciation:

- zebar), as in کر رو a (called فتحه fathe or زبر kal
- ع کل cevar), as in ربر مدد و cevar), as in کار e (called کسره kasre or زیر gel گلره و coalled کسره
- gol گُر , pish), as in پیش zamme or ضمه

Final -e is written with he-havvaz. This purely orthographic convention is called "silent he" to distinguish it from the "real he," which also occurs word-finally.

"silent he" "real he" "silent he" مرده ablah آمله ablah deh ده

When the glides ay and aw are indicated with a vowel point, they are indicated, contrary to Arabic usage, with zir and pish respectively.

> jaw حو sayl سيل

A consonant followed by no vowel is indicated by a small circle above the consonant. This sign is called $i \rightarrow sokun$ or jazm. Its use is exceedingly rare.

A $v\hat{a}v$ at the beginning of a word can only be the consonant v. In the middle of a word $v\hat{a}v$ can be (1) the consonant v, (2) the vowel u, or (3) the glide aw. At the end of a word $v\hat{a}v$ can be (1) the consonant v, (2) the vowel u, (3) the glide aw, or (4) the vowel o but only in three words (o 'two,' o 'you,' and o 'like').

A ye at the beginning of a word can only be the consonant y. In the middle or end of a word ye can be (1) the consonant y, (2) the vowel i, or (3) the glide ay.

Additional signs.

(1) The $l\hat{a}m$ -alef ligature (Y), handwritten as \emptyset , is merely an orthographic convention to avoid the shape \bigcup . Since its second component is alef, it does not connect forward. Examples are given in print and nasta'liq:

- (2) Madde (1, always written on alef) serves as
 - (a) all initial \hat{a} -, as in آب $\hat{a}b$ and آمد \hat{a} mad.
 - (b) internal glottal stop followed by â (i.e. -'â) in most cases (but see 5 below), as in مَآثَر ma'âser, مَا تَاتَر ide'âl, and تَاتَر te'âtr.
 - (c) Lâm followed by alef-madde is written with the lâm-alef ligature, as in $|\vec{l}| = 1$ la'âli.
- (3) Te-tammat (5) (the Arabic $t\bar{a}$ ' $marb\bar{u}ta$) is word-final only. It occurs in Arabic loan-constructions and is pronounced -at. It almost always has the tanvin

termination (see next entry). This letter is often replaced in typography by ت.

- (4) The Arabic adverbial termination, called تنوين tanvin and pronounced -an, is "carried" by an alef, as in مثلاً masalan and واقعاً vâqe'an. When tanvin occurs on te-tammat, it does not have the alef bearer, as نسبة nesbatan and مثلاً daf'atan. Many writers of modern Persian, however, treat these words as though the te-tammat were te and write them with alef, as نسبتا nesbatan and دفعتا daf'atan.
- (5) The hamze (ϵ) is the sign of the glottal stop. It is theoretically present and "carried" by alef for all initial vowels except \hat{a} , although it is very rarely written. If the vowel of the hamze is a or o, the hamze is on top of the alef; if the vowel of the hamze is e, the hamze is beneath the alef.

Non-initially the *hamze* is written in a variety of ways, and there are complicated rules for the bearer of the *hamze* in Arabic words; however, since variant spellings are frequent in Persian, it is considerably less time-consuming for the student simply to learn the spelling of words with *hamze* as they occur. Bearers of the *hamze* are:

- (a) alef, as in مسأله mas'ale
- (b) an undotted "tooth," as in مسائل masâ'el
- so'âl, and سؤال so'âl, and
- (d) nothing, as in شيء shay'

Some modern writers and typesetters put all internal *hamzes* on the undotted "tooth," e.g. مسئوال so'âl (for the normal مسئوال, مسئوال, and مسئول mas'ul (for the normal مسئول).

(6) The tashdid (تشديد, also called شده shadde), which looks like a small w over a letter, indicates gemination, or doubling, of a consonant. The tashdid is usually omitted, although it may be provided occasionally where ambiguity might arise.

The doubling that results from compounding is indicated not by the *tashdid* but by writing both consonants, as in بروو por-ru 'cheeky,' پاک کسن pâk-kon 'eraser,' and تيززبان tiz-zabân 'sharp-tongued.' The difference between tashdid and two letters has to do with word formation, and it will become apparent over

the course of the grammar.

In print the connecting line between letters can be extended indefinitely without affecting the word, as in zab an and bar ab an. The extension of the line is used to justify margins in print.

Summary of the Alphabet (nonconnectors indicated by asterisks):

D CHILLIAM J	or the imphase	· (nonconnectors	111010111111111111111111111111111111111	5225).
LETTER	ALONE	FINAL	MEDIAL	INITIAL
*alif	1	L	L	1
be	<u>ب</u>	<u>.</u>	- -	ب
pe	Ų	<u>_</u>	÷	پ
te	ت	پ تـ	<u>ت</u>	ټ ت
se	ث	ث	<u> </u>	ثـ
jim	ج	<u>ج</u>	ج	ج
che	چ	چ		چـ
he-hotti			چ ح خہ	>
khe	ح خ	خ خ	خ	خ
*dâl	د	1	ے۔ غہ	د
*zâl	ذ	ند	نہ	ذ
*re	ر	-ر	-ر	ر
*ze	ز		بز	ز
*zhe	ژ	ـز ـش ـص ـض ـط	خر څ	ژ
sin	س	_س		س
shin	ش	ـشـ	ـشــ	شـ
sâd	س ش ص	ـص	ے۔ خ	ص
zâd	ض ط	ـض	خـ	ضـ
tâ	ط	ط	ط	ط
zâ	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ
ayn	ع	_ع	ح	ء
qayn	ع <u>ف</u> ف	غ	خ	غ
fe		ف	ف	ف
$q\hat{a}f$	ق	ـق	ق	ف ق
kâf	ق ک	ع ف ک گ	قد ح گ	5
gâf	گ	گ	گ	گ
		xxxii		

xxxii

lâm	J	ـل	7	٢
mim	۴	f -	-	مـ
nun	ن	-ن	· ' ÷	نہ
*vâv	و	<u>-</u> و	_و	و
he-havvaz	٥	4_	-&-	ھ
"ye	ی	ی	<u>~</u>	یـ

Additional Co	mbinatio	ns and Signs		
*lâm-alif	Y	X	X	A
handwritten	V	¥.	y.	Ŋ
te-ťammat	ö	ـة	_	_
handwritten	;	٠,	_	_
alef-madde	ī	م.	Ţ	T
handwritten	ĩ	ĩ	ĩ	ĩ
alef-tanvin	Ī	Ĺ	<u>-</u>	_
handwritten	1	Ĺ	_	_
*vâv + hamze	ۇ	ئ	_ق	ۇ
handwritten	j	ÿ	ÿ	3
ye + hamze	ئ	ئ	ئـ	ئـ
handwritten	ئ	ني	t.	'ب

Numerals

The Persian numerals are as follows:

0 •	2 Y	4 4	6 9	8 A
1, 1	3 T	5 Δ	7 Y	9 ٩

Compound numerals are written, as in English, from left to right: $\Upsilon S \Delta = 365$, YVA = 1789, $Y \cdot \cdot Y = 2004$. A European-style comma is commonly used for the decimal mark: $\Upsilon, \Delta = 2.5$ and $\Upsilon, \forall \Delta = 3.75$. The percentage sign is /, and it is normally written to the left of the number (e.g. $/\Delta \cdot = 50\%$).

Punctuation

Punctuation is a relatively new phenomenon in Persian, and all marks of punctuation were adopted from Europe. The period (.), the comma (.), the colon (:), the semicolon (:), the question mark (?), the exclamation point (!), and the dash (—) are used similarly to their English counterparts. Quotation marks, used much less frequently than in English, are borrowed from the French guillemet («»). Note that the comma (.) differs from the decimal mark (.).

Pronunciation Exercise

Practice pronouncing the following words. Stress falls on the final syllable except in words to which the unstressed -i has been added, in which case stress falls on the penultimate syllable. Pay particular attention to the difficult clusters and to stress and intonation, and notice the various homophonous letters. Read across from left to right.

\rightarrow	/ bar	l bâr	bấr-i باری
	اری bârí	// bârbar	bârbár-i اربری
	bârbarí باربری	serr	sérr-i بری
	serrí سری	be qaht	qahti فحطى
	bahs ,	báhs-i بحثی	sahn صحی
	sahnhâ صحبها	naqs نقص	maks مکث
	jam	jam'	jám'-i حمعی
	jam'í حمعی	jam'hâ	jam'há-i جمعهائی
	latme لطرية	dokme	ma'ruf مروف
	qarq غرق	nerkh	ase qonche
	qâshoq قاشق	chopoq چىق	qelqelaki قاملي
	jâme جامہ	jame'	tabe تابہ
	'tabe تابع	tabé-i تابدای	tabé'-i تابعی
	zhâle ژاله	mozhzhe 🏂	J. mobl

asl اصل	الل ahl	hosn حن
khashm	javânmard وأثرو	sehhat صحت
vajh وحد	solh صلح	fahm fahm
sarv y	ozv	porru
ارو pâru	gol کل	gul کول
qarz قرض	arz ارز	sharh شرح
arj ارج	gery کری	qalb فلب
kahf کہف	barq بن	fesq فق
rezq رزق	eshq عثق	saqf تقت
rokn رکن	ta'm	zeqn وقق
batn بطن	dafn وفن	asbsavâr استوار
mofassal	jabr	chatr چتر qa'r قر
الله badr	fekr	qa'r قو
faqr	sefr .	tabl فرن
ratl נאט	adl مدل	shekl
la'l	shoql تنوا	qofl
vahm وبم	mahd	sangsâr
dastbord وسترو	derakhtkâr ورخت کار	ردناک dardnâk
dalqpush ولقبوش	ranjbar رنجبر	madhsarâ مدحرا
raf رفع	'shar شرع	

Reading Exercise

Read the following words, which contain only the "apparent" vowels \hat{a} , i, u, and final e. Read across from right to left.

ويلا	وادي	بامدادان	بانو
طاق	شيرواني	صابون	عام
پول	گام	ثانى	دور
موش	زير	آ بی	چيز
گوناگون	پیچید	<i>لو</i> ليا <i>ن</i>	ديوانه
ساز	گيج	خوب	قاضي
واژگوني	كاشيكاري	عاق	ماچ
موم	حاجي	دير	روئيده
ديو	ياغى	اينجا	حالا
آلوبالو	قير	آقايان	قال
وول	آ فتا ب	تيپ	روح
ميز	هیچگاه	<i>گ</i> وشت	زين
خيس	چاپ	روحانيون	واچيديم
بيبال	نورى	داديم	كوچگاه
V	پور	واگيره	هارون
شاهانی	تور	باطلاق	باغها
وادار	آبدار	چوب	ژاله
واصي	كاخ	کوچی	روباه
گول	گويا	' 'هامان	داغ
بینی	قو	داشتيم	طوپ

Now read the same words in nasta'liq script:

ويلا	وادى	بامدادان	بانو
طاق	شيروانى	صابون	عام

بول م	کام	ثانی	199
پر موش	زر	آبی	چنر
کو ماکون	2,5°4	لوليان	د <i>بوانہ</i> ت
باز	کیج	نوب	قاضى
واژکونی	پیچید کیچ کاشی کاری	عاق	ماچ
موم	حاجی	دير اسحا	روئيده
ويو	یاغی	ایجا	حالا
آلوبالو	قر	آ قایان	قال
وول	آفاب	ٽيپ مرکوشت	روح
منر	ميجك اه	محكوشت	زین
منر نعیں ٔ پیال	چاپ	روحانيون	واچديم کوچک ه
	نورى	داديم سر	
על	اور * تور	واكبره	فارون
ثابني	گور	باطلاق	løl
وادار	آرار	جو ب	ژاله
واصی	كاخ	حوب کوچی کھان	روباه
م کول	كويا		داغ
مبي	آبدار کاخ کویا تو	واشيم	طوپ

Part One بخش اول

The Grammar of دستور زبان فارسی معاصر Modern Persian

حرس كروك

Lesson One

- § 1 Word Order. Normal word order in Persian is subject-predicate-verb. Finite verbs almost always take their proper place as the last element in a phrase or sentence. However, the copulative verb ('is, are, was, were'), which serves only to express a predicative state and not existence, may be followed by other matter (prepositional phrases, adjective modifiers, etc.) modifying the predicate.
- § 2 Stress and intonation. All nouns and adjectives in Persian are stressed on the final syllable. Primary sentence-stress (), characterized by a very high rising pitch, falls on the last stressed syllable before an affirmative verb.

irân dar mashreqzamín-ast

"Iran is in the east."

Whereas the affirmative copula ('is, are') never receives stress at all, the negative copula, like all negatives, takes primary stress. A secondary stress, characterized by a high falling pitch ('), falls on the preceding stressed syllable.

âmrikâ dar mashreqzamìn níst
"America is not in the east."

- § 3 Gender. Persian lacks gender distinction altogether. There is no grammatical distinction of masculine, feminine, or neuter.
- § 4 State of the noun. There is no definite article ('the') or indefinite article ('a') in Persian. The Persian noun exists instead in two states, (1) the absolute and (2) the non-specific.
 - 4.1 The noun in its absolute state, i.e., with no suffix or enclitic, indicates both

the specific singular and the generic, which is generally rendered in English by the plural ("Libraries contain books"). Thus, ketâb means both 'the book' (about which we already know something) and 'books' (in general).

ketâb khub-ast.

The book (specific) is

good. / Books (generic) are good.

kuh bozorg-ast. کوه بزرگ است

The mountain (specific) is large. / Mountains (generic) are large.

4.2 The non-specific state of the noun is formed by adding the indefinite enclitic, an unstressed -i, to the noun. Because this ending is enclitic, and therefore unstressed, the final syllable of the absolute state retains the stress. The non-specific state indicates 'a certain, a particular' thing or 'one of a class.'

(ketâb-i (ketâbi کتابی

a book, any book, one book, a certain book, some book or other, some

particular book

miz-i (mízi) مېزى

a table, any table, one table, a certain table, some table or other, some

particular table

- § 5 Orthography of the indefinite enclitic. The indefinite enclitic is spelled as a ye added directly to nouns ending in consonants (as کتابی ketâb-i above). The ye is joined directly to nouns ending in "connecting" letters but not, of course, to nouns ending in any of the seven non-connecting letters (as (570 miz-i).
- 5.1 When added to words ending in -â or -u, the indefinite is spelled with hamze-ye (3) or ye-ye (3) (hamze-ye will be preferred in this book).

dânâ > دانا

dânâ-i دانائی

dâneshju > دانشجو ئي dâneshju-i a student

5.2 In words ending in the "silent" he and ye, the indefinite enclitic is generally spelled with alef-ye (ای).

خانه khâne >

khâne-i خانداي

a house

LESSON ONE

Care must be taken to distinguish the silent *he*, which is merely an orthographic convention to indicate a final vowel, from the real *he*, which is a true consonant and thus adds the indefinite enclitic directly.

$$kh\hat{a}ne > خانه khane-i$$
 a house
but خانه khane-i عومی $kuh > kuh-i$ a mountain

§ 6 Adjectival order. Attributive adjectives normally follow the nouns they modify. When the noun is in the non-specific state, the adjective follows immediately. Other constructions will be introduced later.

§ 7 The plural. The plural marker that can be added to all nouns in Persian is $h\hat{a}$, which is suffixed directly to the noun in the absolute state; it takes the stress and renders the specific plural.

- 7.1 When the final consonant of the noun can be connected orthographically, the plural suffix is usually joined directly, although it is sometimes left separate (کتابها or کتابها).
- 7.2 When added to a noun ending in the silent he, the plural suffix is never joined, although it may be connected to the real he.

§ 8 The non-specific plural. The non-specific plural is formed by adding the unstressed indefinite enclitic to the plural ($h\hat{a}-i$). The plural suffix retains the stress. The non-specific plural denotes 'some' or 'several.' The orthographic rule given above in §5.2 applies.

khânehấ-i خانەھائى

some houses, several houses

8.1 Adjectives that modify plural nouns do not agree in number but always remain singular, as in English. As in the singular (§6), attributive adjectives follow a non-specific noun directly.

ketâbhấ-i khub كتابهائي خوب

some good books

keshvarhá-i qadimi کشورهائی قدیمی

some old countries

kuhhá-i bozorg کو ھھائی ہزرگ

some large mountains

Synopsis of noun states

SINGULAR

PLURAL

ABSOLUTE

SPECIFIC

ketấb books (generic)

ketấb the book

ketâbhấ the books

NONSPECIFIC

ketấb-i a book کتابی

ketâbhâ-i some books کتابهائی

Vocabulary 1

bad bad بد

bozorg big, large, great بزرگ

pâkkon eraset پاککن

khâne house خانه

khub good, well خوب

dar door در

sandali chairr صندلي

قدىمى gadimi old, ancient¹

qalam pen قلم ketâb book

Ketab book تتاب

keshvar country کشور kuchek small, little

kuh mountain

Kun mounai

gach chalk گچ

miz table ميز

naw new نو

countries and things and ideas that are of long standing. It is not used for people.

Exercise 1

(a) For the following words give (1) the non-specific singular (e.g., پاككنې pâk-kon-i), (2) the specific plural (e.g., پاككنې pâkkonhâ), and (3) the non-specific plural (e.g., پاككېائى pâkkonhâ-i):

۲ تکم

۲ خانه

۲ کتاب

اکثو

¹Qadimi is typically used for ancient

LESSON ONE

sλ

ع صندبي

۵ منر

(b) Read and translate the following phrases:

۸ کتابی نو	۱ منری بزرک
۹ قلمی خوب	۲ صندلیهانی خوب
۱۰ منر کوئی نو	۳ کثوری کو چک
۱۱ خاندای نو	۴ کومی بزرک
۱۲ کچی کوچکب	۵ خانه کئی قدیمی
١٣ کثور لانی بزرک	ء قلمهائی بد
۱۴ دری کوچک	۷ یاک نهائی قدیمی

- (d) Give the Persian for the following:
 - *1: (some) small mountains
 - 2. (some) old houses
 - 3. an old table
 - 4. a new chair
 - 5. an old country

- 6. a good pen
- 7. a good eraser
- 8. (some) big doors
- 9. (some) bad books
- 10. (some) new pieces of chalk

פקים פכא

Lesson Two

- § 9 Demonstrative adjectives and pronouns.
- 9.1 The demonstrative **adjectives** are in ('this, these') and in ('that, those'). They modify both singular and plural nouns. They precede the nouns they modify.

in ketâb این کتاب	this book
in ketâbhâ این کتابها	these books
ân qalam آن قلم	that pen
ân qalamhâ آن قلمها	those pens

9.2 As demonstrative **pronouns** ایسن in ('this') and آن \hat{a} n ('that') refer to the singular, while the plurals اینها inhâ ('these') and آنها \hat{a} nhâ ('those') refer to plurals.

in khub-ast.	This is good.
inhâ khub-and. اينها خوبند	These are good.
آن بد نیست <i>ân bad nist</i> .	That isn't bad.
آنها بد نیستد <i>ânhâ bad nistand</i> .	Those/they aren't bad.

§ 10 Verbal agreement with the plural. As a general rule, plurals of inanimate nouns take singular verbs.

in ketâbhâ khub-ast. این کتابها خوب است	These books are good.
ân keshvarhâ qadimi آن کشورها قدیمی نیست	Those countries are not
nist.	old.

In very short sentences with the verb 'to be,' however, where a plural subject is separated from its verb by no more than a predicate adjective, noun, or short prepositional phrase, a plural subject usually takes a plural verb. In longer sentences, especially in complex constructions and with most finite verbs other than

LESSON TWO

'to be,' plurals of inanimate nouns (things) take singular verbs.

These books are good.

With the negative verb 'not to be,' the singular is usually retained for inanimate plurals.

These books aren't good.

Animate plurals (people) regularly take plural verbs in all situations.

Iranian.

§ 11 Co-ordination. The co-ordinating conjunction $_{2}$ is read either as (1) va-, added to the second element of the co-ordination, or-and more idiomaticallyas (2) -o, an unstressed enclitic added to the first element of the co-ordination.

book(s) and pen(s)

table(s) and chair(s)

The indefinite enclitic usually appears only once at the end of a series of nonspecific nouns.

a book and pen

a piece of chalk and (an)

eraser

§ 12 Adverbs. Adverbs invariably precede adjectives.

besyâr khub سيار خوب

very good

kâmelan naw کاملا نو

brand new

galam-i besyâr khub قلمي بسيار خوب

a very good pen

ketâbhâ-i kâmelan naw some brand new books کتابهائی کاملا نو

§ 13 Interrogative sentences.

13.1 An interrogative sentence that contains no interrogative words ("who,

what, where, why, when, which") is signalled by a rising inflection of voice and not by rearrangement of words (as in English). The intonation that accompanies the interrogative sentence in Persian should be learned by imitation of the instructor.

in khub-ast. This is good. اين خوب است؟ in khub-ast? Is this good?

13.2 Interrogative words tend not to come first in a Persian sentence unless absolutely unavoidable. Interrogatives follow the subject and adverbs of time and immediately precede the predicate.

(۱ کی بود؟ What was that? Who was that? Who was that young man? از جوان کی بود؟ نام ان جوان کی بود؟ نام ان کماست؟

?على كي آمد ali kay âmad? When did Ali come

? چرا اینجا نیست chérâ injâ nist? Why isn't he/she/it here?

Vocabulary 2

Nouns and adjectives

Adverbs, prepositions, &c.

(pronoun)

أنجا مُشْرَةُ مُنجا أَنجا اللهُ الل

LESSON TWO

many, a lot; too much, xxix §4)
too many کجا kojâ where?
dar in (prep.) در
kâmelan completely (for
the orthography see p.

Verbs

-ast (he, she, it) is (after - منبود مثل البود مثل البود مثل البود البو

Exercise 2

(a) The following sentences all begin with a demonstrative pronoun as the subject. Make non-specific predicates (singular or plural according to the subject given) from the noun-adjective combinations given in parentheses (make appropriate changes for plural, non-specific, &c., e.g. انها (کوه - کوچان میان) آنها و ههائی کوچکند میان آشهائی کوچکند (شام السلام) آنها و ههائی کوچکند آشهائی در کرده السلام) آنها کوههائی کوچکند آشهائی در کوههائی کوچکند آشهائی در کوههائی کوچکند آشهائی در کوههائی کوچکند آشهائی در کوههائی کوچکند کارسام)

۱ این، (جوان - ایرانی) است ۶ آنها، (منیر - کوچک) بودند ۲ آن، (کوه - بزرک) است ۴ آنها، (کتاب - کوچک) بودند ۳ آنها، (بچه - بد) بودند ۴ آنها، (صندلی - نو) بودند ۴ تهران، (ثهر بزرک) است ۴ تهران، (شوه - کوچک) اند ۵ این، (کثور قدیمی) است

(b) Give both affirmative and negative answers to the following questions:

۱ آن جوان ایرانی است؟ ۳ این بچه کوچک است؟ ۲ آن کشورها بسیار قدیمی اند؟ ۴ آن میزها خوبند؟

۸ آن کوه خیلی کوچک است؟ ٩ اين كتابها قديمي اند؟ ۱۰ این گچ و پاک کن خوبند؟

۵ آن صندلی کاملا نو است؟ ع ابن ميز و صندلي خويند؟ ۷ آن شهر در آمریکاست؟

(c) Read and translate the following into English:

۱ آن کوه در آمریک نست. ۲ آن کتابها حرا اینجا نمت ۶ ۳ آن منز فا زُرک نست ولی خوب است. ۴ آن شرح اید است؟ ۵ آمریک کثوری نررک است ولی قدیمی ع آن ابرانی فی کحا بودند؟ ۷ ان منر و صندلی بزرک و خوبند ۸ ایران کثوری قدیمی است و تهران شهری نررک است در ایران. ٩ آن جوان ارانی نست، آمریک نی است. ۱۰ انها کتابهائی بسار نویند.

- (d) Translate into Persian:
- 1. Those Iranians are not here.
- 2. They were there.
- That table is too¹ small.

4. The books and pens are in the house.

¹There is no word in Persian equivalent to the English "too" in this meaning as dis-

tinguished from "very." The sense of "too much" and "too little" is conveyed by context and/or voice intonation.

LESSON TWO

- 5. These are (some) very good chairs. 7. Tehran is in Iran.

6. Where is that city?

8. Those children are Iranian.

Supplementary Vocabulary: Courtesy Phrases

salâm	Hello.
sobh bekhayr صبح بخبر	Good morning.
sobh-e shomâ bekhayr. صبح شما بخير	Good morning to you (in response).
háletân chetawr-ast? حالتان حطور است؟	How are you?
háletân chetawr-ast? حالتان حظور است؟ hâl-e shomâ chetawr- ast?	How are you?
bad nist. hâl-e shomâ بد نمیت. حال ثما چلور است • chetawr-ast?	Not bad. How are you?
hâl-e man-ham bad nist, حال من ہم بدنیت، قربان qorbân-e shomâ.	Not bad either, thanks.
ندا حافظ khodâ hâfez	Goodbye.

ھریش سوم

Lesson Three

§ 14 The ezâfe. The ezâfe (اضافة) is a construction that is indicated by an unstressed enclitic vowel (-e) and serves to link syntactically related nouns and adjectives together. It is not normally indicated orthographically. There are two types of ezâfe, the attributive adjectival and the possessive (to be introduced in §21 below).

14.1 The attributive adjectival *ezâfe* links an attributive adjective to a noun in the absolute state and renders a definite sense (modified nouns cease to function as generics).

the new book کتاب نو ketâb-e naw the new book ميز کهنه miz-e kohne the old table

(a) When added to nouns ending in consonants and in -i, the ezâfe is not usually indicated orthographically, although it can be written with the kasrel zir vowel and may be given by careful editors in highly ambiguous contexts (e.g. ميز كهنه).

(b) When added to words ending in $-\hat{a}$ and most words ending in -u, the ezâfe is pronounced -ye and the letter ζ is written.

the good books کتابهای خوب ketâbhâ-ye khub, the clever student دانشجوی زرنگ

(c) When added to words ending in the silent he, the ezâfe is indicated by a hamze written above the he (5) and is pronounced -ye. This indication, though fairly frequent, is not always given in printed texts, as in the second example below.

the big house خانهٔ بزرگ *khâne-ye bozorg* the bad child بچه بد

14.2 A series of attributive adjectives not co-ordinated by the conjunction is linked by the *ezâfe*.

LESSON THREE

khâne-ye qadimi-e bozorg-e the big old red house خانهٔ قدیمی بزرگ قومز germez

Adjectival order, a crucial feature of English, is not fixed in Persian. Multiple adjectives describing a single noun may come in any order whatsoever, the emphasis falling in descending order away from the noun. Thus,

خانهٔ بزرگ قدیمی قرمز khâne-ye bozorg-e qadimi-e qermez خانهٔ قرمز بزرگ قدیمی khâne-ye qermez-e bozorg-e qadimi خانهٔ قدیمی قرمز بزرگ khâne-ye qadimi-e qermez-e bozorg

all mean 'the big old red house' with differing degrees of emphasis on the adjectives.

- 14.3 When the indefinite enclitic falls on the noun, no *ezâfe* intervenes between the noun and its adjective, as described in §6 above.
- (a) When a noun in the non-specific state is modified by more than one adjective, the adjectives are linked by the conjunction _-o.

"(b) The indefinite enclitic may also fall at the end of a attributive adjectival series, i.e., after the adjective modifiers. In this case the adjectives are all linked by the *ezâfe* and do not require the conjunction. There is no essential difference in meaning whether the indefinite suffix is added to the noun itself or to the end of the adjectival sequence, but the latter is much more common in modern Persian.

14.4 Adverbial modifiers precede adjectives directly in the ezâfe construction.

§ 15 The noun in the predicate position.

15.1 An unqualified predicate noun, i.e. one that is not modified by an adjective or prepositional phrase, occurs as a categorical predicate of a copulative verb in the absolute state and indicates membership in the class. This means that, unlike English and most other languages, an unqualified predicate noun only occurs as singular and absolute regardless of the number of the subject. In the following examples the division between subject and predicate is indicated by the sign l.

in I ketâb-ast. اين كتاب است. This is a book. inhâ | ketâb-and. اينها كتابند. These are books. ali | dâneshju-ast. على دانشحو است. Ali is a student. -ali-o akbar I dâneshju على و اكبر دانشجو اند. Ali and Akbar are students. .pedar-e ali l pezeshk پدر على پزشک بود. Ali's father was a physician. pedarhâ-ye ân bachche- پدرهای آن بچهها پزشک Those children's fathers بودند. hâ | pezeshk-budand. were physicians.

15.2 When the predicate noun is modified by an adjective or by any other type of descriptive phrase (such as a prepositional phrase), it is in the non-specific state. As previously noted (§14.3), in such constructions the indefinite enclitic may be attached either to the noun or to the adjective. Note in the following examples that when -ast is preceded by the nonspecific enclitic -i, -ast becomes -st and the alef is dropped.

Ali is a clever على دانشجوئي زرنگ است.

الم alil[dâneshju]-i [zerang]-ast.] Ali is a clever student.

الم alil[dâneshju-ye zerang]-i-st.] student.

الم aliledâneshju-ye zerang]-i-st.

الم aliledâneshju-ye zerang]-i-st.

الم aliledâneshju-ye zerang]-i-st.

| Ali is a clever student.

In negative sentences, however, the indefinite enclitic always falls on the adjective and not on the noun.

¹When the *alef* of *ast* is dropped, the resulting *-i-st* is usually written together with the word.

LESSON THREE

alil dâneshju-ye zerang-i Ali is not a clever stu-dent. dent. منیست. مردنگی شکری پزشک âqâ-ye ja'faril pezeshk-e Mr. Ja'fari was not a

mashhur-**i** nábud. مشهوري نبود. famous physician.

15.3 In good literary prose style, in such constructions the affirmative present and past-absolute copulative verb tends to intervene between the noun and its modifiers when the noun carries the indefinite enclitic.

ali | dâneshju-ye zerang-i-st. على دانشجوى زرنگيست. (normal) ali l dâneshju-i-st zerang. على دانشجوئيست (literary) .pezeshk-e mehrbân-i-bud پزشک مهربانی **بود**. (normal) He was a kind .pezeshk-i-**bud** mehrbân پزشكى **بود** مهربان. physician. (literary) mo'allem-e khub-i-st. (normal) He is a good teacher. . معلمست خو س mo'allem-i-st khub. (literary)

15.4 With plural subjects, an unmodified predicate noun is in the absolute singular, while a modified predicate noun is in the indefinite plural.

These are books. inhâ | ketâb-ast/-and. اينها كتاب است (اند).

inhâ | ketâbhâ-ye mofid- These are useful books. .(اند). *i-ast/and*

inhâ | ketâbhâ-ye mofid-i These are not useful اینها کتابهای مفیدی books.

Synopsis of noun predicates:

(1) Unmodified predicate nouns are absolute singular:

ali dâneshju-ast. على دانشجو است. Ali is a student.

ali-o akbar dâneshju- Ali and Akbar are students.

(2) Modified predicate nouns are **nonspecific**, **singular or plural** in agreement with the subject:

ali dâneshju-ye khub-i-st. Ali is a good student. على دانشجوى خوبيست.

ali-o akbar dâneshjuhâ-على و اكبر دانشجوهاى ye khub-i-and.

kohne old, worn-out1

Ali and Akbar are good students.

Vocabulary 3

پسر	pesar boy, son	مرد	mard man (not woman)
تنبل	tambal lazy	مشهور	mashhur famous, well-
خراب	kharâb broken, ruined		known
خوشحال	khoshhâl happy	مفيد	mofid useful
دانشجو	dâneshju (university) student	نسبة	nesbatan relatively, fair- ly; also spelled نسبتا,
دانشگاه	dâneshgâh university		particularly in modern
دربارهٔ	darbâre-ye about, con- cerning		typesetting (for the or- thography see p. xxix
زرنگ	zerang clever, smart	•	§4)
زن	zan woman, wife	1v.t. :-	

¹Kohne is typically used for things that are dilapidated or worn out, e.g. old clothing. It is never used for people.

Exercise 3

(a) Transform the following noun-adjective phrases into nonspecific ezâfe constructions (e.g., كتاب خوي ketâb-i khub > كتاب خوي ketâb-e khub-i):

ء بچهانی سیار زرنک	۱ دانشجرنی زرنک
۷ مردی خیلی تتبل	۲ پسر قمنی خوشحال
۸ کتابهائی نسة مفید	۳ کثوری مثهور
٩ دانشو بائي خيلي خوب	٤ خانه بئى خراب
١٠ وانتُكَابِي كاملًا نو	۵ مردی زرنگ

LESSON THREE

(b) Give both affirmative and negative answers to the following:

۱ آنها بچه اند؟
۲ این دانشگاه قدیمی است؟
۳ معلمهای خوبی بودند؟
۳ معلمهای خوبی بودند؟
۴ تهران شهر خوبی است؟
۱ آن قلم کهنه مفید بود؟
۵ اینها مردهای تنبلی اند؟

(c) Determine whether the demonstrative given in parentheses is a pronoun or adjective, give the proper form, and translate—e.g. (1) قلمهای خوبی اند (ân) qalamhâ-ye khub-i-and (نان) قلمهای خوبی اند (ân) qalamhâ-ye khub-i-and 'those are good pens'; (2) قلمها خوبند (ân) qalamhâ khub-and خوبند (آن قلمها خوبند أثرا قلمها خوبند (ân) qalamhâ khub-and 'those pens are good':

۱ (این) جوان ایرانی است ع (آن) کتاب قدیمی ای بود ۲ (آن) شهر بزرگست ۲ (آن) صندلی نوی بود ۳ (آن) بچهاخوبند ۸ (این) کثور قدیمی است ۴ (آن) پنجره بای کوچکی اند ۹ (این) کثور بای بزرگی اند ۵ (آن) منرای کوچک بودند ۱۰ (آن) دانشو بای خوبی اند

(d) Read and translate:

۵ آن دانشجی زرنک در دانتگاه نیت. ۶ این کتابهای قدیمی خوب و مفیدند ۷ در آن دانتگابها دانشج ایتبل نیتند. ۸ آن کتاب اینجا نیت. کحاست ج ۱ تهران شهریت بزرگ و نسبه قدیمی. ۲ آن خازهای کههٔ خراب بودند ۳ آنها پسر نیمتند – مردند ۴ این پسر تمبلی نیست.

۹ این کتابهای قدیمی دباره ایران اند؟ ۱۰ آن مردیست بسیار مثهور در ایران.

- (e) Translate into Persian:
 - 1. That old pen is broken.
 - 2. He is not a student.
 - 3. They are good students.
 - 4. He is not in Tehran, but he is happy.
 - 5. Those big old houses are perfectly good.
 - 6. This is a relatively old country.
 - 7. They are clever boys.
 - 8. Where is that man?
 - 9. They weren't in that old city.
- 10. The children weren't there.

ورن جھارم

Lesson Four

§ 16 Pronouns. The personal (subject) pronouns are:

man من	I	lo mâ	we
to تو	you	shomâ شما	you
u le	he, she	ishân ایشان	thou
an آن	he, she, it	ânhâ آنها	they

- 16.1 Although they have other uses, these are basically subject pronouns and for the present may be used only as emphatic verbal subjects.
- 16.2 The second-person plural pronoun, شيل shomâ, is generally used, like the English 'you' and the French vous, as both the singular and plural second person. The singular second-person pronoun, تو to, like the French and Italian tu, is reserved for God, intimate friends and relatives, small children, social inferiors, and derogatory usage.
- 16.3 Although المستان ishân is properly the third-person plural pronoun, it is used in modern Persian almost exclusively as the "polite" singular to refer deferentially to a singular third person. The demonstrative pronouns (آنه and ما اله المعالفة) are used for all third persons, animate and inanimate, while the true pronouns العثان ishân are reserved for animate beings only.
- § 17 The present copulas. The present copula (the English verb 'to be') expresses a predicative state, as in 'he is good.' In their simplest form the copulas are enclitics joined to the predicate.

-am	I am	imنح	we are
i- ئ	you are	id- يـدٰ	you are
ast- است	he/she/it is	and- ند	they are

Since the copulas, as well as all verbal forms in Persian, convey adequate information on person and number to the hearer, the personal pronouns are not necessarily expressed.

17.1 Orthographically the enclitic forms are joined directly to a preceding noun or adjective when it ends in a consonant. Although *ast* may be joined in this manner (and the *alef* dropped), it is generally left as a separate word.

khub-am خوبم	khub-im خوبيم
khub-i خوبي	khub-id خوبيد
khub-ast خوب است (خوبست)	khub-and خوبند

17.2 When joined to words ending in -e and -i, all the enclitics are spelled separately beginning with an alef:

بچەام	bachche-am¹	بچەايم	bachche-im
بچەاي	bachche-i	بچەاي <i>د</i>	bachche-id
بچه است	bachche-ast	بچەا ند	bachche-and
ایرانی ام	irâni-am	ایرانی ایم	irâni-im
ایرانی ای	irâni-i	ایرانی اید	irâni-id
ایرانی است	irâni-ast	ایرانی اند	irâni-and

17.3 Joined to words in $-\hat{a}$ and -u, the enclitics are written as follows. Note that the *alef* of *-ast* is dropped after \hat{a} .

كجاام	kojâ-am	كجائيم	kojâ-im
كجائي	kojâ-i	كجائيد	kojâ-id
كجاست	kojâ-st	كجااند	kojâ-and
دانشجو ام	dâneshju-am	دانشجوئيم	dâneshju-im
دانشجوئي	dâneshju-i	دانشجوئيد	dâneshju-id
دانشجو است	dâneshju-ast	دانشجو اند	dâneshju-and

§18 The negative copula. The negative copulas are formed by adding the personal enclitic endings to *nist*, itself the third-person singular negative copula.

نيستم	místam	نيستيم	nístim
نیستی	nísti	نیستید	nístid

¹ The normal pronunciation of the sequence é-a, wherever it occurs, is á. Thus, بجسهام bachché-am is usually pronounced bachchám, بجه است bachché-ast is bachchást, and بجه است bachché-and is bachchánd.

² As a general orthographic rule, the *alef* of *ast* is dropped after \hat{a} (خجاست $kuj\hat{a}$ -st) and unstressed -i (عبر خوبیست $d\hat{a}$ neshju-ye khub-i-st). The a of ast may optionally be dropped after u and stressed i, but this is much less common.

nístand نیستند

§ 19 چیست *Kist* and چیست *chist.* When immediately followed by -ast or -and, the interrogatives چیست *ki* ('who') combine to form کیستند *kist*) چیستند *chist*) چیستند *kistand*.

?آن حست?

?تست أ ân bachche-ye kist?

? آن حهها كستند أân bachchehâ kístand?

in ketâbhâ darbâre-ye ایـن کـتـابـهـا دربـارهٔ chist? What's that?

Whose child is that?

Who are those children?

What are these books

about?

Vocabulary 4

أبى âbi light blue âqâ gentleman, sir, Mr. khânom lady, Miss/Mrs./ Ms.¹

pezeshk doctor, physician

اقال When اقا âqâ and خانم khânom precede family names, they take the ezâfe, as اقال المقال المقال

ja'be box جعبه

che what? (combines with -ast as چيست chist and with -and as حيستند

chístand)

زرد zard yellow

sabz green سبز

sormei dark blue سرمهای

sefid white سفيد

siâh black سیاه

qermez red قرمز

ki who? (combines with -ast as کست as کست kist and with

-and as کستند kístand)

mo'allem teacher معلم hamishe always

Exercise 4

(a) Give the appropriate form of the verb 'to be' in the present and past:

١ من ہمیشہ خوشحال ___ ٢ آنها تىب ___ ٢

(b) Give the correct form of the words in parentheses as predicates (assume that ∟ is plural and not the "editorial we"; for ∟ give forms for both the singular and the plural use of the pronoun):

- (c) Give the Persian for the following:
- 1. Who is that kind man?
- 2. What is in that big black box?
- 3. Why aren't you happy?
- 4. I'm not a doctor; I'm a teacher in this city.1
- 5. Who is that woman?
- 6. Isn't she Mrs. Alizadeh?
- 7. I'm a student in this university.

¹ Since "in this city" is simply information added to the main contrast between "doctor" and "teacher," it will follow the verb as a "tag" at the end of the sentence.

LESSON FOUR

Supplementary Vocabulary: Courtesy Phrases

Welcome (in greeting).

khósh-âmadid توش آمدید motashakker-am مشکرم mérsi Thank you.

Thanks (the French merci has become

a very common casual "thank you").

Much obliged (this phrase has a slight-

ly old-fashioned ring to it, but it is still

quite common).

خىلى ممنون kháyli mamnun خىلى ممنون khâhésh-mikonam خواہش مىكنم béfarmâid You're welcome (as a reply to "thank

you"). Please (as a request).

Please, be my guest (used when

offering something).

لارتش ينتجم

Lesson Five

§ 20 The vocative. The vocative, or direct address, is formed by shifting the stress of a noun from its normal position to the first syllable. In names with preceding titles, the stress is shifted to the first syllable of the title. There is no orthographic representation of this phenomenon.

	bachché b á chche	child
بچه	b á chche	Hey, kid!
. 11.	khânom-e alaví	Ms. Alavi
حامم علوی	{ khânom-e alaví kh ấ nom-e alavi	O Ms. Alavi!

- § 21 The possessive *ezâfe*. The *ezâfe* construction is also used to link two syntactically related nouns or noun and pronoun.
 - 21.1 The nouns linked by the *ezâfe* indicate possession by the latter of the former:

Since attributive adjectives must follow immediately the nouns they modify, they intervene between the possessor and the thing possessed in the possessive *ezâfe* construction.

21.2 The subject pronouns given in §16, as well as the interrogative $\int ki$, are used as second members of the *ezâfe* construction to indicate possession.

ketâb-e man my book کتاب من

LESSON FIVE

mâdar-e mehrbân-e shomâ your kind mother مادر مهربان شما aqalamhâ-ye naw-e ânhâ their new pens

? بچهٔ کیست bachche-ye kist? Whose child is s/he?

21.3 The *ezâfe* construction, while called possessive, is used extensively in Persian and ranges into meanings far beyond the English possessive. It is used, in fact, to indicate any type of syntactical relationship between two nouns.

راه تبریز râh-e tabriz the road to Tabriz, Tabriz Road

dâneshju-ye dâneshgâh university student دانشجوی دانشگاه

whereabouts in Iran? کجای ایران

Several of these idiomatic constructions have already been introduced, such as $\dot{a}q\hat{a}$ -ye and khânom-e, the ezâfe being required by the nouns $\hat{a}q\hat{a}$ and khânom before family names.

- (a) Most prepositions, like دربارهٔ darbâre-ye 'about' and مسرای barâ-ye 'for' take their complements through the ezâfe. These should be learned as items of vocabulary.
- (b) All geographical locations require the ezâfe between the geographical formation and the proper name.

the Mediterranean Sea دریای مدیترانه daryâ-ye mediterâne the Mount Damavand Mount Damavand

(c) All proper names of towns, cities, streets, buildings, etc. are linked to the generic noun by the ezâfe.

shahr-e tehrân the city Tehran شهر تهران اصفهان khiâbân-e esfahân Isfahan Avenue خيابان اصفهان keshvar-e irân the country Iran

21.4 The indefinite enclitic does not intervene in a possessive $ez\hat{a}fe$ construction as it does in the adjectival $ez\hat{a}fe$. When the first noun is indefinite, the phrase $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} yek-i \, az$ ('one of') and the plural is used with true possessives; with other types of $ez\hat{a}fe$, $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} yek$ may precede the construction.

یکی از کتابهای من yek-i az ketâbhâ-ye man one of my books, a book of mine

yek dâneshju-ye one (a) university student
dânesheâh

yek-i az dâneshjuhâ-ye one of the students of dâneshgâh-e tehrân Tehran University

§ 22 The long copula. The long forms of the copulas, which are always written as separate words and receive stress, are as follows.

هستم	hástam	I am	هستيم	hástim	we are
هستی	hásti	you are	هستيد	hástid	you are
هست	hást	he/she/it is	هستند	hástand	they are

22.1 The long forms are used for the existential state ('I am, I exist') and where the predicate is preceded by a prepositional phrase, normally rendered in English by 'there is' or 'there are.' The negative of *hast* is *nist*, which is similarly conjugated and is identical to the *nist* that means 'is not.'

.ali hast على هست	Ali is (exists).
dar âshpazkhâne qazâ-i در آشپزخانه غذائی hast.	There is some food in the kitchen.
dar âshpazkhane qazâ-i در آشپزخانه غذائی nist.	There is no food in the kitchen.
dar khâne-ye u ketâbhâ- در خانهٔ او کتابهای خوبی ye khub-i hast.	There are some good books in his house.
dar khâne-ye u ketâbhâ- در خانهٔ او کتابهای خوبی ye khub-i nist.	There are no good books in his house.

22.2 Whereas the short enclitic copulas cannot be stressed, the long forms may be stressed and are therefore used for emphasis, as in the following exchange:

.ali irâní-ast على ايراني است.	Ali is Iranian.
nákhayr, irâni níst. نخیر، ایرانی نیست.	No, he isn't Iranian.
chérâ, irâní hást! چرا، ایرانی هست!	Oh yes he is Iranian!

22.3 Following words ending in vowels, the long copulas are often used, especially in every-day speech, to avoid the conjunction of two vowels, especially two like vowels. This applies particularly to the second person singular and the first and second persons plural. In this case the long copula does not take stress.

.man irâní-hastam. I'm Iranian من ایرانی هستم.

LESSON FIVE

Hastam is used here to avoid *irâní-am*, a combination of vowels that may be avoided but is also fairly tolerated in spoken Persian.

Hastand is used here to avoid kojâ-and, a combination of vowels that is avoided whenever possible.

Hastid is used here to avoid the *i-i* of *âmrikâi-id*, a combination of vowels that is avoided whenever possible.

Hastand is used here to avoid *ketâbhâ-ye khúb-i-and*, unstressed *i* followed by *a*, a combination that is tolerated but often avoided in spoken Persian.

Vocabulary 5

از	az from (prep.)	دور	dur distant, far (az from)
اسم	esm name	راه	râh road, way
امرؤز	emruz today	على	ali Ali (masc. given name)
با	bâ with, by (preposition)	عليزاده	alizâde Alizadeh (family
برای	barâ-ye for (preposition)		name)
به، بـ	be to (preposition; may be	مادر	mâdar mother
	written as a separate word or joined directly	مريم	maryam Maryam (fem. name)
	to following word)	نزدیک	nazdik near, close (with
پدر	pedar father		ezâfe or be, to)
جا	<i>jâ</i> place	یک	yek one, a (adj., precedes
جديد	jadid new		word it modifies)
دختر	dokhtar girl, daughter	یکی	yek-i one (pronoun)

Exercise 5

(a) Give both affirmative and negative answers:

۱ این بچه پسرشاست؟

۳ او مادر علی است؟
۷ راه تهران از اینجاست؟
۶ من پدر آن بچه ام؟
۵ کنابهای ثنا اینها بستند؟
۹ او پدر خانم علیزاده است؟
۹ او پدر خانم علیزاده است؟
۹ اینها کتابهای ما بستند؟
۱ تا قای علیزاده با ثنا بود؟

(b) Give appropriate answers to the following:

اکتابهای جدید ما کها بمتند؟

الا تابهای جدید ما کها بمتند؟

الا خانهٔ ثما به اینجا نزدیک است؟

الا خانهٔ ثما به اینجا نزدیک است؟

الا تور ثما چیست؟

الا تور ثما چیست؟

الا تودند؟

الا تودند؟

الا تودند؟

الا تودند؟

الا تور کها بودند؟

الا تور کها بودند؟

الا تور کها بودند؟

(c) Change the following to the 'one of' construction (e.g., کـتــاب مــن ketâb-e man > يکي از کتابهای من yek-i az ketâbhâ-ye man):

۱ کتاب جدید علی ۴ بجهٔ آن زن ۷ دانشجری دانشگاه ۲ خانهٔ آقای علیزاده ۵ پسر مادر من ۸ خانهٔ این شهر ۳ شهر ایران عراه دور آن کثور

(d) Read and translate into English:

۱ خانهٔ جدید مادر و پدر شما کجاست؟ ۲ امروز آن مرد مهربان ایرانی در آن شهر بود.

LESSON FIVE

۳ شهر تهران از آمریکا خیلی دور است. ۴ خانم علیزاده، شما مادر آن دختر کوچک هستید؟ ۵ خانهٔ آنها کجای تهران بود؟ ۶ یکی از این کتابهای نو برای علی است.

- (e) Translate into Persian:
- 1. What is that little boy's name?
- 2. Is this for your wife?
- 3. No, it's not for her; it's for my little daughter.
- 4. What is that new book of yours about?
- 5. We aren't Iranians; we're Americans.
- 6. Your house is not far from the city.

Review I

- (a) Review the vocabulary lists for Lessons 1-5.
- (b) Read and translate the following:

۱ این آقا معلم است.
۲ آن خانم معلمیت بسیار مهربان.
۳ دختر کوچک شاهمیشهٔ خوشحال بود.
۲ آقا، در آن حعبهٔ بزرگ چیست؟
۵ دانشو چلی دانشگاه کجا اند؟
۲ آیان قام کههٔ کاملا خراب است.
۷ آیان زنهای نسبهٔ زرئی اند
۸ پرر او در کمی از شهر چلی ایران پزشک بود.
۹ معلم آن جوان زرنگ ایران پشک بود.

- (c) Translate the following into Persian:
 - 1. What was his name?
 - 2. Our house is fairly near Tehran.
 - 3. Iran is a large and very old country.
 - 4. Where are my books and pens?
 - 5. The windows in (of) this house are very small.
 - 6. Aren't you a student?
 - 7. What was that book about?
 - 8. Isn't your new pen green?
 - 9. No, it's not green; it's black.
- 10. There are some very small houses in this city.

ہ ہوتی ششم

Lesson Six

§ 23 The infinitive. All Persian infinitives end in stressed -dán or -tán. Following vowels and voiced consonants the ending is -dan; following voiceless consonants the ending is -tan.

mândán ماندن	to remain
دادن dâ dán	to give
gereftán گرفتن	to take

Although in quoting items of vocabulary the Persian infinitive is equated with the English infinitive, in fact their uses hardly ever coincide. The idiomatic uses of the Persian infinitive will be introduced later.

§ 24 The past stem and the past absolute tense. The past absolute tense of all verbs is formed by (1) dropping the infinitival ending -an, giving a past stem in d or t, and (2) adding the following enclitic personal endings:

am (I) -am	-im (we)
ن -i (you)	- id (you)
— (he, she, it)	and (they) ند

With the addition of the above endings, the stress remains constant on the final syllable of the past stem. An example of the past absolute conjugation, from the verb *âvordan* 'to bring,' is as follows:

âvórdam آوردم	I brought	âvórdim آورديم	we brought
âvórdi آوردی	you brought	âvórdid آورديد	you brought
âvórd آورد	he/she/it brought	âvórdand آوردند	they brought

- 24.1 Expressed pronominal subjects are not necessary in Persian since they are implicit in the verb. The pronouns are expressed only under the following conditions:
 - (a) special emphasis is given to the pronoun:

?shomâ raftid شما رفتيد

Did you go?

.man bordam من بردم

I took (it).

(b) enclitic هم -ham ('too, also') is added to the subject pronoun:

.man-ham raftam من هم رفتم

I went too.

. anhâ-ham âmadand آنها هم آمدند

They came too.

(c) two different subject pronouns are contrasted:

.man raftam-o u mând من رفتم و أو ماند

I went and he stayed.

- 24.2 The negative past absolute of all verbs is formed by prefixing stressed $n\hat{a}$, which removes the stress from its position in the affirmative.
- (a) The negative prefix is connected orthographically to all verbs beginning with consonants.

nágereftim نگرفتیم

we did not take

náraftand نرفتند

they did not go

(b) In verbs beginning with vowels other than i-,¹ a -y- is infixed between the negative prefix and the *alef* of the stem.

náyafzudam (two spellings) نیافزودم، نیفزودم مینفزودم افزودم افزودم افزودم مینفزودم مینفزودم مینفزودم مینفزودم مینفردد، نیافرد مینفردد، نیافردد، نیافردد، نیافردد مینفردد، نیفتادم مینفتادم مینفتادم (two spellings) افتادم

Some writers, preferring a more "phonetic" orthography, drop the alef after the infixed -y- in stems beginning with a- and o- (e.g., either نیفترودم or منیفزودم or منیفزودم for náyafzudam and either نیفتادم for náyoftâdam). The pronunciation remains the same in either case. In verbs beginning with â- the alef cannot be dropped, but the retention of the madde is a matter of personal preference (e.g., either غناورد or مناورد or or information).

- 24.3 The past absolute tense corresponds generally to the English simple past.
- (a) It indicates an action done once and completed in the past.

.be tehrân raftam به تهران رفتم

I went to Tehran.

. be u qalam-i dâdam به او قلمي دادم

I gave him a pen.

¹There is only one verb in Persian that begins with the vowel i, namely ایستادن istâdan 'to stand, stop.' With this verb the negative prefix may be either attached directly to the alef as نه ایستادم (náistâdam) or written separately as نه ایستادم (same pronunciation).

LESSON SIX

(b) The past absolute of stative verbs indicates that the state ceased to pertain in the past.

پدر مهدی استاد **بود**. Mehdi's father **was** a professor (i.e., he is no longer one).

hich chiz námând. هیچ چیز نماند.

Nothing **remained** (there was nothing left).

.námândam نماندم

I didn't stay (i.e., I moved on at some point in the past).

(c) It is used for actions "as good as done" and states just perceived to have come about.

khob, raftam. خوب، رفتم

OK, I'm gone (I've got

to go now).

ali âmad. على آمد

Here's Ali (he is just perceived to have

come).

hâlâ khordam. حالا خوردم

I've just eaten.

§ 25 The specific direct-object marker. Definite or specific direct objects of verbs are marked by the enclitic $\sqrt{-r\hat{a}}$, which may be either attached orthographically or left separate. This enclitic marks direct objects that are specific, grammatically or semantically. Nouns are construed as specific in the following cases:

(a) all proper names.

?irân-râ didid ايرانرا ديديد

Did you see Iran?

?ali-râ kojâ didid على ا كجا ديديد

Where did you see Ali?

(b) all personal and demonstrative pronouns. Note that man 'I' combines with $-r\hat{a}$ to form the irregular $m\acute{a}r\hat{a}$; to 'you' combines regularly with $r\hat{a}$ but the resulting $t\acute{o}r\hat{a}$ is spelled $i\vec{r}$ $t\acute{o}r\hat{a}$.

? márâ kojâ didid مرا كجا ديديد

Where did you see me?

.tórâ nádidam ترا ندیدم

I didn't see you.

. ân-râ gereftand آن اگر فتند

They took it.

(c) all nouns described by demonstrative adjectives or by the possessive ezâfe.

. آن خانههارا نديدم ân khânehâ-râ nádidam. I didn't see those houses

? khâne-ye u-râ kharidid? Did you buy his house خانهٔ اورا خریدید

an ketâbhâ-ye shomâ-râ They bought those books آن کتابهای شمارا kharidand خرىدند.

. خانهٔ على را نديدم. khâne-ye ali-râ nadidam. I didn't see Ali's house.

(d) Since the complement of the phrase یکی از yek-i az ('one of') and the negative هيچ يك از hich yek az ('none of') is always considered specific, the entire phrase is construed as definite and is therefore marked with -râ. As a general rule, when the last element in a direct-object string is specific, it is marked with -râ.

. يكى از آنهارا خواستم yek-i az ânhâ-râ khâstam I wanted one of those. hichyek az ketâbhâ-ye I didn't bring any of your هیچیک از کتابهای shomâ-râ náyâvordam. books.

(e) The reciprocal pronouns کدیکر yekdigar and هدیک hamdigar ('each other') are always construed as definite.

hamdigar-râ didim همدیگررا دیدیم. . yekdigar-râ nádidand کدیگر را ندیدند

We saw each other.

They didn't see each other.

(f) True indefinite or non-specific direct objects are marked by the indefinite enclitic but not by -râ.

sedâ-i náshenidam I didn't hear a sound. دیگری خواستم. ketâb-e digar-i khâstam. I wanted another book sedâ-i náshenidam صدائي نشنيدم.

(any other book).

A specific indefinite object ('a certain...') takes both the indefinite enclitic and the object marker -râ.

.sedâ-i-râ shenidam صدائي را شنيدم

I heard a (certain) sound.

ketâb-e degar-i-râ کتاب دیگریرا خواستم.

I asked for another (particular) book.

LESSON SIX

Vocabulary 6

آوردن	âvordan to bring	دیگر	digar other
اهل	ahl people; ahl-e native of,	روی	ru-ye on
	from	شنيدن	shenidan to hear
بودن	budan to be	كتابخانه	ketâbkhâne library
چرا	chérâ yes (in response to a negative question), ohyes (contradicts a nega-	گرفتن	gereftan to take, take hold of; to grab, grasp; to get, receive
	tive statement)	هم	-ham (enclitic, may not
چيز	<pre>chiz thing (usually tangible)</pre>	1	follow a verb) too, also; (with negatives) either;
خواسته	khâstan to want, to ask for		ham X ham Y both X and
دادن	dâdan to give		Y
دوست	dust friend	همديگر	hamdigar each other
ديدن	didan to see	یکدیگر	yekdigar each other
:0.15	diruz vesterday		

Exercises 6

(a) Give the proper ending for the verbs given in parentheses:

۱ ما (ديدن).	۸ ما (کر فتن).	۱۴ تو آنهارا به او (دإدن).
۲ آنها (آوردن).	۹ آن را اینها (خواست).	۱۵ ثما (شنیدن)؟
۳ ایثان چه (کرفتن)؟	۱۰ من آنجا (بودن).	۱۶ دوسهای ایثان اینارا
۴ او (نشنیدن).	۱۱ ما ایران را (دیدن).	برای ما (آوردن).
۵ من (آوردن).	۱۲ این صندبی را کی	۱۷ او در آن شهر (نبودن).
عرتو اين را (خواست).	(آوردن)؟	۱۸ دانشج کو کتابهارا (کرفتن).
۷ ثما مرا (ديدن).	۱۳ من قلم شاراً (كر فتن).	

(b) Give affirmative answers to the questions. Contradict the negative statements (e.g., in khub nist > chérâ, khub-ast).

(c) Read and translate:

۱ دوسهای مارا ندیدند ۲ آن قام دیگر را خواست. ۳ کتاب مرا به او دادی ؟ ۴ آنهارا شنیدم. ۵ آن چنر ادا چرا کر فقید ؟

- (d) Translate into Persian:
- 1. Didn't you hear that? Yes, I did.1
- 2. My friend brought these books to the library yesterday.²

- 3. Who wanted these things?
- 4. They gave the pens to our friends.
- 5. I didn't see Maryam's mother yesterday.
- 6. We too saw them on the table.
- 7. I didn't bring anything.
- 8. They gave them to my friend.
- 9. I saw you in the library yesterday.
- Didn't you want this book? Yes, I did.

¹ For the English short answer, the full verb is given in Persian.

² This sentence contains all the elements of a Persian sentence, the normal, unmarked order of which is (1) temporal expressions, (2) subject, (3) direct object, (4) prepositional phrases modifying the verb, (5) verb. Any element out of this order is marked, highlighted, or emphasized in some way.

LESSON SIX

Supplementary Vocabulary: Countries, Peoples, and Languages

cor	untry	، تابع	citizen	language زبان
âzarbâyjân آذبا يجان	Azerbaijan	، آذربایجانی	âzarbâyjâni	torki گرکی
âlmân آكمان	Germany	<i>O</i> ,	âl m âni	almâni آلانی
âmrikâ آمريك	USA ¹	، آمریک انی	âmrikâi	englisi انگلری
armanestân ارتمتان	Armenia	، ارمنی	armani	armani ارمنی
orupâ اروپا	Europe	~ * /	orupâi	_
ozbakestân ازبكستان	Uzbekistan	، ازبک	ozbak	ozbaki ازبکی
ابانیا espânyâ			espânyâi	espânyâi²
ostorâlyâ انترالي	Australia	- "	ostorâlyâi	englisi انگار
esrâil اسراني	Israel	، اسرائیلی	esrâili	ebri عری
otrish الحريث	Austria	، الحريثي	otrishi	آلانی almâni
afqânestân افغانستان	Afghanistan	، افغان	afqân {	fârsi فارى pashtu پېتو
الخرار aljazâyer			aljazâyeri	arabi عربی
englestân انكلتان	England	، انگلیس	englis	englisi انگاری
ايتالي itâlyâ	Italy	ا ایمالیانی	itâlyâi	itâlyâi ایالیانی
irân ותוט		ا ایرانی	irâni	fârsi فارسی
belzhik بلژیک	Belgium	ا بلژیکی	belzhiki	_
bolqârestân بلغارستان		ا بلغار	bolqâr	bolqâri بلغاري
pâkestân باكستان	Pakistan	_ا پاکسانی	pâkestâni	ordu اردو
portoqâl برتعتال		- 3	portoqâli	portoqâli پرتقالی
tâjikestân راجيكتان		ا تاجیک اربی	-	fârsi فارسی
torkmanestân			torkman	torkmani ترکمنی
torkiye ترکیہ	Turkey	ا ترک	tork	torki ترکی

Occasionally the old-fashioned اتازونی etâzuni for the 'United States' will also be encountered.

² Also, اسپانیول espânyol.

تونس	tunes	Tunesia	تونسي	tunesi	عربی	arabi
چين وي	chin	China	م. مينې	chini	حيني بويني	chini
دانارك	dânmârk	Denmark	دانارى	dânmârki	دانارى	dânmarki
روب	rusiye	Russia	روس	rus	روسی	rusi
ژاین	zhâpon	Japan	ثرابنی	zhâponi	ژاپنی	zhâponi
مورير	suriye	Syria	موری	suri	عربی	arabi
بوند	sued	Sweden	موندى	suedi	موندي	suedi
رویس	suis	Switzerland	موتسي	suisi		_
عراق	erâq	Iraq	عراقی	erâqi	عربی	arabi
عربستان	arabestân	Arabia	عرب	arab	عربی	arabi
فرانسه	farânse	France	فرانسوي	farânsavi	فرانسه	farânse
فلطين	felestin	Palestine	فلطيني	felestini	عربی	arabi
قرقيزستان	qerqizestân	Kyrghyzstan	قرقنر	qerqiz	قرقنری	qerqizi
قزاقستان	qazâqestân	Kazakhstan	قزاق	qazâq	قزاقى	qazâqi
	, kânâdâ /		كأناداني	kânâdâi		_
	kordestân '		-	kord	_	kordi
كرجستان	gorjestân	Georgia	كرجى	gorji	كرجى	gorji
لبنان	lobnân	Lebanon	تبناني	lobnâni	عربی	arabi
لهستان	lehestân	Poland	تستانی	lehestâni	نستانی	lehestâni
•/	majârestân		•/	majâr	محاری •	majâri
مراكسش	marâkesh	Morocco	مراكش	marâkeshi	عربی	arabi
مصر	mesr	Egypt	مصری	mesri	عربی	arabi
نروژ	norvezh	Norway	نروژی	norvezhi	نروژی	norvezhi
حلند	holand	Holland	هلندي	holandi	حلندى	holandi
ہندوستان		India	ہندی	hendi	ہندی	hendi
يو نان	yunân	Greece	يوناني	yunâni	يونانى	yunâni

لارنس هفتم

Lesson Seven

§ 26 Compound verbs. The compound verb, the type that accounts for the vast majority of verbs in Persian, consists of a non-verbal element and a verbal element. The non-verbal element may be (1) a noun such as كُلُو 'work' as in the compound كار كسردن kâr-kardan 'to work, to do something,' (2) an adjective like بيدا كردن paydâ 'found' as in the compound بيدا كردن paydâ-kardan 'to find,' or (3) an adverb like پيش رفتن pish 'forward' as in پيش رفتن pish-raftan 'to advance, go forward,' or به bar 'up, over' as in برداشتن bar-dâshtan 'to pick up.'

26.1 In compound infinitives stress is on the final syllable:

بزرگ شدن bozorg-shodán to grow up bar-dâshtán to pick up

26.2 In finite compound forms stress falls on the final syllable of the non-verbal element, and voice intonation falls rapidly away on the verbal element, which receives no stress at all.

They returned from egashtand school yesterday.

and a returned from school yesterday.

and a returned from school yesterday.

They found my pen.

and kardand

. I picked the book up. کتابرا برداشتم.

26.3 In the negative, the negative prefix takes its place before the verbal element and removes the primary stress from the non-verbal element, leaving a secondary stress on the final syllable of the non-verbal element.

They did not pick the کتابهارا برنداشتند. منطقهhâ-râ bàrnádâshtand books up.

عام مرا پیدا نکردند. qalam-e ma-râ paydầnákardand pen.

26.4 Generic objects form compounds with the verb. They are not marked

with the direct-object marker.

ketâb-khândam كتاب خواندم.

I read books.

nâme-neveshtand نامه نوشتند.

They wrote letters.

§ 27 The continuous prefix. The prefix g $m\ell$ - is added in all tenses to all verbs (except the two noted below) to convey a progressive, continuous, or habitual aspect to the action or state of the verb.

míraftam ميرفتم، مىرفتم.

I was going, I used to go

... be shahr míraftam ke...

I was going to town when...

har ruz be shahr هر روز به شهر میرفتم. míraftam.

I used to go to town every day.

Two verbs, בוליים budan 'to be' and simple כוליים dâshtan 'to have,' never take the mi- prefix in any tense. Some compounds of dâshtan (like bar-dâshtan 'to pick up') do take the mi- prefix and others do not; they will be noted in the vocabularies.

.javân budam جوان بودم

I was young / I used to be

young.

.pul dâshtand يول داشتند

They had / used to have money.

Orthographically the continuous prefix may be either left separate or joined to the verb; there is no standard practice. When joined to verbs beginning with *alef*, the prefix may be joined directly to the *alef* or, more "phonetically," the *alef* may be dropped as with the negative prefix. When joined to verbs beginning with \hat{a} -, the *alef* is retained, whereas the *madde* may be dropped or not at will.

میرفتم، میرفتم (two spellings) میرفتم، میافتادم، میافتادم، میافتادم، میافتادم، میافتادم، میآمدم، میآم

27.2 In the past absolute of compound verbs the continuous prefix is added to the verbal element. Stress, however, remains on the last syllable of the non-verbal element and does not shift to the prefix as it does in simple verbs.

dár-miraftam درمیرفتم.

I was running away

LESSON SEVEN

We used to live there.

If, however, the continuousness of the action is to be particularly emphasized, an added stress may fall on the continuous prefix, resulting in a dual stress pattern.

I was running away.

We *used* to live there (but not any longer).

27.3 The negative past continuous is formed by prefixing the negative particle to the continuous particle. When followed by *mi*- the negative particle always changes to *né*-, giving inémi-. In compound verbs the negative prefix takes primary stress, and a secondary stress falls on the final syllable of the non-verbal element.

§ 28 The past participle. The past participle, like the English past participle, has a passive force with transitive verbs and a past force with intransitive verbs. It is formed by adding stressed $-\acute{e}$ to the past stem.

§ 29 The present perfect tense. The present perfect is formed by adding the present copulas to the past participle; stress remains on the last syllable of the participle. This tense corresponds generally to the English present perfect—with the important exceptions noted below. The present perfect conjugation of *raftan* is as follows:

rafté-am I've gone رفته ایم rafté-im we've gone رفته ایم rafté-i you've gone رفته اید rafté-id you've gone رفته اید rafté-ast he/she/it's gone رفته اید rafté-and they've gone

The negative is formed by prefixing the stressed negative ná- to the participle.

The negative is formed by prefixing the stressed negative ná- to the participle.

The negative is formed by prefixing the stressed negative ná- to the participle.

The negative is formed by prefixing the stressed negative ná- to the participle.

The negative is formed by prefixing the stressed negative ná- to the participle.

The negative is formed by prefixing the stressed negative ná- to the participle.

The negative is formed by prefixing the stressed negative ná- to the participle.

The negative is formed by prefixing the stressed negative ná- to the participle.

The negative is formed by prefixing the stressed negative ná- to the participle.

The negative is formed by prefixing the stressed negative ná- to the participle.

The negative is formed by prefixing the stressed negative ná- to the participle.

The negative is formed by prefixing the stressed negative ná- to the participle.

The negative is formed by prefixing the stressed negative ná- to the participle.

nárafte-and they haven't gone نرفتهاند

nárafte-ast s/he hasn't gone

29.1 In Persian the present perfect tense is called the "relational past" (الف mâzi-e naqli), and it is used for any action that was accomplished or state that pertained in the past, the effects of which are still pertinent or felt to be relevant in some way to a present situation. This definition covers many uses of the English present perfect, but the Persian tense has applications to which the English present perfect does not correspond at all. When historical truths are felt to be of special relevance to the present, or to transcend the past, they are couched in this tense. Compare and contrast the following examples.

In the first example it is implied that he is no longer king: the state no longer pertains and is not considered of relevance to the present. In the second example it is still true now that he was both a king and great: the historical validity of the statement holds true today.

The first example is a simple statement of fact: at one point in time he died without any special significance for the present. The second example is a historical fact that is still pertinent: it may be a source of pride for the city of Ghazna that Biruni is buried there, or one may be thinking of the historical significance of where he died, but the relevance is stated in terms of the present.

In the first example Ali's father is no longer a physician: he may have taken up another profession or he may be dead. In either case, the "pastness" is stressed. In the second example it is of some particular relevance to a present situation that Ali's father was a doctor in the past: his "having been a physician" is emphasized, not the pastness of the state.

29.2 The present perfect continuous is formed by adding the continuous prefix *mi*- to the participle. The negative present perfect continuous is regularly

LESSON SEVEN

formed.

در پنجسالگی به آن dar panjsâlegi be ân I used to go to that kindergarten در پنجسالگی به آن kudakestân mírafte- when I was five years old (and

that I did so is of some relevance to the topic at hand).

némirafte-am I wasn't in the habit of going.

The present perfect continuous is used to describe an act or state that was continuous or habitual in the past, the historical validity of which still holds true now and is of relevance.

ebn-e sinâ dar esfahân ابن سینا در اصفهان zendegi-mikarde-ast زندگی میکرده است.

Avicenna lived in Isfahan.

Vocabulary 7

Nouns

englisi English (language) انگیسی

dars lesson درس

ruznâme newspaper روزنامه

زان; zabân language, tongue

sedâ voice, sound

أورسي fârsi Persian (language)1

kâr work, job, thing (one does)

madrase school مدرسه

¹The name of this language has been "Persian" in English for at least five hundred years. The term "Farsi" should be avoided.

Verbs

آمدن âmadan to come

برداشتن bar-dâshtan to pick up (takes the mi- prefix)

bar-gashtan to return, come back, go back, turn around برگشتن پیدا کردن paydâ-kardan to find

pish-raftan to go forward, advance, progress

khândan to read, call, recite خواندن

dâshtan to have, hold (never takes the mi- prefix)

dars-khândan to study ('to study something, Persian, physics, &c.' does not normally need the dars- member of the compound: فارسى خواندن fârsi-khândan normally conveys 'to study Persian' as well as 'to read Persian')

رفتن *raftan* to go زندگی کردن *zendegi-kardan* to live

kâr-kardan to work, be doing something madrase-raftan to go to school, attend school مدرسه رفتن neveshtan to write نوشتن

Exercise 7

(a) Give the past habitual/progressive of the verbs in parentheses:

۱ دوست من (نامه نوشتن). ۲ جرا کار ما (پیش نرفتن)؟ ۳ مادر و پدر من در این خانه (زندگی ۸ شما از مدرسه (آمدن). ۴ من از شهر به خانه (برگشتن). ۵ آن کتابهار ا ما (خواندن).

(b) Give the present perfect of the verbs in parentheses and give the meaning:

۱ من ہم یک نامدای (نوشتی). ۲ قلم مراکی (برداشت)؟ ۳ ثما ہم (مدرسه رفتن). ۴ او ہم کتابی (نوشتن). ۵ در این خانه کی (زندگی کر دن)؟

- (c) Translate into Persian:
- 1. Who has come today?
- 2. I used to study Persian.
- 3. The newspapers were on the table.
- 4. I used to read a lot of books.
- 5. They haven't returned from school.
- 6. You haven't worked today.
- 7. We were writing letters yesterday.
- 8. Haven't they given it to you?
- The library had a lot of books.
- 10. She hasn't gone to school; she's too little.

¹ Use the present perfect tense.

ہریس حشتم

Lesson Eight

§ 30 Uses of چه che and كدام kodâm.

30.1 Adjectival che.

(a) Exclamative. Che followed by an adjective is equivalent to the English 'how ...!'

!che khub چه خوب!

How good!

!in khâne che ârâm-ast اين خانه چه آرام است!

How quiet this house is!

Followed by a noun in the absolute state or the plural, *che* means 'what sort aof, what kind of...?'

?in che vaz'-ast این چه وضع است

What sort of situation is this?

?in che harfhâ-st این چه حرفهٔ است؟

What kind of talk is this?

(b) When *che* is followed by a noun, or noun + adjective, in the indefinite state, it means 'what a ...!'

!che shahr-i چه شهری

What a city!

!che sâkhtemânhâ-i چه ساختمانهائي!

What buildings!

حسین چه دوست hosayn che dust-e khub-i- What a good friend جسین چه دوست! خوبیست! Hossein is

(c) The interrogative adjectival *che* ('what?') is normally followed by a noun, singular or plural, with the indefinite enclitic. When the unmodified noun following *che* is construed as non-specific, it does not take $-r\hat{a}$ when it is direct object.

?د شهرى? che shahr-i

What city?

? che shahrḥâ-i چه شهرها ئي؟

What cities?

? che ketâb-i khândid چه کتابی خواندید

What book did you read?

che ketâbhâ-i khânde-id? What books have you جه کتابهائی خوانده اید؟

The modified noun in this construction is usually construed as specific and thus requires $-r\hat{a}$ when direct object even though it bears the indefinite enclitic required by che.

Likewise, unmodified nouns take the object marker when they are construed as specific.

(d) The plural of چها che is چها chehâ ('what all?').

Other interrogatives also admit similar plural constructions.

30.2 The interrogative adjective $kod\hat{a}m$ ('which?') precedes the noun it modifies. As direct objects, nouns modified by $kod\hat{a}m$ are always construed as specific and require $-r\hat{a}$.

LESSON EIGHT

§ 31 Comparison of adjectives. The comparative suffix for all adjectives is -tar. This suffix may be joined to an adjective ending in a connective letter or left separate, except with adjectives ending in the silent he, to which no suffix is ever joined directly.

بزرگ bozórg big > خوتاه kutâh short > ماده sâdé simple > pishrafté advanced > bozorgtár bigger بزرگتر (بزرگتر) bozorgtár bigger کوتاهتر (کوتاهتر) sâdetár simpler سادهتر pishraftetár more advanced

31.1 The preposition for the second term of comparison, when it is a noun, pronoun or numeral, is |az| az. The az-phrase normally precedes the comparative adjective, although it may also follow.

از آن ساده تر = ساده تر از $az\ \hat{a}n\ s\hat{a}detar = s\hat{a}detar$ simpler than that $az\ \hat{a}n$

شما از من بلندترید shomâ az man bolandtar- You are taller than I am.
(بلندتر از منید). id (bolandtar az man-id)

'Much' with the comparative is expressed by بسيار besyâr, خيلی be-marâtib, all of which may precede the element of comparison when it precedes the comparative adjective.

zahrâ az shirin kháyli زهرا از شیرین خیلی khoshgeltar-ast or خوشگلتر است. zahrâ kháyli az shirin زهرا خیلی از شیرین خوشگلتر است. khoshgeltar-ast

Zahra is much prettier than Shirin.

kâr-e man az kâr-e کار من از کار شما بسیار shomâ besyâr sakhttarast

My job is much more difficult than yours.

in keshvar **be-marâteb** این کشور **بمراتب** pishraftetar az ân پیشرفته تر از آن کشور keshvar-ast

This country is much more advanced than that country.

31.2 The comparative adjective with از همسه az hame is equivalent to the English 'the most ... of all.'

in mive az hame این میوه ا**ز همه** خوشمزه**تر** است. This fruit is the most delicious of all.

رضا بلند**تر از همه** است rezâ bolandtar az hame- Reza is the tallest of all.

sâkhtemân-e az-hame- ساختمان از همه بلندتر bolandtar-e irân ایران کدام است؟ kodâm-ast? Which is the tallest building in Iran?

- 31.3 The superlative suffix is ترين -tarin, which, like the comparative suffix, may or may not be attached orthographically to the adjective (with the exception of the silent he, to which it may not be attached). The -tarin adjective is a "bound form," meaning that it must precede a noun and cannot occur without a following noun.
- (a) As an attributive adjective the superlative directly precedes the noun it modifies. 'In' after a superlative is rendered by the *ezâfe*.

khoshgeltarin dokhtar خو شگلترین دختر the prettiest girl khoshgeltarin pesarhâ خو شگلتر بن بسر ها the best-looking boys mofidtarin ketâb-e in مفید ترین کتاب این ketâbkhâne کتابخانه the most useful book in this library mofidtarin ketâbhâ-**ye** in مفید ترین کتابهای این ketâbkhâne the most useful books in this library sakhttarin ruz-e سختترین روز زندگانی the most difficult day of zendegâni-e man my life sakhttarin ruzhâ-ye سختترین روزهای zendegâni-e man the most difficult days of my life

(b) As predicate, the superlative must be followed by a noun; it never occurs as a free predicate adjective (instead, the -tar az hame construction given above is used).

Note particularly the order of the second and third examples above: equational

LESSON EIGHT

sentences with demonstratives as subjects and specific/definite predicates have either the copulative verb between the subject and predicate, as in the second example (ân-bud ...), or the order of subject and predicate reversed, as in the third example (... in-ast). That is, in either case the equational verb follows the demonstrative immediately.

(c) The superlative adjective followed by the $ez\hat{a}fe$ and a plural noun renders 'the most ... of ...'

sakhttarin-e ruzhâ-ye سخت**ترین** روزهای zendegâni-e man زندگانی من mashhurtarin-e hame مشهور **ترین** همه dâneshgâhhâ-ye irân دانشگاههای ایران pishraftetarin-e پیشرفته **ترین** کشورهای pishraftetarin-e keshvarhâ-ye mashreqzamin

the most difficult (one) of
the days of my life
the most famous of all
the universities in Iran
the most advanced of the
countries in the East

- 31.4 Irregular comparatives and superlatives.
- (a) Although colloquially خوبتر khubtar and خوبترين khubtarin are occasionally heard, the preferred comparative and superlative forms of khub are derived from the now obsolete adjective به beh ('good'), giving بهترین 'behtar 'better,' بهترین 'behtarin 'best.'

in ketâb behtar az ân این کتاب بهتر از آن ketâb-ast کتاب است. in-ast behtarin jâ-ye اینست بهترین جای شهر shahr-e mâ

This book is **better** than that book.

This is the **best** place in our city.

(b) The word that serves as the comparative of بسميار besyâr and زياد ziâd ('much, many') is بيشتر bishtar ('more,' also occasionally simply بيش bish).

in az ân bishtar-ast. این از آن بیشتر است.

This is more than that.

Followed by an ezâfe, bishtar means 'most of':

بیشتر دوستهای او آنجا bishtar-e dusthâ-ye u ânjâ budand.

Most of his friends were there.

31.5 Both the adverbial 'more than ever' and the adjectival 'more ... than ever' are rendered by the phrase بيش از پيش bish az pish.

kâr-e mâ bish az pish کار ما بیش از پیش پیش بیش pish-miraft

Our work was progressing more than ever.

ân tâjer bish az pish آن تاجر بیش از پیش movaffaq-ast

That merchant is more successful than ever.

- 31.6 In comparative sentences of the type given above, the preposition for the second term of comparison is az. In the following cases, the conjunction of comparison, $\forall t\hat{a}$, is used:
 - (a) when the second term falls after the main verb.

shomâ bishtar kâr-kardid You worked more than I شما بیشتر کار کردید تا نص دید تا ئار کردید تا tâ man (did).

in sâdetar-ast tâ ân این ساده تر است تا آن.

This is simpler than that.

- (b) when the second term is preceded by a preposition or is a direct object.
- bishtar barâ-ye ânhâ kâr- I did more work for them بیشتر برای آنها کار کردم نا برای شما. تا برای شما. shomâ

ân-râ bishtar dust آنرا بیشتر دوست داشتم dâshtam tâ in-râ

I liked that better than this.

(c) when the comparison is not based on any distinct quality.

in bishtar âb-ast tâ این بیشتر آب است تا sharâb شراب.

This is more water than (it is) wine.

bishtar deh-ast ta shahr بيشتر ده است تا شهر.

It's more a village than (it is) a city.

Vocabulary 8

arâm quiet, calm آرام tâ than (for usage, see أسان âsân easy §31.6) ىلند boland tall, high; loud tâbestân summer تابستان ruz day روز له مه bah bah wow!, oh! (excla-زمستان zemestân winter mation of delight, sur-ود zud early; quick, fast prise, approval, etc.) behtar better sakht hard, difficult bishtar more; bishtar-e sard cold سرد kodâm which? (adj., most of

LESSON EIGHT

precedes the noun it modifies) kutâh short, low garm warm marateb مراتب marateb rank, degree; be marâteb much (in comparatives) نامه nâme letter vây woe!, oh no! واي hame-ye all (of) [for 'all this' and 'all that,' hame combines with in and ân inhame and ابن همه ânhame, often ان همه written together as one النهمه کار ,word, e.g.

inhame kâr 'all this work,' but همهٔ این کار hame-ye in kâr 'all of this work']

har every, each (precedes هر word it modifies, as هر har ruz 'every day')

مركدام harkodâm each one, every one

همه چیز hamechiz everything
hich (+ interrogative) any,
ever; (+ neg.) no, none
(hich precedes a noun in
the nonspecific state, as
میچ چیزی
hich chiz-i
'nothing')

Exercise 8

(a) Change the following statements to exclamations using واى or واى (e.g.: in khub-ast > bah-bah! in, che khub-ast!)

ع کار سختی بود. ۷ مدرسه قدیمی ایست. ۸ امروز روز سر دیست. ۹ دیروز کرم بود. ۱۰ اینها کتابهای آسانی اند ۱ آن شهر آرام بود. ۲ دختر نومیت. ۳ آن درس سخت بود. ۴ زمتان سر دی بود. ۵ این تابتان کرم است.

(b) Make questions of the following statements using کدام or چه:

۵ امروز روزنامه خواندهام. ۶ از آنجا کتابهائی برداشتند. ۷ آن خانم چیزهائی میخواست. ۸ مریم چیزهائی به شما داده است. ۱ در ایران شهرهائی دیدم. ۲ در آمریکا کار میکردیم. ۳ دیروز کاری کردند. ۴ در خانهٔ علی نامهای خواندیم. (c) Answer the following questions:

(d) Make sentences using the comparative (e.g.: $in-bozorg-\hat{a}n > in$ az $\hat{a}n$ bozorgtar-ast):

(e) Make superlative constructions two ways (e.g.: in khâne bozorg-ast > (1) bozorgtarin khâne in-ast, (2) khâne-ye bozorgtar az hame in-ast):

الأرنس نضم

Lesson Nine

- § 32 Other plurals. In addition to the suffix $-h\hat{a}$, which can be used to form the plural of any noun in Persian, especially in the more informal spoken idiom, there are several other plural formations in the literary language.
- 32.1 Substantives denoting animate beings, some parts of the body that occur in pairs, and a few other nouns (determined by idiomatic usage) form their plurals by suffixing $\sqrt{-\hat{a}n}$.
 - (a) This suffix is added directly to all nouns ending in consonants and -i.

ان ân >	أنان أ ânân those, they (persons)
مرد mard >	<i>mardân</i> men مردان
<irâni> ایرانی</irâni>	irâni ân Iranians ايرانيا ن
دست dast >	دستان dast ân hands
<pre>cerakht ></pre>	derakht ân trees درختا ن

(b) When this suffix is added to nouns ending in silent he, the he is dropped and a -g- is infixed before the plural suffix.

< dide >	dide gân eyes دیدگا ن
bachche >	بچگا ن <i>bachchegân</i> children
<parande> پرنده</parande>	<i>parandegân</i> birds پرند گان

(c) With nouns ending in $-\hat{a}$ and with most nouns ending in -u, a -y- is infixed before the plural suffix.

<dâneshju> دانشجو</dâneshju>	dâneshjuy ân students دانشجو یان
دانا dânâ >	clipio dânây ân learned (people)

(d) A few nouns ending in -u do not take the -y- infix:

بازو bâzu > بازوان bâzu**ân** arms بازوان bânu > بانوان bânu**ân** ladies

32.2 The Arabic "feminine" plural suffix ات -ât is used to form the plurals of

many Arabic words as well as of a sizeable class of words of Persian (and even Turkish) origin.

entekhâb > انتخاب التخابات entekhâbât elections انتخاب tabaqe > طبقات tabaqât classes, strata طبقه ما deh > دهات dehât ومايشات farmâyesh فرمايشات farmâyeshât orders فرمايشات ايلات الât tribes

Persian words ending in silent he and in -i infix -j- before the -ât suffix.

ميوجات » mive ميوجات ميوه mive > ميوجات د mive غارخانه kârkhâne كارخانجات د sabzijât greens ميزيجات sabzijât greens

32.3 The Arabic "masculine" plural suffix is -in, except when added to words that already end in -i, in which case it changes to ون -un.

معلم mo'allemin teachers معلم معلم mo'allemin teachers مأمور ma'mur > مأمورين ma'murin agents انقلابي enqelâbi enqelâbi انقلابيون = ruhâni روحانيون ruhâniun clerics

32.4 The Arabic "broken" plural. A vast number of Arabic words form the plural by a rearrangement of internal vowels. Fortunately for the student of modern Persian, not so many Arabic plurals are now in common use. In classical texts, however, Arabic words normally take their own Arabic plurals. The student's only recourse is the dictionary.

ketâb > تاب kotob books كتاب fekr > فكر afkâr thoughts, ideas فكر madrase > مدرسه madrase > مدرسه haqâyeq truths فلسوف faylasuf > فلاسفه falâsefe philosophers

§ 33 Pronominal possessives. Pronominal possession is expressed either by the noun $\lim_{n \to \infty} m \hat{a} l$ ('property') or by the demonstrative pronoun $\lim_{n \to \infty} \hat{a} n$ followed by the possessive $ez\hat{a}fe$ construction.

. That house is **theirs**. That house is **theirs**. ان خانه مال آنهاست؟ *inhâ mâl-e kist?* **Whose** are these?

LESSON NINE

ân mâl-e man-ast آن مال من است. in khâne mâl-e pedar-e ابن خانه مال يدر جواد iavâd-ast است.

That is mine.

This house is Javad's father's

Mâl-e tends to be used in modern Persian, whereas ân-e has fallen from everyday use except in more literary styles. Note the ellipsis of the second copula in the examples below. From this a general rule may be drawn: in parallel clauses containing identical verbs, one verb (usually the second) may be omitted.

khâne-ye ali bozorg-ast, Ali's house is big, but خانهٔ علی بزرگ است vali **ân-e** javâd ولي **آن** جواد بزرگتر. bozorgtar

Javad's is bigger.

sedâ-ye man boland-ast, صدای من بلند است ولی vali **mâl-e** mehti مال مهدی بلندتر. bolandtar

My voice is loud, but Mehti's is louder.

خوب است ولي آنهاي

ruznâmehâ-ye esfahân روز نامههای اصفهان khub-ast, vali ânhâ-ye tehrân behtar

The newspapers in Isfahan are good, but those in Tehran are better.

Vocabulary 9

entekhâb -ât election انتخاب emsâl this year امسال emshab tonight امشب bâq -hâ, -ât garden باغ pârsâl last year يارسال khoshmaze delicious خوشمزه deh -ât village ده dishab last night ديشپ زندگانه, zendegâni life, life span /entekhâb-shodan to be get elected, to be chosen

entekhâb-kardan to انتخاب كردن elect, to select, to choose

bozorg-shodan to grow بزرگ شدن up, get big

شب shab evening, night

dânestan to know, to realize1

مال mâl property; mâl-e property of, belonging to خریدن kharidan to buy

mive -hâ, -jât fruit -ke that (subordinating conjunction)

¹In the past tense when dânestan has the mi- prefix it means to know a fact, like the French savoir, e.g. ميدانستم mídânestam 'I knew (it), ميدانستم 'némidânestam 'I didn't know,' but without the mi- prefix it means 'to realize,' e.g. ندانستم که *nådânestam ke*... 'I didn't realize that...'

y**â** or

khordan to eat, drink خوردن شدن shodan to become goftan to say گفتن

Exercise 9

(a) Answer the following questions:

(b) Translate the following into English:

۱ آن ایرانیان کجا زندگی میکردند؟

۲ این دانشجویان بیشتر درس خواندهاند تا آنان.

۳ در انتخابات امسال کی انتخاب شده است؟

۴ آنانرا هر روز میدیدهام ولی امروز نیآمدهاند.

۵ پدر علی و مریم به شهر بزرگ رفته و برنگشته است.

ع جرا آنهارا انتخاب كردند؟

٧ نمى دانستم كه اين مال على است يا مال پدر شما.

۸ دیشب در باغ بزرگی میوهٔ خوشمزهای میخوردیم.

۹ چرا بلندتر نگفتید؟ صدای شمارا نشنیدم.

۱۰ بچههای آن ده همهٔ میوههای باغ شمارا خوردهاند.

- (c) Translate the following into Persian:
 - 1. Did you grow up in a small town?
 - 2. We used to go to school on (در) cold winter days.

LESSON NINE

- 3. Where did you see Ali and his father yesterday?
- 4. Which lesson was the easiest of all for you?
- 5. What good friends we had there!
- 6. Have you seen the doctor?
- 7. I have had a very difficult life.
- 8. We found the best book of all in the university library.
- 9. Your house is much quieter than mine.
- 10. The students worked harder (more) last year than this year.

This sentence is ambiguous in English: we may have found the book in the library or it may be the best book in the library. Give both versions in Persian.

ہریں وجمح

Lesson Ten

- § 34 The present stem. All verbs in Persian have a past stem readily derivable from the infinitive (as seen in §24). The present stem, however, cannot always be derived from the infinitive and must be learned as the second "principal part" of the verb.
- 34.1 One of the few regularly predictable present stems is that of verbs whose infinitives end in -idan; the present stem of almost all such verbs (with the notable exception of شنیدن shenidan 'to hear') is obtained by removing the -id- ending of the past stem.

INFINITIVE	PAST STEM	PRESENT STEM
رسیدن residan 'to arrive' >	<pre>resid-></pre>	-res رس
خريدن khar idan 'to buy' >	<-kharid->	-khar خر
فهمیدن fahmidan 'to understand' >	<-fahmid> فهمید	-fahm فهم

34.2 Verbs whose past stems end in -nd generally drop the -d- to form the present stem.

mândan 'to remain' >	<- <i>mând-</i> >	-mân مان
خواندن khândan 'to read' >	< - <i>khând خ</i> واند	-khân خوان

34.2 Although there are important exceptions, generally verbs whose past stems end in -kht- change the -kh- to -z- to form the present stem.

cukhtan 'to sew' > دوختن	<-d ukht ->	-duz دوز
rikhtan 'to pour' >	<- <i>rikht-</i> >	- <i>riz</i> ريز
andâkhtan 'to throw' >	andâ kht انداخت	انداز andâz-
bâkhtan 'to lose' >	<i>bâkht-></i>	<i>bâz-</i> باز

34.3 Almost all verbs with past stems in -udan change the -ud- to -â- for the present stem:

LESSON TEN

nemudan 'to show, appear' > نما المود الم

§ 35 The present indicative. The present indicative tense is formed by prefixing the stressed continuous marker ω mi- to the present stem and adding the following enclitic personal endings:

am- م	I	im- يم	we
i- ي	you	id- ید	you
ad- د	he/she/it	and- ند	they

These are the same personal endings that are used with the past tense, with the notable exception of the third-person singular. The continuous prefix may be joined or left separate, although when there is no orthographic "break" in the stem itself, attachment of the prefix sometimes results in words too long to be read comfortably (like مینشینند míneshinand 'they sit,' which can be recognized more easily when written مینشینند).

The present indicative conjugation of گیر gereftan (present stem گیر gir-) is as follows:

mígiram I take میگیرم	mígirim we take میگیریم
سیگیری mígiri you take	mígirid you take میگیرید
mígirad he/she/it takes میگیرد	mígirand they take میگیرند

35.1 The negative is formed by adding the negative prefix to the affirmative, which, as in the past, becomes $n\acute{e}$ - before mi-.

35.2 In compound verbs the continuous marker is prefixed to the verbal element, but the non-verbal element retains the stress in the affirmative. In the negative, the negative marker takes primary stress.

برميدارد	b á r-midârad	he picks up
بر نمیدارد	b à r-némidârad	he does not pick up
بزرگ میشوند	boz ó rg-mishavand	they grow up
بزرگ نمیشوند	bozòrg-némishavand	they do not grow up

35.3 Orthographic and phonetic changes.

(a) When the personal endings are added to stems ending in -aw-, the -w. ceases to be syllable-final and therefore changes to -v- throughout the inflection.

> رفتن raftan > ميروى míravam, ميروم míravi, &c. .míshavi, &c میشوی ,míshavam میشوم :-shaw شو < shodan شدن

míshenavi, &c. میشنوی ,míshenavam میشنوم :-shenidan شنو shenidan شنیدن

(b) With the addition of the personal endings to stems ending in vowels (effectively the only vowels in which verb stems end are $-\hat{a}$ and -u), a -y- is infixed before the first- and third-singular and third-plural endings (those that begin with -a-) and a hamze is infixed before the second singular and the first- and second-ي = person plural endings (those that begin with -i-). Examples are گفتن goftan > گ gu- and آمدن âmadan > آâ-.

> míguyam میگویم mígui مىگوئى míguyad مگ بد

míguim میگوئیم míguid میگوئید míguyand مىگەىند

míâyam میآیم míâi میآئی سآيد míâvad

míâim میآئیم míâid míâyand مآيند

35.4 The Persian present indicative corresponds to both the English simple present and the present progressive.

hamishe be ânjâ هميشه به آنجا ميروم.

I always go there.

. الا به آنحا مبروم. hâlâ be ânjâ míravam. I'm going there now

The present indicative also functions as the future in ordinary speech and prosewriting.

.fardâ be ânjâ míravam فردا به آنجا ميروم

I'm going there tomorrow.

?pas che kâr mikonid پس چه کار میکنید

What will you do then?

Learn the present stems of these verbs already introduced.

INFINITIVE

PRESENT STEM

âmadan آمدن

آ â (میآیم míâyam)

LESSON TEN

		_	
آوردن	âvordan	آور	âvar¹ (میآورم míâvaram)
بودن	budan	باش	bâsh (میباشم míbâsham²)
خريدن	kharidan	خر	khar (ميخرم míkharam)
خوردن	khordan	خور	khor (ميخورم míkhoram)
خواستن	khâstan	خواه	khâh (ميخواهم míkhâham)
خواندن	khândan	خوان	khân (ميخوانم míkhânam)
	dậdan		deh (میدهم mídeham)
	dâshtan (simple)		dâr (دارم dâram)
داشتن	-dâshtan (in its com-		-dâr (as in برمیدارم bar-midâram)
	pounds that take mi-)		1
دانستن	dậnestan	دان	dân (میدانم mídânam)
ديدن	didan		bin (میبینم míbinam)
رفتن	raftan		raw (ميروم míravam)
شدن	shodan		shaw میشوم) míshavam)
شنيدن	shenidan		shenaw (میشنوم míshenavam)
كردن	kardan	_	kon (میکنم míkonam)
گرفتن	gereftan		gir (میگیرم mígiram)
گشتن	gashtan		gard (میگردم mígardam)
· .	goftan		gu (میگویم míguyam)
			nevis (مینویسم mínevisam)

¹The correct present stem of *âvordan*, which is derived from the same verb that gives *bordan/bar*, is *âvar*, but it is commonly pronounced *âvor* as well as *âvar*.

Vocabulary 10

بعد از	ba'd az after (prep.)	سؤال	so'âl -hâ, -ât question
جواب	javâb -hâ, -ât answer	فردا	fardâ tomorrow, the next
چطور	chetawr how?		day
حرف	harf -hâ word, (pl) what	قبل از	qabl az before (prep.)
	one says	کی	kay when?
سئال	sâl -hâ year	گوش	gush -hâ ear

New verbs will be listed henceforth by the infinitive and present stem; compounds with familiar verbal elements will be given in the infinitive.

²The present tense formed from the stem bâsh- (عيباشي mībâsham, عيباشي mībâsham, عيباشي mībâshi, &c.) is an artificial creation much used in bureaucratic Persian. The student should use the present copulas for the present tense of budan.

بردن (بر) bordan/bar- to carry, take

javâb-dâdan to answer, reply (be or -râ to something) جواب دادن

زدن (زن) زدن zadan/zan- to hit, strike

جف زدن harf-zadan to speak, talk

so'âl-kardan to ask a question (az of someone) سؤال کردن

shenâkhtan/shenâs- to know, to recognize, to be acquainted with (like the French connaître). In the simple past shenâkhtan means 'to recognize,' e.g. اورا نشناختم u-râ náshenâkhtam 'I didn't recognize him' while in the past progressive it means 'to know,' e.g. اورا میشناختم u-râ míshenâkhtam 'I used to know him.' The present tense has no such distinction.

(فهم) فهميدن فهما fahmidan/fahm- to understand

gozâshtan/gozâr- to put, place گذاشتن (گذار)

gush-kardan to listen (be or -râ, to something) گوش کردن

mândan/mân- to stay, remain ماندن (مان)

Exercise 10

(a) Change the following to the present tense:

۱ بزرک شدند

۱ آن را پیدا کردم.

۱ آن را پیدا کردم.

۱ آن را نمیدانت.

۱ آن را نمیدانت.

۱ آن را نمیدانت.

۱ آن را نمیدانت.

۱ آن را تو نوشتی.

۱ آین را تو نوشتی.

LESSON TEN

(b) Read and translate the following into English:

- ١ قبل از فردا شب همهٔ اینهارا به خانهٔ او میبریم.
 - ۲ یدر آن دختران را میشناسم.
 - ۳ صدای مرا خوب میشنوید؟ گوش نمیکنید؟
 - ۴ این میوهٔ خوشمزه را روی میز میگذارم.
 - ۵ نمیگویم که بد بود ولی خوب هم نبود.
 - ۶ به سؤال من جواب نمیدهند.
 - ۷ بعد از آن، یک سال ماندیم در آن کشور.
 - ۸ حرفهای شمارا خوب میفهمم.
 - ۹ آنرا نميخواهم. اينرا ميخواهم.
- ۱۰ خیلی کار می کنیم. چرا کار ما بیش از پیش سخت می شود؟
- (c) Translate the following into Persian:
 - 1. You'll ask questions, and I'll answer.
- 2. Don't you know his name?

- 3. We always speak Persian with her.
- 4. Which one will you buy?
- 5. When are they returning from town?
- 6. We go to school every day, and there we read and write.
- 7. Ali is taking (carrying) these things to Maryam's house.
- 8. Do you know my mother and father?
- 9. I don't understand what he says (his words).
- 10. Tomorrow we'll put everything near the door, and they'll take [it away].

Review II

- (a) Review the vocabulary lists for lessons 6-10.
- (b) Read and translate the following:

۱ دیشب من از ہمیثہ بیشر درس خواندم. ۲ آرامترین حای این شرکحاست؟ ۳ آنها حه نوب فارسی حرف می زنندا ۴ روز از بمه کرمتر ان تابستان دیروز بود. ۵ شندهام که آن شهر مکی از سردترین شهرای ایران است. ع کفتند که بعد از این، دانشحومان برنمی کر دند ۷ کدام کی از اینارا بیشر می خوابید؟ ۸ چه حرفهای خوبی می زنیدا ۹ این نامدرا در کتابخانهٔ دانتگاه بیدا کر دوام. ۱۰ بحه هٔ خوشمزه ترین موه دارا از ماغ برداشتند و رفتند.

LESSON TEN

- (c) Translate the following into Persian:
 - 1. Last year the work was harder than this year.
 - 2. Why didn't they select the best fruits of the garden for us?
 - 3. Does she read both English and Persian?
 - 4. Which school do her sons and daughters go to?
 - 5. All of your answers were good.
 - 6. When will you buy those things for me?
 - 7. I'll carry these, and you carry those.
 - 8. They always put their books on this table.
 - 9. They have understood nothing.
 - 10. Who is the best student in this university?

هرس بازوهم

Lesson Eleven

§ 36 Pronominal enclitics. The pronominal enclitics, which are used as possessive pronouns, direct objects of verbs, and complements of most prepositions, are as follows:

am- م	my, me	emân- مان	our, us
-at/-et	your, you	etân- تان	your, you
ash/-esh- ش	his/her/its, him/her/it	eshân- شان	their, them

The second- and third-person singular enclitics are commonly pronounced -et and -esh, the older -at and -ash pronunciations being now somewhat bookish except after words ending in -e, where they are always pronounced -at and -ash.

36.1 The enclitics are attached directly to words ending in consonants and -i.

كتابم	ketấb-am	my book	كتابمان	ketấb-emân	our book
كتابت	ketấb-et	your book	كتابتان	ketấb-etân	your book
كتابش	ketấb-esh	his/her book	كتابشان	ketấb-eshân	their book
صندليم	sandalí-am	my chair	صندليمان	sandalí-emân	our chair
صندليت	sandalí-et	your chair	صندليتان	sandalí-etân	your chair
صندليش	sandalí-esh	his/her chair	صندليشان	sandalí-eshân	their chair

36.2 In words ending in -e, the singular enclitics are spelled with infixed alef; the plural enclitics lose their initial e. The pronunciations -at and -ash are retained for the second- and third-person singular enclitics after words ending in -e.

khâné-am خانهام	my house	khâné-mân خانهمان	our house
khâné-at خانهات	your house	khâné-tân خانەتان	your house

¹For the pronunciation of the resulting sequence -é-at and -é-ash, see p. 22, note 1.

LESSON ELEVEN

khâné-ash his/her house خانه شان khâné-shân their house

36.3 A -y- is infixed before the pronominal enclitics following \hat{a} and most words ending in u, as after خاری $ket\hat{a}bh\hat{a}$ 'books' and آرزو $\hat{a}rzu$ 'wish':

ketâbhấ-y-am كتابهايم	ketâbhấ-y-emân كتابهايمان
ketâbhấ-y-et كتابهايت	ketâbhấ-y-etân كتابهايتان
ketâbhâ-y-esh كتابهايش	ketâbhấ-y-eshân كتابهايشان
ârzú-y-am	ârzú-y-emân آرزویمان
ârzú-y-et آرزویت	ârzú-y-etân آرزويتان
ârzú-y-esh آرزویش	ârzú-y-eshân آرزویشان

36.4 Uses of the enclitics.

(a) The enclitics are used as possessive pronouns. As such, there is no appreciable difference between the enclitics (ketâb-am 'my book') and the subject pronouns joined by the ezâfe (my book'), except that in certain situations the subject pronouns cannot be used (see §37 below), and the enclitic pronouns cannot ever be stressed. No enclitic pronoun can ever be followed by an ezâfe, so the possessive enclitics must come at the end of an ezâfe string.

In the direct-object position, any noun or string of nouns modified by a possessive enclitic is marked by $-r\hat{a}$.

(b) As direct objects, the enclitics may be added to the verb itself or to any other convenient word in the clause. With compound verbs, the enclitics are n_{Or} mally added to the non-verbal element, although they need not necessarily fall i_{R} this position. The direct-object enclitics do not take $-r\hat{a}$.

المشان nádidam-eshân. I didn't see them.

They'll see him.

They opened it.

Although the enclitics are most often used in modern writing as possessives, the usage as direct object is encountered especially in classical quotation and in dialogue representing colloquial speech, where the direct-object enclitics are used extensively. The addition of the first-person singular enclitic to a third-person singular past verb can result in confusion. In modern Persian, however, the direct-object marker usually alleviates ambiguity.

 $jav \hat{a}d$ - $r\hat{a}$ zadam. I hit Javad. but جواد زدم $jav \hat{a}d$ zad-am. Javad hit me.

(c) Prepositions that normally take their complements through the *ezâfe* drop it with enclitic complements.

In literary Persian the enclitics are not used as complements of the five "true" prepositions ($a, be, j \mid az, ba, az, bar, and complements)$. Other words used as prepositions, all of which take their complements through the $ez\hat{a}fe$, may take enclitic complements.

§ 37 Reflexive pronouns. No independent pronoun may be used as a possessive or direct object within the clause in which it functions as subject, even if the pronoun is only implied in the verb. Only the enclitics serve as possessives referring to the subject. Thus,

برادرمرا دیدم barâdar-am-râ didam. I saw my brother. You did your work.

are valid sentences. In these examples, however, the constructions برادر من barâ-

and

LESSON ELEVEN

dar-e man and کار شـــا kâr-e shomâ, though valid elsewhere, cannot be used because the pronouns man and shomâ are subjects, even though implicit, of the verbs didam and kardid respectively.

37.1 In the third persons singular and plural, the repetition of the subject pronoun implies a change of person. The third-person enclitics are ambiguous as to reference and may refer either to the subject or to another third person.

akbar barâdar-e u-râ اکبر برادر اورا دید.

Akbar saw his (i.e. someone else's) brother.

akbar barâdar-esh-râ اکبر برادرشرا دید.

Akbar saw his (either his own or someone else's) brother.

barâdarân-e ishân-râ They love their (i.e. sorother people's) brother دارند.

dust-dârand. other people's) brother برادرانشانرا دوست barâdarân-eshân-râ dust They love their (either

They love their (i.e. some other people's) brothers.

.دارند. dârand

their own or some other people's) brothers.

37.2 The reflexive pronoun is خود khod (note irregular spelling), which has no person or number inherent in itself but takes its person and number from the subject of the verb of the clause in which it occurs. It can thus signify any person or number and may serve as a possessive as well as a direct object.

.khod-râ didam خودرا دیدم .khod-râ did خودرا دید

I saw myself.

khâne-ye khod-râ خانهٔ خودرا فروختند. forukhtand.

S/he saw her/himself. They sold their house.

khâne-ye khod-râ خانهٔ خودرا فروختيد. forukhtid.

You sold your house.

هرکس در خانه خود سلطسان است

har kas dar khâne-ye khod soltân-ast.

Everyone is a sultan in his own house ("every man's home is his castle").

Khod is intensified as a reflexive by adding the enclitic pronominals and as such functions as an independent reflexive pronoun. Spoken Persian almost always adds the enclitics to khod.

khod-am-râ dar âine خودمرا در آئينه ديدم. didam.

I saw myself in the mirror.

بودش را دید. He saw himself. You said those things to khod-et ân harfhâ-râ yourself.

When so intensified as a possessive, khod imparts a strong sense of "one's own"

انم. کار خودمرا میکنم. kâr-e khod-am-râ I'm doing my own job mikonam. (and nobody else's).

khâne-ye khod-esh-râ He sold his own house خانهٔ خودشرا فروخت. forukht. (and nobody else's).

Vocabulary 11

اً أَم âb water pronoun) bâz open; again, once sâde plain, simple gahve coffee قهوه more, still, even yet (with the comparative kelâs class, classroom کلاس and often with -ham, baz mardom people مردم means 'still, even yet,' as mohemm important
hamân that very, that same bâz باز (هم) بیشتر in (-ham) bishtar 'even hamin this very, this same: more, more still') hamin emruz همین امروز برادر barâdar -ân, -hâ brother this very day; کالا chây tea چای haminhâlâ right now, chon-ke چونکه, chon-ke this very instant because hichvaqt (with interrog.) ever; (with neg.) never váqti-ke when (temporal hâlâ now, at present; ever; (with neg.) never hâlâhâ these days khâhar -ân, -hâ sister خواهر conj.) khod -self (reflexive

Verbs

باز آمدن bâz-âmadan to come back باز آمدن bâz-kardan to open بستن (بند) bastan/band- to shut, close (رسیدن (رس) residan/res- to reach, arrive (be at, to) فروختن (فروش)

LESSON ELEVEN

negâh-kardan to look (be or -râ, at) نگاه کردن

Exercise 11

(a) Change the independent pronouns to enclitics:

(b) Translate into English:

۱ چرا کار خودشرا نمیکند؟

۲ این دررا کی باز کرده است؟ من دیروز بستمش.

٣ سؤالشرا خوب فهميديم ولي او جوابمانرا نشنيد.

۴ حالا با برادر و خواهرم چای میخورم.

۵ بعد از کار چای میخورید یا قهوه؟ ا

۶ این کارها از آنها خیلی مهمتر است.

٧ مردم چرا اورا انتخاب كرده اند؟

٨ با اينهمه، هيچوقت به آنجا نميرسيم.

٩ همیشه با همین قلم قدیمی نامههایتان را مینویسید؟

١٠ برادرانتانرا ديدم ولي نشناختمشان.

(c) Translate into Persian:

- 1. My friends live in a small village near Tehran.
- 2. They are coming back to their old house because they sold the other

A question so couched is asking for a choice, tea or coffee. This is the normal order for such choices.

house.

- 3. We saw one of your students yesterday in the library.
- 4. She is closing one of the windows.
- 5. Where are you taking (carrying) all that?
- 6. I won't ever sell my house to them!
- 7. I'm reading a very important book for class tomorrow.
- 8. Why are you looking out of (az) the window? What do you see?
- 9. Do you drink tea, or coffee? I drink coffee; I never drink tea.
- 10. What are you looking at? I'm looking at these Persian books.

¹ See the note to sentence 5 in (b) above.

פתנט פכר ק'פריק

Lesson Twelve

§38 Cardinal numbers. The cardinal numbers from one to nineteen are as follows. Numerals are written, as in English, from left to right.

یک (۱)	yek (1)	یازده (۱۱)	yâzdah (11)
دو (۲)	do (2)	دوازده (۱۲)	davâzdah (12)
سه (۳)	se (3)	سیزده (۱۳)	sizdah (13)
چهار (۴)	chahâr (4)	چهارده (۱۴)	chahârdah (14)
پنج (۵)	panj (5)	پانزده (۱۵)	pânzdah (15)
_	shesh (6)	شانزده (۱۶)	shânzdah (16)
هفت (۷)	haft (7)	هفده (۱۷)	hivdah (17)
هشت (۸)	hasht (8)	هجده (۱۸)	hizhdah (18)
نه (۹)	noh (9)	نوزده (۱۹)	nuzdah (19)
ده (۱۰)	dah (10)		

Note the discrepancy between the spelling and pronunciation of 17 and 18.

The tens are as follows (note particularly the spelling of '60').

The hundreds are similarly compounded with the enclitic conjunction. The only irregularly formed hundreds are 200, 300, and 500. The others are predictably formed from the units. There are no irregularly formed thousands.

sisad سیصد (۳۰۰) مید sisad
$$(\mathfrak{r} \cdot \cdot)$$
 عمل sisad $(\mathfrak{r} \cdot \cdot)$ چهارصد $(\mathfrak{r} \cdot \cdot)$ دویست chahârsad

پانصد (۵۰۰)	<i>pân</i> sad	سههزار (۳۰۰۰)	sehezâr
ششصد (۶۰۰)	sheshsad	چهارهزار (۴۰۰۰)	chahârhezâr
هفتصد (۷۰۰)	haftsad	پنجهزار (۵۰۰۰)	panjhezâr
هشتصد (۸۰۰)	hashtsad	ششهزار (۶۰۰۰)	sheshhezâr
نهصد (۹۰۰)	nohsad	هفتهزار (۷۰۰۰)	hafthezâr
یکهزار (۱۰۰۰)	yekhezâr	هشتهزار (۸۰۰۰)	hashthezâr
دوهزار (۲۰۰۰)	dohezâr	نههزار (۹۰۰۰)	nohhezâr

38.1 Numbers are invariably followed by the singular. Idiomatically a "counting word," or classifier, intervenes between all numbers other than يبولا and the following singular noun. Although elaborate lists of specific counting words for a variety of items exist (rather like English 'flock,' 'herd,' 'pride,' 'covey,' 'suite,' etc.), informally they may be replaced by tâ 'unit' for practically anything, خانه dâne 'grain' for small items, عدد nafar 'individual' for people, and عدد adad 'item' for commercial items.

I have three brothers. دو تا کتاب خواندم. من se tâ barâdar dâram. I read two books.

I read two books. I ate two pistachios. دو دانه پسته خوردم. اate two pistachios. دو دانه پسته خوردم. ا saw four Iranians. didam.

ينج عدد قاليچه خريد. panj adad qâliche kharid. He bought five carpets.

Counting words are not used with any words or expressions of time or instance.

I stayed for two hours. وساعت ماندم. مندم. مندم. Se ruz ânjâ budim. We were there for three days.

khâhar-am shesh sâl My sister is six years old.

. جهار بار رفتيم chahâr bâr raftim. We went four times.

38.2 All words that indicate weights, measures, distances, pairs, containers, etc. are themselves construed as counting words.

do kilu gusht two kilos of meat دو کیلو گوشت se litr shir three liters of milk

LESSON TWELVE

chahâr botri âb چهار بطری آب panj metr pârche ينج متر يارچه shesh fenjan qahve شش فنجان قهوه haft estekân chây هفت استكان حاي hasht joft jurâb هشت جفت حوراب

four bottles of water five meters of cloth six cups of coffee seven glasses of tea eight pairs of socks

دفعه bâr and بار bâr and بار bâr and بار daf'e. 'Per' is expressed by a non-specific noun preceding the number.

> sâl-i do dafe سالي دو دفعه hafte-i panj bâr هفته ای پنج بار mâh-i chahâr daf'e ماهي چهار دفعه

twice a year five times a week

four times a month

38.4 Multiples are expressed by برابر barâbar-e.

برابر (قيمت) هفته

in hafte qaymat-e shir do این هفته قیمت شیر دو barâbar-e (qaymat-e) hafte-ye gozashte-ast.

The price of milk this week is twice what it was last week.

§ 39 Ordinal numbers. The ordinal numbers are formed by suffixing -- om to the cardinal numbers. The ordinals are treated as regular adjectives and follow the nouns they modify with the ezâfe. 'First' is irregular: less commonly نخست nokhost ('prime'). In subsequent compound numbers such as 21st, -sev سوم dovvom ('second') and دوم o yekom is used. Of the ordinals, only و یکم vom ('third') are irregularly formed. All others are predictable from the cardinals. There is no abbreviation in Persian corresponding to English '1st, 2nd, 3rd, etc.'

avval, nokhost first اول، نخست dovvom second دوم sevvom third سوم chahârom fourth چهارم panjom fifth پنجم

sheshom sixth ششم haftom seventh هفتم hashtom eighth هشتم nohom ninth نهم cahom tenth &c.

روز) اول ماه، (ruz-e) avval-e mâh

the first (day) of the month

jalese-ye dovvom-e in جلسهٔ دوم این کلاس

the second session of this class

in, daf e-ye sevvom-astاین دفعهٔ سوم است که ke míbinam-etân seen you.

thâne-ye panjom-e kuche seen you.

The fifth house on the lane is ours.

mâl-e mâ-st. lane is ours.

bist-o-yekom-e mah the 21st of the month and one was shomâre-ye sad-o-si-oyekom-e in majalle yekom-e in majalle magazine

39.1 Ordinals are also be formed by adding اَوّلَـين -omin to the cardinals (اوّلـين avvalin for 'first'). Like the superlatives in -tarin (see §31.3), -omin ordinals precede the nouns they modify and do not occur without a following noun.

the first day of the month legislation of this avvalin ruz-e mâh legislation the second session of this class class sevvomin khâne-ye in kuche lane

Ordinals in -omin differ in connotation from ordinals in -om. The ordinals in -omin indicate order in a series that is liable to change depending on the basis for counting, whereas the ordinals in -om indicate a number attached to a noun as a title or name. For instance, 'Lesson Twelve' in this book is درس دوازدهم dars-e davâzdahom, because that is its name, but if a reader had skipped a lesson it would be the يازدهم سين درس اله yâzdahomin dars ('eleventh lesson') he had read. The fifth house on a street (counting all houses) is the خانهٔ پنجم کوچه panjom-e kuche ("house number five on the street"), but counting only white houses, it would be, e.g., سومين خانهٔ سفيد کوچه sevvomin khâne-ye sefid-e kuche ('the third white house on the street').

39.2 In addition to the Persian numbers, the following Arabic ordinals should also be learned, especially in the adverbial form, as they are of frequent occurrence.

avval اول	first	avvalan اولاً	firstly
sâni ثانی	second	sânian ثانيًا	secondly
sâles ثالث	third	sâlesan ثالثًا	thirdly
'râbe رابع	fourth	râbe'an رابعًا	fourthly

39.3 With the exception of inm 'half,' the ordinals are also used as fractions.

LESSON TWELVE

yek sevvom یک سوم one third

se chahârom سه چهارم three fourths

noh dahom-e kilometr nine tenths of a kilometer نه دهم کیلومتر

Also in common use are the Arabic fractions: نصف nesf half, ثلث sols third, and بع rob' fourth.

Vocabulary 12

âkher last

اقلا aqallan at least

avvalan firstly اولا avval first

ار bâr time; load

برابر barâbar together; equal; barâbar-e facing, opposite; برابر dobarâbar(-e) twice as much (as)

tâ unit, counting word

te'dâd-e dâneshju-تعداد دانشجویان این کلاس te'dâd number, as in yân-e in kelâs 'the number of students in this class'

تقریبًا taqriban almost, nearly
sânian secondly
sânie second, the sixtieth part of a minute
sâlesan thirdly

dâne grain, counting word

cفعه daf'e pl دفعه dafa'ât time (once, twice)

دقیقه daqiqe pl دقیقه râbe'an fourthly

ربع rob' quarter; یک و ربع yek-o rob' one and a quarter; as a compounding agent rob' precedes what it modifies: ربع ساعت rob'-sâ'at 'a quarter of an hour,' ربع کیلو 'rob'-kilo 'a quarter of a kilo'

sâ'at -hâ, sâ'ât hour; watch, clock; ساعت ديواري sâ'at -hâ, sâ'ât hour; watch, clock; ساعت clock; ساعت مجي sâ'at-e mochi wristwatch

shabâneruz day (24 hours) شيانهروز

shomâre -hâ number (as in شمارهٔ یک shomâre-ye yek 'number

one') shomâr- to count شمردٌنُ

gozashtanl گذر gozar- pass (of time); (with az) pass by, go beyond

gozashte past, last

ماه mâh -hâ moon, month

nesf-e shab midnight نصف nesf-e shab midnight

nafar person (counter); used for 'people' only in situations where there is no other qualifier, as پنج نفر دیدم panj nafar didam 'I saw five people' and هفت نفر آنجا بودند haft nafar ânja budand 'seven people were there,' but موتسا بسرادر دارم do tâ barâdar dâram 'I have two brothers'

nim half; دو ساعت و نیم do sâ'at-o nim two and a half hours; as a compound agent nim precedes what it modifies: nim sâ'at 'half an hour,' نیم کیلو 'nim kilo 'half a kilo'

hafte week هفته

Exercise 12

(a) Read the following numbers:

101	۶۱/۴	1914	011
۲ ۱/۲	99	747	44.41
7797	Y*/ _*	1881	9 - 1

(b) Read and translate into English:

۱ ساعت یک بیت و جهارم ثباندروز است.
۲ ثانیه یک شعبتی دقیقه است و در هر ساعت شعبت دقیقه ست.
۳ این شهر از آن شهر دیگر به نقید کیاو متر دور است.
۴ دو دقیقه صد و بیت ثانیه است و دو ثباندروز چل و بشت ساعت است.
۵ امروز و فردا سه تا درس میخوانیم.
۶ این کثور بیشتر از دویست تا روز نامه دارد.
۷ ما دوازده سال مدرسه رفته ایم.
۸ اقلاً روزی جهار دفعه آنها دا می مینم.
۹ یک ساعت و نیم در آنجا ماندیم.
۹ یک ساعت و نیم در آنجا ماندیم.

LESSON TWELVE

(c) Translate into Persian:

- 1. Are they staying half an hour or three quarters of an hour?1
- 2. There are thirty-one days in this month.
- 3. I have two brothers and three sisters.
- 4. Lesson One was easy, but Lesson Two was harder.
- 5. We worked six hours.
- 6 I read those five books last week.
- 7. Do you want those same three green chairs?
- 8. It's nearly 3:30 (see Appendix B).
- 9. Summer and winter have three months each.
- 10. I've shut that window at least four times today.

Supplementary Vocabulary: Weights and Measures

metr meter kilometr kilometer sântimetr centimeter milimetr millimeter gram gram kilogram kilogram litr liter

TRADITIONAL

gereh knot, 1/16 gaz, 6.5 cm

vajab handspan

gaz ca. 1 yard

zar' cubit, 1.04 meter

farsang (or غرفة farsakh)

league, 6 km

mesqâl mithcal, 1/16 seer,

4.6875 grams

sir seer, 1/40 maund, 75

grams

man maund, 2 3 kg.

kharvâr load, 100 maunds,

300 kg.

¹ See the note to sentence 5 in exercise (b), p. 73 for word order involving choices.

¹ The classical definition of the *farsang* was the distance a caravan could cover in an hour, so it varied by terrain; it has been fixed in modern times at 6 km.

² Historically the value of the maund has varied considerably, but in modern times it has been fixed at 3 kg.

ھرنس سيز وھم

Lesson Thirteen

- § 40 Relative clauses. As in English, there are two types of relative clause in Persian, the restrictive (that which is selective, or determinate) and the non-restrictive (the purely descriptive and nonselective). Both types of clause are introduced by the relative pronoun 4 ke, an enclitic that stands at the head of the relative clause.
- 40.1 The **restrictive relative clause** restricts the antecedent and therefore makes it specific. The antecedent of the relative clause is indicated by adding an enclitic -i to the noun itself or, if the noun is modified by an adjective, to the end of the adjectival ezâfe string, as مردى كه mard-i-ke 'the man who...,' خانه اى كه khâne-i-ke 'the house that....'
 - (a) When the relative pronoun functions as the subject of the subordinate clause, the subordinate verb agrees in number with the antecedent of *ke*.

When relative clauses are internal, i.e., followed by the main verb, they are read in an absolute monotone but with a high rising pitch on the final syllable of the clause. Final relative clauses have no special intonation.

(b) When the antecedent functions as direct object of the main clause, it is marked by $-r\hat{a}$, and the order of the enclitics is invariably $-i-r\hat{a}-ke$.

LESSON THIRTEEN

dokhtarhâ-i-râ-ke ânjâ دخترهائی را که آنجا <u>zendegi-mikonand</u> زندگی میکنند némishenâsam.
میشناسم.
nâme-i-râ-ke ru-ye miz

I don't know the girls who live there.

bud ferestâdam. فرستادم.

I sent the letter that was on the table.

(c) When the relative is object of the subordinate clause, its function may optionally be marked with a referent pronoun agreeing with the antecedent.

<u>râ) neveshtam</u> ferestâdam.

nâme-i-râ-ke diruz (ân- نامهای را که دیروز (آن را)

I sent the letter that I wrote vesterday.

pul-<u>i</u>-râ-<u>ke be dust-esh</u> پولی را که به دوستش (آن را) داده است پس (<u>ân-râ) dâde-ast</u> pas migirad.

He'll take back the money he gave to his friend.

In ordinary speech and substandard writing, when the antecedent is the direct object of the subordinate clause, the referent pronoun is often omitted and the antecedent is marked with -râ (by attraction), regardless of its function in the main clause.1

40.2 'Whose,' 'of which,' etc. In relative constructions that are expressed in English by 'whose,' 'of which,' 'about which,' etc., the referent pronoun must he used in Persian. Since the Persian relative -ke cannot be moved from the head of the relative clause, the referent pronoun is used to show the syntax of such clauses.

shahr-<u>i-ke az ân âmade-</u> شهری که **از آن** آمدهام از <u>am</u> az injâ dur-ast.

The city from which I have come is far from here.

nâme-i-{râ-ke diruz نامهای را که دیروز نوشتم neveshtam} kojâ-st?

Where is the letter I wrote yesterday?

film-i-{râ-ke dishab didim} فيلمى راكه ديشب ديديم .khub-bud خوب بود.

The movie we saw last night was good.

¹ In the following two examples neither nâme nor film is the direct object of the verb of the main clause, but they have attracted -râ because they function as direct objects of the relative clauses. Students should not imitate this substandard construction, but they should be aware of its existence.

-zanân-<u>i-ke dokhtarhâ</u> زنانی که دخترهایشان به The women whose daughters have gone to تهران رفتهاند veshân be tehrân rafte-دلوابسند. and delvâpas-and. Tehran are worried. otâq-<u>i-ke dar ân neshas-</u> اطاقی که در آن نشسته ایم <u>te-im</u> khayli kuchek-The room in which we are sitting is very small. ast. ketâb-<u>i-ke darbâre-ash</u> کتابی **که دربارهاش** <u>sohbat-mikardim</u> kojâ st? Where's the book about sohbat-mikardim kojâwhich we were talking?

40.3 The verb of the main clause in a sentence containing a relative clause takes its normal position at the end of the sentence unless that verb is a solitary form of *budan*, i.e. no form of *budan* can stand alone after a relative clause. In such a case either (1) the subject and predicate are reversed or (2) if there is no expressed subject, the verb is brought forward and precedes the relative clause, as in the following examples:¹

dars-i-ke dishab khândim Lesson Thirteen is the درسی که دیشب خواندیم dars-e sizdahom-ast. درس سيزدهم است. lesson we read last night. dars-i-st ke dishab khân- در سیست که دیشب It is the lesson we read last night. خانه ام محوطهٔ بزرگی **بود** khâne-am mohavvate-ye
bozorg-i **bud** ke bishtar
be yek bâq-e matruk-o My house was a large enclosure that mostly resembled an abanfarâmush-shode doned and forgotten شاهت داشت. shebâhat dâsht. garden.

40.4 Similarly, when the antecedent is in the predicate of the main clause and normal word order would leave a solitary verb after the relative clause, the verb of the main clause may optionally precede the relative clause.

¹ The first example, with reversal of subject and predicate, avoids the impossible *dars-e sizdahom dars-i-ke dishab khândim ast, and the second example, in which the main verb has been brought forward, avoids the impossible *dars-i-ke dishab khândim ast.

LESSON THIRTEEN

bachchehâ mawjud-e بچهها موجود ناشناس و nâshenâs-o ajib-i-r همه چیزش براینشان تازگی داشت.

nâshenâs-o aiib-i-râ mididand ke hame chiz-esh barâyeshân tâzegi dâsht.

kâravân vâred-e كاروان وارد خيابًاني شد که دو طرفش دیوارهای خرایه و دکانهائ کو حک بود.

khiâbân-i shod ke do taraf-esh divârhâ-ye kharâbe-o dokkânhâye kuchek bud.

The children saw an unfamiliar and strange being, everything about whom possessed novelty for them.

The caravan entered an avenue, on both sides of which were brokendown walls and small shops.

The antecedent marker -i is often, but not necessarily, omitted when the antecedent already ends in -i, as مرد ایرانی که mard-e irani-ke for مرد ایرانی که mard-e irâni-i-ke 'the Iranian man who...'

khânom-e irâni ke didim The Iranian lady we saw خانم ایرانی که دیدیم mâdar-i maryam-ast. is Maryam's mother. ketâb-e fârsi ke mikhânid What's the Persian book کتاب فارسی که darbâre-ye chist?

حىست؟

you're reading about?

40.5 The non-restrictive clause is also introduced by ke, and all observations on the syntax of the relative pertain to this type also. The only difference between the restrictive and non-restrictive relative is that the non-restrictive an-خانه که mard ke 'the man, who...' and مردکه tecedent is not marked by -i, as khâne ke 'the house, which....' Compare and contrast the following:

ahmad, ke diruz âmad, احمد که دبروز آمدُ ابنجاست. injâ-st.

Ahmad, who came yesterday, is here.

ahmad-i-ke diruz âmad احمدی که دیروز آمد injâ-st.

The Ahmad who came yesterday is here.

-mizad, khâmush خاموش کردم. kardam.

I put out the lamp. which was smoking.

-cherâgh-i-râ ke dud چراغی را که دود می زد خاموش كردم. mizad khâmushkardam.

I put out the lamp that was smoking.

Antecedents modified by a possessive pronoun are always treated as non-restric-

tive relatives.

یک باغ بزرگ ساخته شده بود دیواری وجود نداشت

barâ-ye mâdaram, ke برای مادرم که سراسر عمرش رأ در چادر باز و یرهوای عشایری به سر برده بود تنفس در اطاقكي محصور دشوار

bayn-e khânehâ-ye mâ, بين خانههاي ما كه در ke dar yek bâg-e bozorg sâkhte-shode-bud, divâr-i vojud nadâsht.

> sarâsar-e omr-esh-râ dar châdor-e bâz-o porhavâye ashâyeri be sar bordebud, tanaffos dar otâgaki mahsur doshvâr bud.

Between our houses. which had been built in a large garden, no wall existed.

For my mother, who had spent her entire life in an open, airy tribal tent, breathing in a confined little room was difficult.

§ 41 The past perfect tense. The past perfect tense, which corresponds generally to the English past perfect, is formed from the past participle followed by the past of budan. In the affirmative, stress falls on the last syllable of the participle.

> rafté-budam رفته بودم rafté-budi رفته بودي rafté-bud رفته بود

rafté-budim رفته بودیم rafté-budid رفته بودید rafté-budand رفته بودند

The negative is formed by prefixing ná- to the participle.

nárafte-budam نرفته بودم nárafte-budi نرفته بودي nárafte-bud نرفته بود

nárafte-budim نرفته بوديم nárafte-budid نرفته بودید nárafte-budand نرفته بودند

There is no past perfect of the verb بودن budan 'to be.' Thus, according to context, the simple past tense can mean either 'was' or 'had been.'

- 41.1 Uses of the past perfect tense.
- (a) For any remote action or state, although no great amount of time need have elapsed. This usage often renders the sense of the English 'already,' which has no exact equivalent in Persian.

-qabl az ân u-râ dide قبل از آن اورا دیده

pish az ân vaqt پیش از آن وقت برگشته . هدند bargashte-budand. We had (already) seen him before that.

They had (already) returned before that time.

(b) For the anterior of two contrasted verbs in the past.

LESSON THIRTEEN

ولي ما پريروز هم اورا ديده بوديم.

diruz shomâ u-râ didid, ديروز شما اورا دىدىد vali mâ pariruz-ham urâ dide-budim.

You saw her yesterday, but we had already seen her the day before.

When the more remote verb has already been completed before the inception of the second, or less remote, the second verb follows the first and is introduced by ke 'when.' The sense of the English 'already' is built into the Persian tense.

shomâ be âmrikâ bar- شما به آمريكا برگشته وهsashte-budid **ke** man بودید که من به ایران be irân raftam.

You had already returned to America when I went to Iran.

man tâze rafte-budam ke I had just gone when you من تازه رفته بودم که شما shomâ âmadid. came.

(c) هــنــوز Hanuz 'yet, still' and a negative verb in the past-perfect clause followed by ke renders the idiomatic 'scarcely (hanuz na-) had we done something when (ke) something happened,' 'no sooner (hanuz na-) had we done something than (ke) something happened.'

hanuz vâred-e otâq هنوز وارد اطاق نشده náshode-budim ke بودیم که آنهارا دیدیم.

ânân-râ didim.

Scarcely had we entered the room when we saw them.

منوز ننشسته بودم که در hanuz náneshaste budam No sooner had I sat down منوز ننشسته بودم که در ke dar bâz shod. than the door opened.

§ 42 The past perfect narrative tense. The past perfect narrative is formed from the past participle and the present perfect of budan. It is used in cases (a) and (b) of the remote past absolute where the criteria for the present perfect also apply (see §29). This tense will not be encountered frequently.

dar ân vaqt be sisâlegi در آن وقت به سی سالگی náreside-bude-ast.

At that time he had not yet reached the age of thirty.

Vocabulary 13

otâq room اطاق اصفهان esfahân Isfahan pul money يول

ترسيدن tarsidan/tars- be afraid (az) of

تعریف کردن ta'rif-kardan to define; to talk (az about); to tell (barâ-ye somebody) (az about something), to relate (az) an incident

jam'an in all, in toto

khoshgel pretty, handsome, good-looking خوشگل

ziâd much, too much (in affirmative sentences ziâd is usually equivalent to بسیار, although it often has a stronger sense of 'too much, too many'; in negatives ziâd generally replaces khayli, e.g. خیلی خوب است khayli khub-ast 'it's very good,' but خیلی خوب نیست ziâd khub nist 'it's not very good')

sâkhtemân building

shirâz Shiraz شيراز

أصله fâsele distance; فاصله داشتن fâsele-dâshtan to be distant (bâ from). This compound needs either modification, as in ده ما با deh-e mâ bâ shahr fâsele-ye ziâd-i nadârad 'our village is not very far from town,' or a stated distance, as in مشهد با تهران هزار كيلومتر فاصله دارد mashhad bâ tehrân hazâr kilometr fâsele-dârad 'Mashhad is 1000 km from Tehran.'

farâmush-kardan to forget فراموش كردن

کس kas -ân person, one (normally used for 'one' in relatives, as کسانی که kas-i-ke 'the one who, the person who' and کسانی که kasân-i-ke 'those who, persons who')

awqât time اوقات/vaqt -hâ

mesl-e like (prep.)

همسایه hamsâye -hâ/-gân neighbor

hanuz still, yet هنوز

hichkas (+ negative) nobody

Exercise 13

(a) Change the following sentences into restrictive relative phrases (e.g., $\hat{a}n$ mard $\hat{a}mad > \hat{a}n$ mard-i-ke $\hat{a}mad...$) and then complete the sentence on your own, making any necessary changes (addition or deletion of -r \hat{a} , e.g.).

۱ درس آسان را خواندیم ۲ آن ساختانهای بلندرا دیده اند ۳ آن ساختانهای بلندرا دیده اند

LESSON THIRTEEN

(b) Turn the **second** of the two sentences into a restrictive relative clause and embed it into the **first** sentence (e.g., **ân mard** irâni-ast. **ân mard** âmad. > ân mard irâni-ast.)

(c) Translate into Persian:

- 1. I had scarcely opened the door when I saw him.
- 2. The house in which we used to live was far from town.
- I have forgotten the name of the person who was here with you yesterday.
- 4. Where is the money you took from them?
- 5. Did you take the clock that was here to some other place?
- 6. Last month he was in a city that is 200 km. distant from here.
- 7. I forgot the letter that I put on the table.
- 8. Is the building your friends live in far from here?
- 9. It's nearly five kilometers from the school you used to go to.
- 10. I counted all the things you gave me. There were sixteen in all.

ورس جھاروھے

Lesson Fourteen

§ 43 The future tense. The future tense is compounded from the present tense of *khâstan* 'to want,' without the *mí*- prefix, followed by the short infinitive (= past stem). In the affirmative stress falls on the last syllable of the short infinitive. Example from گنت goftan 'to say':

khâhim-góft خواهيم گفت khâham-góft خواهيم گفت khâhi-góft خواهيد گفت khâhi-góft خواهيد گفت khâhid-góft خواهيد گفت khâhad-góft خواهيد گفت

In compound verbs the $kh\hat{a}h$ - auxiliary intervenes between the two parts of the compound. Stress is on the final syllable of the non-verbal element.

برخواهم گشت bár-khâham-gasht برخواهم گشت bár-khâhim-gasht برخواهی گشت bár-khâhi-gasht برخواهی گشت bár-khâhid-gasht برخواهد گشت bár-khâhad-gasht برخواهد گشت bár-khâhad-gasht برخواهد گشت

nákhâham-goft, &c. نخواهیم گفت nákhâham-goft, &c. فقت bàr-nákhâham- برنخواهیم گشت bàr-nákhâhim-gasht gasht, &c.

In ordinary usage the present tense is used for the future. The future tense is reserved for fairly emphatic statements about the future.

hichvaqt bar-nákhâham- I shall never return! هيچوقت برنخواهم gasht!

a hame hatman khâhand- Everybody will certainly mord die.

§ 44 Other numerical expressions.

44.1 چند Chand.

(a) The interrogative چند chand, which is invariably followed by the singular

LESSON FOURTEEN

(or counting word and the singular1), renders 'how many?' for countables.

chand (tâ) barâdar چند (تا) برادر دارید؟ dârid?

chand sâl dar irân چند سال در ایران budid?

chand daf e be ânjâ چند دفعه به آنجا رفته rafte-id?

How many brothers do you have?

How many years were you in Iran?

How many times have you gone there?

"?chand vaqt for 'how long چند و قت chand vaqt for 'how long'

chand vaqt dar irân چند وقت در ایران budid?

How long were you in Iran?

(b) The interrogative ordinal is چندم chandom, which functions like ordinals in -om, or چندمين chandomin, which functions like ordinals in -omin (i.e., precedes the noun it modifies).

emruz chandom-e mâh- امروز چندم ماه است؟

What day of the month is it today?

in chandomin daf e-ast این چندمین دفعه است ke miâyad?

How many times has he come (lit. "this is the 'how-manyeth' time he is coming")

For telling time, days of the week, etc., see Appendix B.

(c) Both يكچند chand and يكچند yek-chand as declaratives are followed by the singular and mean 'several, a few.' For further vagueness, -i may be added to the noun.

.(یک)چند برادر دارم) (yek)chand barâdar dâram.

I have several brothers.

.يک)چند سالی گذشت. (*yek)chand sâl-i gozasht*. A few years passed emshab ân chand tâ امشب آن چند تا کتابرا .ميخوانم ketâb-râ míkhânam

I'll read those few books tonight.

In this meaning chand may also be preceded by the non-specific plural, a more literary usage.

¹ Time expressions, as with numbers, never take counting words. See § 38.1.

several examples نمونه هائی چند salân-i chand a few years

44.2 For measurable quantities, the interrogative چـقـدر cheqadr 'how much, what amount' is used and is followed directly by the noun without ezâfe.

cheqadr shekar How much sugar do you چقدر شکر میخواهید؟ mikhâhid? want?

?خورده اید cheqadr âb khorde-id? How much water have you drunk?

44.3 Both قدري qadr-i and محي kam-i are used for 'a little, a little bit of.'

ان قدری نمک dar namakdân qadr-i There is a little salt in the namak hast. saltcellar

در چاه کمی آب بود. There was a little water in the well.

. کمی وقتتان را میگیرم *kam-i vaqt-etân-râ* I'll only take a little of migiram. your time.

44.4 Indefinite numerical expressions such as 'two or three,' 'four or five' are expressed in Persian by the two numbers together with no conjunction.

two or three people دو سه نفر do-se nafar two or three people پنج شش سال panj-shesh sâl

44.5 'More than' is idiomatically expressed by the numerical expression followed by بيشتر bishtar. 'Less/fewer than' is expressed by the numerical expression followed by كتر kamtar, as in the following examples.

. دو تا قلم بیشتر ندارم do tâ qalam bishtar I don't have more than nádâram. two pens.

se hafte bishtar námân- We didn't stay more than dim.¹ We dedn't stay more than

بنج نفر کمتر آنجا بودند. panj nafar kamtar ânjâ There were fewer than budand.² five people there.

² Depending upon context, this sentence could also mean "there were five people fewer there."

¹ This sentence could also mean "we didn't stay three weeks more," but it would need a particular context.

LESSON FOURTEEN

Note the following:

kamtar az sad tomân be کمتر از صد تومان به من man dâd.

be man sad tomân به من صد تومان کمتر kamtar dâd.

be man sad tomân kam- به من صد تومان كم داد. dâd. He gave me less than a hundred tomans.

He gave me a hundred tomans less.

He gave me a hundred tomans too little.

44.6 Numerical compounds are generally formed by adding -e or occasionally -i, as in the following:

dobâre دوباره docharkhe دوچرخه docharkhe بچهٔ پنجساله bachche-ye panjsâle مدر بیشت ساله mard-e bistsâle اطاق دونفره otâg-e donafare

again, once more bicycle five-year-old child twenty-year-old man double-occupancy room.

Vocabulary 14

âyande coming, next, the future arzân cheap, inexpensive ânqadr so much, that much inqadr so much, this much اینقدر charkh wheel chand (+ sing.) how many?, how much?; several, a few; جند وقت chand vaqt how long cheaadr how much? hatman certainly, surely (often used in the sense of حتما , فت .must,' e.g hatman raft 'he must have حتما النحاست gone' and hatman injâ-st 'it must be here')

قدر value

value

apymat (qimat) price

kam little, little bit, too

little, too few; کمی kam-i

a little bit, a little;

کم kam-dâdan to give

too little, to shortchange

gozarândan/اگذراندن

goza
rân- to spend (time)

gerân expensive, dear;

kharidan to pay too much' مردن mordan مردن mir- to die نشان neshân sign, token; نشان neshân-dâdan to show nemune example, sample,

-gerân گران خرىدن

specimen

Exercise 14

(a) Give the following in the future tense:

(b) Answer the following questions:

ء دریک ثباندروز چند ساعت ہست؟	۱ چند وقت در آن کثور بودید؟
۷ ماه گذشته چند روز داشت؟	۲ پارسال چند دفعه به تهران رفتند؟
۸ ثما چند سال دارید؟	۳ چدر میوه میخاسم ۶
۹ این درس چندم این کتاب است؟	۴ این را چند خریدید؟
۱۰ در خانهٔ مان چند تا اطاق ست ب	۵ امروز چند شنبه است؟

(c) Read and translate the following:

۱ قیمتی که برای اینها دادی زیاد نبود. ۲ میدانید کشورهای همسایهٔ ایران چیستند؟ 94

LESSON FOURTEEN

۳ آنهارا ارزانتر میخواهم. ۴ حتمًا میدانید این کیست. ۵ پولی که از او گرفتهام کم است. ۶ آن ساختمان بزرگی که میبینید دویست تا اطاق بیشتر دارد. ۷ فاصلهای که آن دهات با شهر دارد زیاد نیست. ۸ از کدام همسایه تان تعریف میکردید؟ ۹ این نمونهاش است. خودش نیست. ۱۰ هنوز از آنجا برنگشته بود که خواهرش مرد.

d) Translate the following into Persian:

- 1. He's not more than twelve years old.1
- 2. The third house you'll see is ours.
- 3. We had scarcely reached the garden when their neighbors came.
- 4. He works so much that I know he won't go.
- 5. How do you buy those things so cheaply?
- 6. He'll show you a few examples of his work.
- 7. Next year we'll spend three weeks in France.
- 8. Last month we bought two kilograms of very good coffee.
- 9. Iranians drink tea several times a day, and they almost never drink coffee.
- 10. Do you know all the students who are in your classes?

Supplementary Vocabulary: Family Relationships

¹ See No. 8 in (b) above and §44.5.

Uncles, aunts, and cousins:

amu uncle (father's brother)

dâi uncle (mother's brother

pesar'amu cousin (father's
brother's son)

pesar'amme cousin (father's
sister's son)

pesardâi cousin (mother's
brother's son)

pesarkhâle cousin (mother's
sister's son)

amme aunt (father's sister)

khâle aunt (mother's sister)

dokhtar'amu cousin (father's brother's daughter)

dokhtar'amme cousin (father's sister's daughter)

dokhtardâi cousin (mother's brother's daughter)

dokhtarkhâle cousin (mother's sister's daughter)

In-laws, step-parents, and others:

مرزن pedarzan father-in-law (wife's father)

پروم pedarshawhar father-in-law (husband's father)

nâpedari stepfather مارکی nâpedari stepfather hamsar spouse (gender neutral)

bâjenâq wife's sister's husband

nâmzad fiancé(e) (gender neutral)

mâdarzan mother-in-law (wife's mother)

mâdarshawhar mother-in-law أادرتوهر (husband's mother)

nâmâdari stepmother

havu second wife (relationship of a second wife to the first in a polygamous marriage)

jâri husband's brother's wife

doqolu twin (gender neutral)

هرنس بانزوهم

Lesson Fifteen

§ 45 The imperative.

45.1 The singular imperative of simple verbs is formed by prefixing $b\acute{e}$ - to the present stem.

بگير **bégir!** Take (it)! Sit down! بنشين **béneshin!** Sit down!

(a) When followed in the next syllable by -o-, the imperative prefix changes to $b\acute{o}$ -. The vowel of the stem may be contracted (see below §45.5).

بگذار **bó**g(o)zâr! Put (it) down! بگذار **bó**g(o)zar! Pass by!

(b) When followed in the next syllable by -aw- or -u-, the imperative prefix may change, according to regional accent, to $b\delta$ -.

(c) When followed by a verbal stem beginning with a vowel, the imperative prefix becomes bi- and is so written.

این **bí**â! Come! بیانداز **bíand**âz! Throw (it)! بیانداز **bío**ft! Fall down!

45.2 The plural imperative is formed by adding the second-person plural ending -id to the singular imperative.

بگيريد bégirid! Take (it)! مرويد béravid! Go! ميائيد bíâid! Come!

45.3 The imperative of most compound verbs is formed without the beprefix.¹

يم شو gom-shaw! Get lost! Get lost! Open the door! دررا بازكنيد

45.4 The negative imperative is formed by prefixing the negative *ná*- to the verbal stem, replacing the *be*- of the affirmative where it occurs. The negative prefix always receives primary stress, even in compound verbs. Before stems beginning with vowels, a -y- is infixed.

انرو Don't go! Don't go! Don't go! Don't get lost! Don't get lost! Don't open the door! منسويد مفروا باز نكنيد مفروا باز نكنيد náyâid! Don't come! منائيد náyandâzid! Don't throw (it)!

45.5 When the first syllable of a present stem of more than one syllable is an open syllable and contains either -e- or -o-, that vowel is normally contracted with the addition of the imperative prefixes $b\acute{e}$ -, $b\acute{o}$ - and $n\acute{a}$ -.

بنشینید béneshinid > bén'shinid Sit down! بگذارید bógozârid > bóg'zârid Put (it) down!

The vowel -a- is never contracted, as from bordan, ببريد bébarid 'take/carry (it)!'

- 45.6 Exceptions. The imperative of two verbs is irregularly formed.
- (a) The imperative of *budan* is formed on the stem *bâsh*-, which never takes the *be* prefix.

! مرد باش! گریه نکن! Be a man! Don't cry مرد باش! گریه نکن! fe'lan haminjâ bâshid! For the time being, stay
(be) right here!

(b) The imperative of simple dâshtan is formed from the past participle and

98

[&]quot;In classical Persian the imperative of almost all compound verbs is regularly formed without the be- prefix. In modern Persian, true compounds (i.e. those that are essentially inseparable) like bar-dâshtan, as well as the majority of instances when the compounding verbs are -kardan and -shodan, also form imperatives without the be- prefix. Verbs compounded with other verbs like zadan, keshidan, dâdan, &c. tend, particularly in spoken Persian, to take the be- prefix, e.g. حرف بزن harf bezan 'speak!'

LESSON FIFTEEN

the imperative of budan.

!in-râ dâshte-bâsh این را داشته باش!

Hold this!

in nokte-râ dar nazar این نکته را در نظر داشته اشد! dâshte-bâshid!

Keep this point in mind!

§ 46 Resumptive sentence constructions. A common type of sentence in Persian is the resumptive (or topic-comment) sentence, wherein a topic is introduced as subject (topic) of the sentence; the comment then affords some information about that topic. Since the topic/subject is not the subject of the verb of the comment-clause, the topic/subject must be referred to pronominally in its proper position in the comment. Both the independent and the enclitic pronouns are used for this purpose.

sohbat-mikardim— صحبت میکردیم، ettefâqan az dar-e

ân zan-i-ke darbâre-ash آن زنی که دربارهاش khâne-ash raddshodam.

By chance I passed by the door of the house of the woman we were talking about.1

The topicalizer is often used to focus on a topic or to introduce into a conversation something about which it is assumed that the listener already knows something.

ân qâliche-i-ke diruz آن قالیچهای که دیروز didim—fekr-nemikonid دیدیم، فکر نمیکنید qaymat-esh kam-i gerân bud?

Don't you think the price of that carpet we saw yesterday was a bit too much?2

Vocabulary 15

ettefâgan by chance اتفاقًا

aslan (+ neg.) not at all

بشقاب *boshqâb* plate معد*ًا ba'dan* afterwards (adv.)

¹This sentence is equivalent to the following, which is a non-topicalized sentence with a normal embedded relative clause: اتفاقًا از در خانهٔ آن زنی که دربارهاش صحبت میکردیم رد شده ettefaqan az dar-e khâne-ye ân zan-i-ke darbare-ash sohbat-mikardim radd-shodam.

فكر نميكنيد قيمت آن قاليچهاي كه ديروز ديديم كمي :This is the equivalent of the following² ? fekr nemikonid qaymat-e qâliche-i-ke diruz didim kam-i gerân bud كران بود

birun out, outside (az of)

بیر pir old (of people); may follow the noun it modifies as an ordj. nary adjective, e.g. مرد پیر *mard-e pir* 'old man,' مرد پیر زن پیر pir 'old woman'; it may also precede a noun without ezâfe to form a compound, as پیرمرد pir-mard 'old man' and پیرزن pir-pir zan 'old woman'

jân soul, life (as an enclitic, jân is added to proper names as an endearment, e.g. مادر جان *mâdar-jân* 'mother dear' and مريم ان maryam-jân 'dear Maryam')

changâl fork چنگال

درست مردن dorost right, correct(ly); درست کردن dorost-kardan to fix, to make (food, a meal, etc.)

dust-dâshtan to love; like simple dâshtan, dust-dâshtan never دوست داشتن takes mi- in any tense; the imperative is also formed like that of dashtan, دوست داشته باش (باشید) dust-dashte-bash(id)

sohbat talk, conversation; صحبت كردن sohbat-kardan to speak, talk

خرف zarf dish

فنجان فردن fenjân cup قاشق qâshoq spoon قاشق qablan before (adv.) گردن kârd knife ه م کردن gom-shodan to get lost; گم شدن gomkardan to lose

livân glass ليوان

mâjarâ adventure ماجرا

mariz sick, ill مريض

inaw' pl انواع anvâ' kind, sort, type (in the singular, naw' functions as a counting word, i.e. it is never followed by the ezâfe. e.g. این نوع مردم in naw' mardom 'this sort of people'; the plural is normally followed by the ezâfe, e.g. انواع مردم anvã'-e mardom 'all sorts of people')

همانجا hamânjâ right there

haminjâ right here همينجا

يخ yakh ice; يخ بستن yakh-bastan to freeze (intransitive); بغ زدن vakh-zadan to freeze (transitive)

LESSON FIFTEEN

Exercise 15

(8) Give both the singular and the plural imperatives of the following:

	, bom me
۱ سرون (رفتن)!	۱۰ زیاد (مؤال نکر دن)!
۲ سه روز بثيتر (ناندن)!	۱۱ این را (کم نکر دن)!
۳ این را (داشتن)!	۱۲ حرفهایش را (فهمیدن)!
۴ كتابش را هانجاً (كذاشت)!	۱۳ آنهارا به من (نثان دادن)!
۵ یکچند روزی ہمینجا (گذراندن)!	۱۴ به مؤالم (جواب دادن)!
ع حرفهای مرا (کوش کر دن)!	۱۵ (رفتن)، (کم شدن)!
۷ اینهارا ارزان (نفر وختن)!	۱۶ با ما (حرف زدن)!
۸ خودرا (شاخت)!	۱۷ اینهارا سرون (بردن)!
۹ ہمیثہ فارسی (صحبت کر دن)!	۱۸ برادت را (نردن)!

(b) Read and translate:

١ آن پيرمرداني كه دربارهشان صحبت ميكرديم زنهايشان كجا اند؟

۲ اتفاقا دوستم از همان ماجرا برای ما تعریف میکرد.

٣ حتمًا آنهارا قبلاً ديدهايد.

۴ آقاجان، اینقدر کار نکنید! مریض میشوید!

۵ این نوع سؤال را دوست ندارند.

۶ نفهمیدم چرا جوابی که دادم درست نیست.

٧ شما هماٰنجا بمانيد و آن چيزهارا من برايتان ميآورم.

٨ همين امروز بخريد! هفتهٔ آينده قيمتش كمتر نخواهد بود.

(c) Translate into Persian:

- 1. Always be (pl) happy!
- 2. They didn't understand your question correctly.
- 3. Take (carry) these things out to (for) those old women.
- 4. When we were going to that village, we got lost three times.
- 5. I don't like this kind of coffee.
- 6. Last week I was talking with my friends.
- 7. Tell me about the adventures you had in Iran.
- 8. We spent a few days in Shiraz.
- 9. The water that was in that dish froze last night.
- 10. Take these knives and forks and put them on the table.

Supplementary Vocabulary Signature Khorâkhâ Foodstuffs

Wy Kholakha Podustan	3
âb water	bastani ice cream
ârd flour	beh quince
âsh thick soup رُتَعَال	portoqâl orange
âlu plum	peste pistachio
âlubâlu sour cherry پُلُو	polaw "pilaf," rice cooked with meat and/or vegeta-
ordak duck	bles
esfenâj spinach	panir cheese
anâr pomegranate	piâz onion
anjir fig	piâzche scallion
angabin honey خر مرغ	tokhm-e morgh egg
angur grape	torobche radish
bâdâm almond	torshi pickles
bâdenjân eggplant	tare chives
تره فرنكي bâqâlâ, bâqalâ fava bean	tare-ye farangi leek
bâmie okra	tut berry
توت فرنكي barg-e bu bayleaf	tut-e farangi strawberry
berenj rice (uncooked)	ja'fari parsley
	ârd flour âsh thick soup âlu plum âlubâlu sour cherry ordak duck esfenâj spinach anâr pomegranate anjir fig angabin honey angur grape bâdâm almond bâdenjân eggplant bâqâlâ, bâqalâ fava bean bâmie okra barg-e bu bayleaf

LESSON FIFTEEN

چاي	chây tea	شربني	shirini sweets
خلو	chelaw plain steamed rice	طانبی	talebi melon
تزبزه	kharboze Persian melon	عد ش	adas lentils
خر ذل	khardal mustard	مل	asal honey
خرما	khormâ date	فلفل	felfel pepper
خورش	khoresh stew	قارچ	qârch mushroom
خيار	khiâr cucumber	قند	qand sugar (lump)
وارجين	dârchin cinnamon	قهوه	qahve coffee
رثته	reshte noodle	كابح	kahu lettuce
روغن	rawghan oil	كتأ	kate plain boiled rice
ربواس	rivâs rhubarb	كدو	kadu squash
زردآلو	zardâlu apricot	كرفس	karafs celery
زردوس	zardchube turmeric	كره	kare butter
زرثات	zereshk barberries	کثیم ہ	keshmesh raisin
زعفران	za'farân saffron	کم پیچ	kalampich cabbage
زمحيل	zanjabil ginger		kangar cardoon
زيره	zire cumin	كردو	gerdu walnut
بالاد	sâlâd salad	كثنيز	geshniz coriander
ربرثسر	sarshir cream	کل کلم	golkalam cauliflower
سركه	serke vinegar	ر کلانی ا	golâbi pear
سيب	sib apple	كوخبر	gawje green-gage plum
سيب زم	sibzamini potato	کوچه فرنگی	gawje-ye farangi tomato
بسر	sir garlic	ر کوشت ر	gusht meat
مريت سنت	shebbet dill	کوشت خوک	gusht-e khuk pork
رثنراب	sharâb wine	کوشت کاو	gusht-e gâv beef
تبكر	shekar sugar (granulated)	كوثت كوساله	gusht-e gusâle veal
ثلغمر	shalqam turnip	وكوثت كوسفند	gusht-e gusfand lamb
شنلله	shambalile fenugreek	كيلاس	gilâs cherry
شير	shir milk	لو	labu beet (cooked)

ليہ	lape split peas	نود	nokhud chickpeas
الوثبا	lubiâ green bean	نخودسنر	nokhud-sabz green peas
لتمو	limu lemon	نعناع أ	na'nâ' mint
لتموسنر	limusabz lime	مک	namak salt
ماتت	mâst yoghurt	,	hel cardamom
ماسي	mâhi fish	حلو	holu peach
2	morgh chicken	ہندوانہ	hendavâne watermelon
موز	mawz banana	موسیح ا	havij carrot
موسر	musir shallot		
محك	mikhak cloves	L	ta'mhâ tastes طحم
ميوه	mive fruit	ترش	torsh sour
نارتنمي	nârangi tangerine	żi.	talkh bitter
نان	nân bread	ە <i>ت</i> سور	shur salty
		شربن	shirin sweet

Almost all Iranian main dishes are either cooked or served with rice. Typically a meal consists of either خورش khoresh (stew, usually meat-based with vegetables and herbs) with خور chelaw (steamed rice) or پلو polaw (meat and/or vegetables steamed together with the rice). Bread is also eaten along with the meal, and the most common type of bread in Iran is called نان سنگك nân-e sangak, an oblong loaf of thin bread baked on pebbles (سنگك). Fruit is served after a meal.



As a remnant of ancient (Galenic) medicine practiced until recently in Iran, all foods are classified as "hot" (حرم) or "cold" (سرد), which has nothing to do with temperature but describes the "nature" of the food and its effect on the balance of health. A "well-balanced" meal is balanced in "hot" and "cold" ingredients. Illnesses are also classed as "hot" or "cold," and to counteract the effects of a "cold" malady one eats "hot" foods and vice-versa. As examples, yoghurt, spinach, apricots, and rooster are "cold"; almonds, honey, chickpeas, lamb, and hen are "hot." Pears, feta cheese, and tea are neutral.

LESSON FIFTEEN

Review III

- (a) Review the vocabulary lists for lessons 11-15.
- (b) Read and translate the following:

۱ آن غذای خوشمزه ای را که دیروز با دادید خو دمان درست کر ده بودید؟
۲ آن پیر مردی که بمیخاکار میکر د، اسمش را فراموش کر ده ام.
۳ د بمین اطاق کمی بانید و درسآن را بخوانید
۴ آن کتاب کهندرا نمیخوایم حونکه میدانم که مفید نیست.
۵ چون بهفته آینده برادرم از آن شهر دوری که در آنجاکار میکند میآید، خواهرم هم از جانی که در آن انگلیمی درس میدهد برمیکر دد.
۷ تعداد دانشویانی که در این دانشگاه درس میخوانند چیست؟
۸ بعدا فهمیدم که چرا مریض شدم. حماً از چنری بود که خورده بودم.
۹ سیخوقت کارهایی را که برای من کر ده اید فراموش نمیکنم.
۱ بیخوقت دربارهٔ قمیمی که برای آن چنرهٔ داده است صحت نخواهد کرد.

(c) Translate the following into Persian:

- 1. Don't listen to his words.
- 2. He pays (gives) a lot for the room he lives in.
- 3. There are nine rooms in their house.
- 4. Last year we didn't get sick at all.
- 5. Weren't those people we saw before Iranian?
- 6. Don't forget what I told you (my words)!
- 7. I don't know why you are afraid of them.
- 8. I had scarcely come when he turned around and left.
- 9. They had already gone home when you arrived.
- 10. How many minutes are there in a quarter hour?

ورس شانزوهم

Lesson Sixteen

§ 47 On the nature of compounds. Of the vast number of compound verbs in Persian, we can identify two broad types, close and open compounds.

(1) Close compounds are represented in the first place by those whose non-verbal compounding element is a particle or preposition like bar in برگشتن bar-gashtan and برگشتن bar-dâshtan. Although this type admits into the compound verbal particles such as mi- (e.g., بر میکردم bar-migardam 'I am returning') and pronominal enclitic objects (e.g., برم داشت bar-am-dâsht 'he picked me up'), noun complements do not intervene in this type.

The second type of close compound consists of verbs like $ext{like}$ $ext{lik$

. وارد شهر شدم vâred-e shahr shodam. I entered the city

The close compound *kâr-kardan* 'to work' or 'to do something' illustrates the fractured compound when the nonverbal element is modified in any way:

.ân kâr-râ kardam آن کاررا کردم

I did that.

. کار خوبی کردید kâr-e khub-i kardid

You did a good job./You did something good.

. کارهای خوبی کرده است. kârhâ-ye khub-i karde

He's done some good things.

As another example, the close compound of جواب دادن javâb-dâdan 'to answer' holds in a construction like

.javâb-nádâdid جواب ندادید

You didn't answer.

but when a complement is sandwiched, as in

LESSON SIXTEEN

javâb-e so'âl-am-râ جواب سؤالمرا نداديد. nádâdid.

You didn't answer my question.

the construction can no longer be called a compound, i.e., it has been split into its component parts and should be thought of as the verb $n\acute{a}d\^{a}d\acute{i}d$ 'you did not give' with a compound object, $jav\^{a}b\text{-}e\text{-}so'\^{a}l\text{-}am$ 'the-answer-to-my-question,' which takes the direct-object marker $-r\^{a}$ because the string is specific.

As a general rule, all compounds with عردن -shodan, کردن -kardan, عردن -dâshtan should be considered close compounds unless they are fractured, in which case they become open compounds.

(2) Open compounds represent a loose connection between verb and complement, often adverbial, like مدرسه رفتن madrase raftan 'to go to school, to attend school' and دور انداختن dur andâkhtan 'to throw away,' or generic, like کتاب ketâb khândan 'to read books.'

All compounds with افتادن -keshidan, افتادن -oftâdan خواندن -khândan and -خواندن -khândan and

§ 48 The present subjunctive. The subjunctive mood in Persian is, with one important exception, used only for complementary constructions, i.e. the subjunctive always depends in some way upon or follows a primary verb in the indicative mood.

Formation of the present subjunctive.

(a) The present subjunctive of simple verbs is formed from the present stem plus the prefix $b\acute{e}$ -, which is identical to the $b\acute{e}$ - prefix of the imperative and follows the euphonic rules given in §45. Subjunctive verbs of various types are given below:

(b) The present subjunctive of close compound verbs is characterized by the lack of any prefix on the verbal element. Stress remains on the final syllable of the non-verbal element.

(c) The present subjunctive of open compound verbs is made, like the simple

verb, with the prefix be- on the verbal element.

مرف بزنیم dúr biandâzim دور بیندازیم dúr biandâzim دور بیندازیم javáb-i bedehid

vâred-e sháhr beshavand وارد شهر بشوند vâred-e sháhr beshavand

(d) The negative present subjunctive is formed with ná-, which replaces be-. The euphonic rules given in §45 apply. The negative prefix takes primary stress in compound verbs, leaving secondary stress on the nonverbal element.

nágiram نیندازیم náyandâzim نگیرم ایائید bàr nádâri برنداری bàr nádâri وارد نشود gòm náshavand

(e) Exceptions. (i) As in the imperative, the subjunctive of budan 'to be' is formed on the stem باش bâsh- without the be- prefix. Its inflection is as follows:

bâshim باشیم bâshim باشی bâshid باشی bâshid باشد bâshad باشند bâshad

(ii) Simple dâshtan and dust-dâshtan, as in the imperative, form the subjunctive from the past participle and the subjunctive of budan.

dâshte-bâshim داشته باشیم dâshte-bâshim داشته باشی dâshte-bâshid داشته باشی dâshte-bâshad داشته باشید dâshte-bâshad

The negative subjunctive is predictably formed from the affirmative:

nábâsham نداشته باشیم nádâshte-bâshim &c.

§ 49 Uses of the present subjunctive I.

49.1 The subjunctive mood is used for personal complements of all impersonal verbs and verbal constructions like بايد $b\acute{a}yad$ 'must, should, have to,' نبايد $b\acute{a}yad$ 'must not, should not, don't have to,' شايد $sh\acute{a}yad$ 'may, might, perhaps,' or with negative subjunctive 'may not, might not.'

ا باید بروم. I must go (have to go). باید بمانید. You don't have to stay. باید بمانید بهانید بهانید به nábâyad bémânid. We may (might) say.

LESSON SIXTEEN

شاید نیایند. They may (might) not come.

Bâyad and shâyad are called "impersonals" because they are "frozen" in the third-person singular. Of bâyad there also remains a past third-person singular, تابيل bâyest or ميباليست mibâyest, which reflects the original, now obsolete, infinitive بايستن bâyestan and which is used synonymously with بايد bâyad. A past participle شايد shâyeste ('suitable, appropriate') survives of the original but now obsolete infinitive شايد shâyestan that gives شايد shâyad. Aside from the frozen third-person singular forms, these verbs have no further inflections in modern Persian.

49.2 The subjunctive serves as a complement of the independent verbs خواستن khâstan 'to want,' توانستن tavânestan 'to be able,' and گذاشتن gozâshtan 'to allow, let.'

I wanted to go.
ال wanted to go.
ال want to go.

He was able to come (he could come).

He can come.

ال want to go.

He was able to come (he could come).

He can come.

He can come.

Let them come./Allow them to come.

pedar-am nágozâsht (ke) My father didn't let me nan béravam.

wanted to go.

I wanted to go.

I wanted to go.

Wanted to go.

He was able to come (he could come).

He can come.

When to come in the me to come.

wanted to go.

I wanted to go.

I wanted to go.

I wanted to go.

Wanted to go.

I wanted to go.

I want to go.

Direct objects of the dependent subjunctive and prepositional matter normally fall between the independent and dependent verbs. The independent verbs may occur in any tense.

If there is a change of subject between the independent and dependent verbs, the conjunction 4 - ke 'that' usually appears along with the subject pronoun of the dependent verb.

mikhâham ke shomâ ميخواهم كه شما بيائيد.

I want you to come

némikhâham ke ânhâ نميخواهم كه آنها بروند. béravand.

I don't want them to go.

49.3 The independent uses of the subjunctive, i.e., where it occurs not dependent upon a preceding independent verb, are (1) as a jussive ('let, may') in all persons:

!béravim برويم

Let's go!

hamântawr ke hast, هما نطور که هست باشد!

Let it be just as it is!

bâshad!

. خدا سامرزدش khodâ bíâmorzad-esh خدا

May God have mercy on

him.

!khodâ nákonad خدا نکند!

God forbid! ("may God

not do it")

and (2) as the deliberative interrogative (English 'should'):

? che kâr konam چه کار کنم؟

What should I do?

? che béguyad چه نگوند؟

What should he say? Should we go?

?béravim برویم ? chérâ náravim چرا نرویم

Why shouldn't we go?

chiz-i

'such a

Vocabulary 16

emkân possibility امكان

bel'akhare finally, at last chonân such, so, so much,

like that chonin such, so, so much, thing')

chonin

رنگ rang color الازم lâzem necessary الباس lebâs clothes ممكن momken possible

jغذ gazâ food

adjectives; when they are همانطور used adjectivally they pre-

hamântawr just like that, in that manner; همانطور که

hamântawr-ke just as

cede the nouns they modify, and the noun is in the indefinite state: چنین چیزی

like this (chonân and chonin are used as adverbs and

> hamrâh-e along with; also همراه

110

LESSON SIXTEEN

forms open compounds: نوردن hamrâh âvordan 'to bring along,' همراه نـــردن hamrâh bordan 'to take along'

emkân-dâshtan to be possible (impersonal + subj.) مكان داشتن andâkhtan/andâz- to cast, throw, hurl

bấyad it is necessary, must, should (impersonal + subj.); the negative is usually نباید nábâyad ("don't have to, must not, should not") + subj.

pushidan to cover, clothe, wear, put on (the present tense is used only for habitual action: هر روز صبح لباسمرا می پوشیه har ruz sobh lebâs-am-râ mípusham 'I put on my clothes every morning'); the simple past refers to one act of putting on clothes (امروز صبح لباسمرا پوشیدم emruz sobh lebâs-am-râ pushidam 'I put on my clothes this morning')

پوشیده بودن pushide budan to be wearing (for clothing, an unmodified article is in the generic state, e.g. پیراهن پوشیده است pirâhan pushide-ast 'he's wearing a shirt,' while a modified article is in the indefinite state, e.g. پیراهن سفیدی پوشیده pirâhan-e sefid-i pushide-ast 'he's wearing a white shirt')

تغيير دادن taqyir-dâdan to change (transitive) تغيير كردن taqyir-kardan to change (intransitive)

- tavânestan/tavân- to be able, can + subj. (in the negative past habitual/progressive tavânestan implies simple inability, e.g. ميايم némitavânestam bíâyam 'I wasn't able to come,' but in the simple past negative it implies an attempt that failed, e.g. تتوانستم بيايم nátavânestam bíâyam 'I [tried to or wanted to but] couldn't come.' The distinction is not maintained in the present or future tenses.)
- khâstan/khâh- to want, be about to + subj. (the past habitual/progressive implies simple volition, e.g. مى خواستم بروم mí-khâstam béravam 'I wanted to go,' and the simple past implies 'just about to, on the verge of' doing something, e.g. مى خواستم بروم khâstam béravam 'I was about to go, I was on the verge of going')

בررفتن dar raftan (open compound) to run away (בرأوردن (درآور dar-âvordanldar-âvar- (âvor-) (close compound) to take off

(clothes), to take out

dur andâkhtan (open compound) to throw away دور انداختن

shấyad may, might, it is fitting (impersonal + subj.); maybe (+ indicative); the negative construction is usually shâyad + neg. subj. ('may/might not'); the negative, نشاید nashâyad, means 'it is not fitting, it is not appropriate'

jekr-kardan to think فکر کردن

" gozâshtan/gozâr- to allow, let (+ subj.) گذاشتن (گذار)

به شهر وارد شدم :vâred-shodan to enter, come/go in (+ be: وارد شدن be shahr vâred shodam 'I entered the city,' or "sandwiched" open compound construction: وارد شهر شدم vâred-e shahr shodam 'I entered the city')

Exercise 16

(a) Supply the proper present subjunctive form of the verbs given in parentheses and translate the following:

۱۲ می تواند نوب (شندن). ۱ امک ان دارد که من (نمآمدن). ۲ ثما مامد این رنگرا (تغییر دادن). ۱۳ میوانی مرا (دیدن)؟ ۳ میواسد انهارا (کم کردن)؟ ۱۴ می خواستند انهارا (دور انداختن). ۱۵ تأبد ما زودتر (رسدن). ۴ بمین حالا نمی توانم (فکر کر دن). ۵ توہیوقت نباید در آنجا (نکساہ کر دن). ع١ بعدًا نواسيم وارد شهر (ثدن). ۱۷ نمی توانم از آن ماجرا (تعریف کردن). ء نتوانىتىد آنرا (فروختن). ۷ تمیواسد آن دررا (بستن). ۱۸ میخواسد آن قهوه را (خوردن) ۶ ۱۹ نمی توانم ان درا (باز کر دن). ۸ من شامد اورا (دوست داشتن). ۹ میوانند فارسی (حرف زدن). ۲۰ نمي نوامد آن چنر فرا به من (دادن). ۱۰ لازم نیت که او (ماز آمدن). ۲۱ ما مامد آنهارا بمراه (آوردن). ۱۱ من ہم میخواہم کمی (برداشت). ۲۲ این شاید درست (بودن).

LESSON SIXTEEN

۲۳ امک ن زارد من چنین غذائی را (خوردن). ۲۴ می خوابند که ما بخانه (برکشتن).

(b) Translate into Persian:

- 1. I don't want to go there tomorrow.
- 2. He was just about to throw it away.
- 3. We want to find the things we lost yesterday.
- 4. This job is so simple that I don't have to think.
- 5. I think I got sick from the food I ate in the village last week.
- 6. Couldn't you give a correct answer to the question?
- 7. I wanted to answer correctly, but I wasn't able to.
- 8. Don't let (allow) your little brother get lost.
- 9. Why won't you let me open the door for them?
- 10. Didn't you want to buy shoes and socks for yourself?

Supplementary Vocabulary: Clothing

س سرز.	âstin sleeve	حليقه	jelitqe vest
انكثراي	angoshtar(i) ring	جوراب	jurâb socks
اورکت	overkot peacoat	جوراب نايلن	jurâb-e nâylon nylons
بارانی	bârâni raincoat	<i>چب</i>	jib pocket
بازوبند	bâzuband bracelet	چادر	châdor veil
بلوز	boluz blouse	چر	chatr umbrella
بند كفث	band-e kafsh shoelace	چگه	chakme boots
ماحه و پو	pâche cuff (on trousers)	وامن	dâman skirt
بالتو	pâlto overcoat	د مشکش	dastkesh gloves
<i>بولور</i>	pulover sweater	وكمه	dokme button
نيرابن ميرابن	pirâhan shirt, dress	دمانی	dampâi slippers, flipflops
نيرامن خواب	pirâhankhâb nightgown	رونوش	rupush smock
بثرامه	pizhâme pyjamas	روسری	rusari headscarf

aynak-e dudi dark glasses zip zipper zirpush underwear zirpirâhan undershirt kerâvât necktie sâ'at-e jibi pocket watch sâ'at-e mochi wristwatch kafsh shoes kafsh-e kattâni sneakers sar-âstin cuff (on a shirt) kolâh hat sagak buckle kamarband belt sineband bra kif-e dasti handbag shâl-e gardan scarf gâlosh galoshes short briefs gardanband necklace shalvår trousers gushvåre earring shalvâr-e kattâni blue jeans mâyo bathing suit aynak glasses yaqe collar

Supplementary Vocabulary Practice.

- 1. She's wearing a green skirt.
- 2. I took my pyjamas off this morning.
- 3. Aren't you wearing a sweater today?
- 4. I didn't put on an undershirt this morning.
- 5. Put on your raincoat!
- 6. Why are you wearing green socks with those trousers?
- 7. I wasn't wearing an overcoat at that time.
- 8. She always wears a white blouse.
- 9. I want to take my shoes off.
- 10. I put my clothes on in the morning and take them off at night.

لارتن هفرهم

Lesson Seventeen

§ 50 Impersonal constructions.

50.1 Khosh- âmadan az. This impersonal construction is equivalent to the English verb 'to like': the subject of the English verb is expressed in Persian as a pronominal enclitic after khosh- (which must have a pronominal enclitic), and the object of the English verb is the complement of the preposition az. The verb âmadan is invariably impersonal in the third person singular in all tenses.

. I liked it. از آن خوشم آمد. I liked it.

az ân khosh-am miâyad. I like it.

az kâr-e shomâ khosh- **He** doesn't like what you is esh némiâyad. did.

az chonin kâr-i khosh- They will not like such a از چنین کاری خوششان eshân nákhâhad âmad. thing.

An infinitive may serve as the complement to the preposition az in this construction. Generic objects and compounding complements precede the infinitive; specific and modified objects follow the infinitive with the $ez\hat{a}fe$.

az sohbat-kardan khosh- They like to talk. از صحبت كردن خوششان eshân miâyad.

az didan-e dustân-emân We like **to see** our از **دیدن** دوستانمان ماید. khosh-emân miâyad. friends.

Parallel to khosh- âmadan az is the construction bad- âmadan az 'to dislike, to be displeased by.'

از این غذا بدم میاید. az in qazâ bad-am I dislike this food.
miâyad.

az film-i ke dishab didim We didn't dislike the از فیلمی که دیشب دیدیم bad-eman náyâmad. movie we saw last night.

When the "logical" subject of these expressions is other than pronominal, the resumptive construction (§46) is used.

barâdar-e rezâ—az برادر رضا از تهران tehrân khosh-**esh** némiâyad.

Reza's brother doesn't like Tehran.

pirzanhâ-ye deh—az u پیرزنهای ده از او بد**شان** bad-**eshân** miâmad.

The old women of the village disliked her.

50.2 Another common impersonal is خوش گذشتن به khosh-gozashtan be 'to have a good time.' The Persian verb is invariably in the third person singular, and the English subject follows the preposition be.

be man khayli khosh- بمن خيلي خوش گذشت. gozasht.

I had a really good time.

ânjâ be shomâ khosh- آنجا به شما خوش bogozarad.

May you have a good time there.

-be dâryush khosh به داریوش خوش ?migozarad میگذرد؟

Is Darius having a good time?

50.3 In the expressions $kh\hat{a}b$ - $\hat{a}madan$ 'to get sleepy' and $kh\hat{a}b$ - bordan 'to fall asleep,' although $kh\hat{a}b$ is actually the subject of both verbs, they are similar to the impersonals in that the English subject is expressed pronominally in Persian.

- § 51 Uses of the present subjunctive II. The present subjunctive occurs as a verbal complement of the following expressions. The subordinating conjunction 4 ke, like the English 'that,' may be omitted.
- 51.1 After all impersonal constructions of possibility, probability, necessity, and preference.

امکان دارد (که) نیایم. *emkân-dârad (ke) náyâ-* It's possible I won't *yam*. come.

LESSON SEVENTEEN

emkân-nádârad (ke) امكان ندارد (كه) بيايم. híâvam.

It's not possible for me to come.

lâzem bud (ke) béravid. لازم بود (که) بروید.

It was necessary for you to go.

(كه) برويد. lâzem nábud (ke) béravid.

It wasn't necessary for you to go.

ehtemâl-dârad (ke) احتمال دارد (که) همانجا hamânjâ bémânand.

It's probable that they will stay there.

51.2 After all personal expressions of desire, will, and preference. English equivalents almost all have a complementary infinitive in such constructions.

mikhâhand bárgardand. They want to return.

ميل ندارم به شهر بروم. mayl nádâram be shahr I'm not inclined to go to béravam. town.

town.

وصد داشتند آنکاررا qasd-dâshtand ân kâr-râ They intended to do it.

bókonand.

ترجیح میدهیم آنطور tarjih-midehim ântawr نطور nábâshad.

We prefer it not to be like that.

51.3 After expressions of command and prohibition.

. به او گفتم (که) بنشیند. be u goftam (ke) béneshi- I told him to sit down.

farmudand (ke) mâ nára- They ordered us not to فرمودند (که) ما نرویم. go.

51.4 After all expressions of hope.

omidvar-am baz-ham اميدوارم بازهم شمارا

I hope I'll see you again.

shomâ-râ bébinam.

shomâ-râ bébinam.

I hope I'll be able to go.

vânam béravam.

omidvâr budam ke bétaI hoped I would be able

I hope I'll be able to go.

vânam béravam.

to go.

As shown in the last two examples, English has a strict sequence of tense in such constructions. There is no sequence of tense in Persian: the complement of a hope for the future is always in the present subjunctive.

omid-esh in-ast ke hami- It is his hope that he will امیدش این است که she dar ânjâ bémânad. remain there always.

omid-esh in-bud ke hami- It was his hope that he امیدش این بود که همیشه she dar ânjâ bémânad. would remain there always.

51.5 After expressions of doubt.

shakk-dâram ke bétavâ- I doubt he can undernad in matlab-râ stand this matter. béfahmad.

شک داشتند که بیایند یا shakk-dâshtand ke bíâ-نه. yand yâ na. They doubted whether they should come or

51.6 After expressions of opinion where doubt is implied. Simple statements of opinion where no doubt in implied are in the indicative. Compare the following:

فکر میکنم که آنجاست. I think he is there. باشد. *fekr-mikonam ke ânjâ* I think he **may be** there. *bâshad*.

The subjunctive is used after negative verbs of thinking with reference to the present or the future.

i fekr-némikonam ke ânjâ I don't think he's there. فكر نميكنم كه آنجا باشد.

fekr-némikonam ke I don't think they'll *bíâyand*. come.

فکر نمیکنم که فردا fekr-némikonam ke fardâ I don't think it'll rain باران بیاید. bârân bíâyad. tomorrow.

51.7 After expressions of emotion when the state or action of the dependent verb is subsequent to or as yet unrealized at the time of the main verb.

mitarsam u-râ paydâ- I'm afraid I won't find nákonam. her.

لاونا في الله khoshhâl mishavim we'll be happy **to see** خوشحال ميشويم شمارا shomâ-râ bébinim. you.

LESSON SEVENTEEN

When the state or action of the dependent verb has taken place prior to the exoression of emotion, the dependent verb is in the indicative.

khoshhâl-im ke âmade-id. We're happy you've خوشحاليم که آمدهايد. come.

Vocabulary 17

أشپزخانه مسلط hope امید omid hope امید omid hope امیدوار omidvâr hopeful امیدار bidâr awake, aware بعد pas then, therefore امید pas-az after (prep.) بیش pish-e before, in front of ایش pish-az before (prep.) نختخواب takhtekhâb bed خواب darâz long

دیگر digar (+ neg.) no more, no longer
زمین zamin ground, land, earth; floor

sar-e kelâs in class, to class

class

farangi European

matlab pl مطالب matâleb

matter, topic

ma'mulan usually

Verbs

احتمال داشتن ehtemâl-dâshtan (impersonal + subj.) to be probable احتمال داشتن bad- âmad- az dislike بد... آمد از bidâr-shodan to wake up bidâr-shodan to sleep, go to sleep, lie down خوابیدن (خواب) khâbidan/khâb- to sleep, go to sleep, lie down خوش... آمد از مداز کشیدن darâz-keshidan to stretch out (کش کشیدن (کشیدن (کشیدن (کش کشیدن (کش کش کشیدن (کش کشیدن

Some common given names:

زهرا زهرا Zahrâ Zahra (fem.) واله Zhâle Zhaleh (fem.) واله Shahlâ Shahla (fem.) شيرين Shirin Shirin (fem.) شيرين Layli Leili (fem.) مريم Maryam Maryam (fem.) هما Homâ Homa (fem.) احمد Ahmad Ahmad (masc.)

جواب Javâd Javad (masc.) جواب Hasan Hassan (masc.) جسن Hosayn Hossein (masc.) برضا Rezâ Reza (masc.) برضا Mohammad (commonly pronounced Mammad) Mohammad (masc.) هجود Mahmud Mahmoud (masc.)

Exercise 17

(a) For the following use the khosh- $\hat{a}mad$ - az construction (e.g., $u-in-\hat{a}mad > u$ az in khosh-esh $\hat{a}mad$):

(b) Give appropriate answers to the following questions:

(c) Read and translate the following sentences:

LESSON SEVENTEEN

۳ معمولاً جواد از غذای فرکمی خوشش میآید ۴ لازم نیست آن چنر کارا به ما نشان برمند ۵ باید بهٔ ظرفهارا به آشپزخانه ببریم. ۶ احراز صبح به او گفته که بهترین نباسهایش را بیوشد ۸ از زود رسیدن بدش میآید ۹ مکن است که رضاً دیگر سر کلاس نیآید ۱۰ از دیدن دوستان ایرانی ام و صحبت کردن با آنها خوشم میاید

(d) Translate into Persian:

- 1. Last week the things I wanted finally arrived.
- 2. Is it possible for us to enter that building?
- 3. I doubt Javad can answer your question.
- 4. Reza wanted to stretch out on the bed for half an hour.
- 5. This is at least the third time that we are doing this.
- No sooner had I picked up the newspaper than I saw it was [use present tense] yesterday's.
- 7. Who's that Iranian I saw you with last night?
- 8. I hope they won't come here anymore.
- 9. Why do you want to live in that old house?
- 10. I want to take my clothes off and go to sleep.

لارىن هجيرهم

Lesson Eighteen

§ 52 Totally impersonal constructions.

52.1 The totally impersonal construction is formed with the impersonal verbs $b\hat{a}yad$ ('must') or شاید $sh\hat{a}yad$ ('may') plus the short infinitive (past stem). The impersonal is equivalent to English expressions with 'one' (French on and German man) or, with transitive verbs, a passive construction.

b باید رفت	âyad raft.
------------	------------

One must go (il faut

aller).

shâyad goft. شاید گفت

One may say, it may be

said.

nábâyad nâomid bud. نباید ناامید بود

One shouldn't be despondent.

52.2 The impersonal construction for 'can' with توانستن tavânestan is made by dropping the third-person singular ending of the present (ميتواند mitavânad > ميتواند) amitavân) and adding the short infinitive.

mítavân raft. ميتوان رفت

One can go.

némitavân goft.

One cannot say / it cannot be said.

In the past, the third-person singular form (ميتوانست mttavanest), which has no personal ending to begin with, is used with the short infinitive.

mítavânest fahmid.

One could understand.

mítavânest goft. ميتوانست گفت

One could say, it could be said.

In modern and spoken Persian ميشود *míshod* and ميشود *míshavad* are commonly used as impersonals with the short infinitive in the sense of possibility.

míshavad goft.

One can say, it's possible to say.

LESSON EIGHTEEN

némishod bâvar-kard. نمی شد باور کرد

One couldn't believe it /
It wasn't possible to
believe it

§ 53 The participial absolute. Sentences in literary Persian are commonly characterized by a high degree of complexity (subordination and co-ordination) and length. In order to relieve the monotony of a number of finite verbs connected by conjunctions, the participial absolute is used in sentences that contain more than several parallel verbs. Identical to the past participle (§28), the participial absolute shows neither person nor tense but takes its logical tense from the finite verb at the end of the sentence. When the subject of both the participial absolute and the main verb is the same, that subject is normally expressed before the participial absolute. The participial absolute construction is used very much like the ablative absolute in Latin, the genitive absolute in Greek, and the -ip converb in Turkish.

hosayn vâred-e otâq حسين وارد اطاق شده shode, neshast.

Hossein, having come into the room, sat down.

If the subject of the participial absolute is pronominal and different from the subject of the main verb, the pronoun must be expressed.

u vâred-e otâq shode, **u** vâred-e otâq shode, فتند , bame raftand.

When **he** came into the room, everybody left.

In substandard writing the participial absolute is often followed by the co-ordinating conjunction, although strictly speaking it should not be used in this construction.

bârhâ-ye khod-emân-râ بارهای خودمان را بسته و baste-o be râh oftâdim.

براه افتادیم fardâ be shahr rafte-o dustân-am-râ khâham

did.

I'll go to town tomorrow and see my friends.

Having tied up our loads,

we set out.

§ 54 Reported speech and verbs of sense perception. All speech reported with گفتن goftan in the past is quoted in the same tense in which it was originally stated. In such usage the conjunction 4 ke, which introduces both direct and indirect speech, should be thought of as a type of quotation mark.

goftam ke miâyam.	{	I said, "I'm coming." I said I was coming.
goft ke miâyam. گفت که میایم	{	He said, "I'm coming." He said I was coming.
goft ke miâyad. گفت که میاید	{	He said, "He's coming." He said he was coming.

Similarly, the tense after past verbs of seeing, hearing, knowing, guessing, understanding, believing, etc. (verbs of sense perception) is given in the subordinate clause exactly as it would have been at the moment of perception. This is unlike English, where the subordinate verb is sequential according to the tense of the main verb. In Persian, if at the time of perception the verb was present, it remains present; if past, it remains past.

shenidam ke mariz-id. شنیدم که مریضید shenidam ke marizbudid.

I heard you were ill.

I heard you had been ill.

vaqt-i ke didam kâzem وقتى كه ديدم كاظم آنجا ânjâ nist, hads-zadam نيست، حدس زدم كه ke be madrase rafte-

When I saw that Kazem wasn't there, I guessed he had gone to school.

میدانستم که شما **نمیآئید** midânestam ke shomâ n**émi**âid.

I knew you weren't coming/wouldn't come.

آنوقت فهمیدم که چرا آنوقت فهمیدم که چرا cherâ ânjâ **nist**.

Then I understood why he wasn't there.

Vocabulary 18

oftâdan/oft- to fall, befall افتادن (افت)

اتفاق ettefâq pl -ât event, something that happens by chance; اتفاق افتادن الخاق ettefâq-oftâdan for something to happen, occur (in this construction ettefâq is the subject of the verb oftâdan: اتفاق بدى افتاده 'ettefâq-i oftâd 'something happened,' افتاده 'ettefâq-e bad-i oftâde-ast 'something bad has happened')

باور کردن bâvar-kardan to believe باور کردن râh oftâdan to get under way, start راه افتادن out

LESSON EIGHTEEN

ba'id unlikely بعيد

pish-âmadan to come up, happen بيش آمدن

chads-zadan to guess حدس زدن

shodan (3rd-person singular only as an impersonal) to be possible (+ subjunctive complement 'to do something')

neshastan/neshin- to sit, sit down (the present tense is used only for habitual action (هميشه همينجا مي نشينه hamishe haminjâ míneshinam 'I always sit here'); the simple past refers to one act of sitting (روى زمين نشستم ru-ye zamin neshastam 'I sat down on the ground')

در اطاق خود نشسته) neshaste budan to be seated, to be sitting نشسته بودن اطاق خود نشسته المعتاه dar otâq-e khod neshaste-ast 'he is sitting in his room; در اطاق خود نشسته بود dar otâq-e khod neshaste-bud 'he was sitting in his room')

vâqe'e pl وقايع vaqâye' event, occurrence (with the verb pish-âmadan 'for an event to occur': واقعهٔ مهمی پیش آمد vâqe'eye mohemm-i pish-âmad 'an important event occurred')

Exercise 18

(a) Change the verbs in the following sentences to totally impersonal constructions (باید برود) bâyad béravad 'he must go' > باید برود bâyad raft 'one must go'; میتواند برود mitavân aft 'one can go'):

۲ می توانم حدس بزنم ۲ نباید فراموش کنیم ۳ نمی شود از اینها بترسی ۴ باید از آن ماجرا تعریف کنند ۵ ساعت ۱۱ شب باید بخوابیم

(b) Change the verbs in boldface to the participial absolute, making any necessary adjustments, and then translate:

۱ آن اتفاق **افتاد** و همه برگشتند. افتادند.

۲ ما براه **افتادیم** و او در خانه ماند. ۶ وارد اطاق **شدند** و نشستند.

۳ واقعهٔ مهمی پیش آمد و نتوانستند ۷ به شهر برمیگردیم و همیشه آنجا

م.

۴ آنرا خودم دیدم و باور نمیکنم. ۸ اورا شناختیم و پیشش رفتیم.

۵ لیلی هنوز نرسیده بود و آنها براه

(c) Read and translate into English:

۱ وقتی که فهمیدند که شما نمیخواهید بروید خودشان براه افتادند.

۲ میدانستم که حتمًا واقعهٔ خیلی مهمی پیش آمده است.

۳ دیدم که شما در آن ساختمان زندگی میکنید.

۴ حدس زد که چرا هنوز نیامده اند.

۵ گفتم که نمی شود حرفهایش را باور کرد.

ع ميداً نستم كه آن اتفاقي كه هميشه از آن ميترسيدم خواهد افتاد.

۷ شنیدم که همسایگان ممکن است قبل از فردا برگردند.

۸ از کجا میدانستید که زمستان سردی خواهد بود؟

۹ خیلی بعید است که آن اتفاقی که میگوئید بیفتد.

۱۰ لباسمرا درآورده و روی تختخواب دراز کشیده خوابم برد.

(d) Translate into Persian:

- 1. One can guess that all have gone to sleep.
- 2. It is not possible to show you those things now.
- 3. One cannot get lost in that small village.
- 4. I don't like this color.
- 5. Should we throw those old things away?
- 6. Do you believe that such a thing happened?
- 7. Where do you want to sit?
- 8. Did Shahla say she was coming to your house tonight?
- 9. I told Hassan that you wouldn't believe (it1).
- 10. We didn't realize that anything had happened.

¹ This type of 'it' required by English is not expressed in Persian when the reference is clear in the mind of the speaker.

حرتن نوزوهم

Lesson Nineteen

§ 55 The past subjunctive.

55.1 Formation of the past subjunctive. The past subjunctive is formed from the past participle and the present subjunctive of *budan* (i.e., its formation is similar to that of the past narrative, but the forms of 'to be' are subjunctive). Stress remains on the last syllable of the participle in all verbs, simple and compound. A paradigm, from *raftan*, is as follows:

rafté-bâsham رفته باشم	rafté-bâshim رفته باشیم
rafté-bâshi رفته باشیٰ	rafté-bâshid رفته باشید
rafté-bâshad رفته باشد	rafté-bâshand رفته باشند

The negative past subjunctive is formed by prefixing the negative $n\acute{a}$ - to the participle.

nárafte-bâshim, &c. نرفته باشیم nárafte-bâshim, &c.

Examples of various types are as follows.

that you have returned برگشته باشی bar-gashté-bâshi that you have returned برگشته باشی nábude-bâshad that he/she/it not have been dâshté-bâshim that we have had that you have loved

bàr-nádâshte-bâshand that they have not picked up

There are no exceptions to this formation. The present and past subjunctives of داشتن dâshtan (and داشتن dashtan) are identical.

- 55.2 Uses of the past subjunctive.
- (a) The past subjunctive is used for the doubtful past realization of verbs of necessity ('must have'), possibility ('can have'), desire, wishing, etc., where the complement is anterior to the main verb.

الد رفته باشد. bâyad rafte-bâshad. He must have gone.

-bâyad ân kâr-râ karde بايد آن كاررا كرده باشد. bâshad.

He must have done that thing.

. shâyâd âmade-bâshand شايد آمده باشند

They may have come.

vâqe'e-ye mohemm-i واقعهٔ مهمی باید پیش -bâyad pish-âmade bâshad.

Some important event must have come up.

némitavânad ân kâr-râ نميتواند آن كاررا كرده باشد. karde-bâshad.

He cannot have done that thing.

némitavânestam ân kâr- نمیتوانستم آن کاررا کرده râ karde-bâsham.

I couldn't have done it.

سمكن أنيست آنرا ديده momken nist ân-râ dide-bâshid.

It isn't possible for you to have seen it.

momken nábud ân-râ ممكن نبود آنرا **ديد**ه باشيد. dide-bâshid.

It wasn't possible for you to have seen it.

omidvâr-am be shomâ امیدوارم به شما خوش khosh-gozashtehâshad

I hope you have had a good time.

(b) The past subjunctive is used in past expressions after the conjunctions of condition and concession.

که کارتان را کده باشىد.

be shart-i mítavânid بشرطی میتوانید بروید béravid **ke** kâr-etân-râ karde-bâshid.

You can go provided you have done your work.

نمیتوانید یاد گرفته némitavânid yâd-gerefte-bâshid magar inke madrase rafte-bâshid.

You can't have learned unless you have gone to school.

némitavânid masjed-e نمتوانيد مسجد گوهر شادرا ديده باشيد بحز اىنكە مشهد رفته باشيد.

gawharshâd-râ didebâshid bejoz ínke mashhad rafte-bâshid. You can't have seen the Gawhar-Shad Mosque unless you have gone to Mashhad.

افكارش مال او نست.

háttâ agar-ham in ketâb- Even though he may
râ khod-esh neveshte- have written this be bâshad, afkâr-esh mâle u nist.

have written this book himself, the ideas in it are not his.

LESSON NINETEEN

§ 56 Back-formation of infinitives and denominative verbs. As has been seen, many verbs in Persian have irregular present stems. Quite a few verbs, in addition to their original infinitives, have also a "regularized" back-formed infinitive made by adding the regular infinitival ending -idan (occasionally -dan) to the present stem.

gardidan 'to turn' گردیدن | gardidan 'to turn' گردیدن | gardidan 'to turn' گرد | rostan | گستن rostan | روئیدن | ru-> رستن rostan | گذار | gozâshtan گذاشتن gozâshtan | گذار | gozâshtan گذاشتن

This process results in two past stems, usually more or less identical in meaning—although occasionally differing slightly in usage—with one present stem. The same regular infinitival ending -idan is used to form denominative (derived from nouns) verbs.

ifahm 'understanding' > فهميدن fahmidan 'to understand' فهميدن dozd 'thief' > دزديدن dozdidan 'to rob' دزديدن raqs 'dance' > توصيدن

§ 57 Temporal use of 45 ke. When the conjunction 45 ke is used in a temporal sense ('when'), it can never be the first word in the clause. A subject pronoun must be interpolated if there is no element other than the verb. Such temporal clauses always precede the main clause.

anhâ ke raftand, akbar آنها که رفتند، اکبر آمد. âmad.

u ke mord, tanhâ او که مرد تنها ماندند.
mândand.

بچه که بودم زندگی bachche ke budam, zendegi sâdetar bud.

intawr ke harf-mizani, اینطور که حرف میزنی، man némitavânam من نمیتوانم حرفهایترا harfhâ-yet-râ bâvarkonam. When they went, Akbar came.

When he died, they were left alone.

When I was a child, life was simpler.

When you talk like this, I can't believe what you say.

gardidan is used to replace -shodan in compounds to avoid excessive repetition. Hence, وارد شدن vâred-gardidan could be used to replace وارد شدن vâred-shodan.

The original verb, رستن rostan, is now obsolete and has been replaced by ruidan.

By convention گذاشتن gozâshtan is spelled with zâl, while گذاشتن gozâshtan is spelled with ze.

The temporal clause follows the main clause only when it introduces a single action that interrupts an on-going, continuous act or when it is preceded by hanuz and a negative remote past tense used in the sense of 'had scarcely, had barely' (see §41.1c).

ketâb-mikhândam ke کتاب میخواندم که خبر khabar-e ân vâge'e آن واقعه رسيلا. resid.

I was reading when news of that event arrived.

مجتبی پا شد و از اطاق

rajab sohbat-mikard ke رجب صحبت میکرد که mojtabâ pâ-shod-o az otâq khârej-shod.

Rajab was talking when Mojtaba got up and left the room.

be hammâm-e hâjj به حمام حاج هاشم hâshem nazdik- نزدیک میشدم که قلبم

mishodam ke qalb-am istâd.

I was approaching the Hajj Hashem Bath when my heart stood still.

man hanuz bidâr من هنوز بیدار نشده بودم náshode-budam ke

sedâ-ve samâvar-râ shenidam.

I had scarcely waked up when I heard the sound of the samovar.

§ 58 Impersonals with آدم âdam. The totally impersonal construction (§52) is used where the impersonal 'one' is the subject of the main verb. When the impersonal is other than subject, the impersonal pronoun آدم âdam 'one' is used. It is always marked by -râ when it is the direct object of a verb. Such impersonal sentences are much more common in Persian than 'one' is in English.

نميتوان آدمرا باين آسانى *némitavân âdam-râ be in* It's not possible to fool *âsâni gul-zad.* **one** so easily.

némigozârand âdam kâr- They won't let **one** do نمیگذارند آدم کار خودرا e khod-râ bokonad. one's work.

cherâ **âdam**-râ ânqadr چرا آدمرا آنقدر اذیت aziyat-mikonand?

Why do they annoy one so?

Vocabulary 19

اگا *ágar* if ântawr thus, like that intawr thus, like this

bar-khâstan/ برخياز bar-khiz- to rise up, arise, stand up (literary)

LESSON NINETEEN

پا شدن pâ-shodan to get up, stand up (colloquial)

پدید شدن padid-shodan to appear, come into view و بدید شدن -e pish ago

tanhâ alone, only (as an attributive and predicate adjective, tanhâ means 'alone, by oneself'; when it means 'only,' it precedes the word it modifies, e.g. تنها چیزی که دیدم *tanhâ chiz-i ke didam...* 'the only thing I saw...' and کاری که کردم *tanhâ kâr-i ke* kardam... 'the only thing I did...')

جز، بجز (be)joz (+ neg.) except, only (joz, or bejoz, with a complementary negative means '(nothing) except,' as in جز این کار دیگری از joz in, kâr-e digar-i az dast-ash bar-nemiâyad دستش بر نمیاید 'he can't do anything except this,' or 'he can only do this'); /جز/ (be)joz in-ke unless

متى háttâ even

د کان dokkân shop, small store

-be بشرطی که ;sharâyet condition, qualification شرط shart-i-ke provided that, on condition that

afkâr idea, thought فكر

وی qavi strong, powerful قوی koshtan/کشتن

مطمئن motma'enn sure, certain mágar in-ke unless

ناپدید nâpadid not visible; ناپدید شدن nâpadid-shodan to disappear

nemudan/نمودن nemâ- to appear, seem (intrs.); to represent, show (trs.) (this verb is often used as a replacement for -kardan in compounds to avoid excessive repetition, and in that case it loses its primary meaning; the first vowel of *nemudan* is variable: it is pronounced nemud-/nemâ-, namud-/namâ-, and nomud-/nomâ-)

yâd memory (yâd also occurs in expressions for which there is no infinitival construction: يادم آمد yâd-am âmad 'I remembered' and يادم رفت yâd-am raft 'I forgot.' These expressions are used in all tenses and moods. The verb is always third-person singular with yâd as the subject; the subject of the English construction is expressed as a pronominal enclitic after yâd.)

yâd-dâdan to teach yâd-gereftan to learn یاد گرفتن

Exercise 19

(a) Give the appropriate past subjunctive form of the verbs in parentheses and then translate:

۱ علی و رضا ماید دروز ____ (۲ خلی بعد است جنان واقعه ای ____ (میش آمدن). ٣ كر نمي كنم آن اتفاقي كه ميكسيد ___ (افقادن). ۴ ایک دارد آنها قل از ما ___ (براه افتادن). ۵ امدوارم که محد آنهارا به شام ___ (شان دادن). ع ني توانيد ان چنرارا ارزان ____ (خريدن). ۷ بماه قمان ماید جای دیگری ___ (رفتن). ۸ آن آ قا باحمال قوی باید دو روز پش ____ (٩ مكن نيت كه من وارد خانه ثما ____ (ثدن). ۱۰ او ثاید آنهارا ___ (کشن). ١١ ثما نمي توانيد ان را قبلاً ____ (ديدن). ۱۲ امک ن ندارد که ما اسمه را ____ (ماد ۱۳ تها حنری که ممکن است آنها ___ (ندیدن) ا ۱۴ شا شاید___ (یاد رفتن). ۱۵ نمی تواند ان کاررا ____ (کر دن) بحز امنکه خوب ____ (ماد کر فتن (b) Read and translate the following:

۱ تها واقعه ای که پیش آمد زیاد مهم نبود.
۲ آنقدر قیمها کران شده است که کمر اینکه آدم خیلی پولدار باشد نمیتواند کو چکترین چنری دا بخرد.
۲ حدس زدم که خیلی بعید است آنها بهم بمچنان فکر کنند.
۲ یادتان نرود چند تا سخم مرغ از دکان بیاورید
۵ ماشین ما نبج دقیقه راه نرفته بود که دبی که در آن نافار خورده بودیم نامدید شد
۲ بشرطی میتوانید. مشینید که جا باشد
۲ بشرطی میتوانید. مشینید که جا باشد
۸ پیش از اینکه آن حجه فارا ببندیم، مطمئن باشیم که بهه چنر درست است.
۲ به او گفتم که جانجا بشیند و برنخنرد.
۲ باعت شش بعد از فهر ۲۹ استندماه ۱۳۳۹ بود که به اصفهان رسیدیم. ۱

- (c) Translate the following into Persian:
- 1. I must have eaten something bad this morning.
- 2. He can't have died: I saw him just (همين) yesterday.
- 3. Her life must have been relatively quiet.
- 4. You can't have seen me last year unless you were in Iran too.
- 5. Get up (sing.)! Let's go to town.
- 6. Even the children here seem old: they must have seen a lot of evil.
- 7. Ali can't have gone to sleep already.
- 8. It's not possible for them to have thrown all my books away!
- 9. They should be here at six o'clock, provided nothing bad has happened.
- 10. The only thing I know is that (این است که) they are sitting in that room.

¹For the reading of dates, see Appendix B.

Composition

Write a short composition either on what you do every morning or on what y_{00} did this morning, using as much of the following vocabulary as you can.

otâq-e khâb bedroom boland-shodan to get up بلند شدن bidâr-shodan to wake up jam'-kardan to gather together chây dorost-kardan to fix tea hammâm bathroom khamir-e dandân toothpaste dastshui washbasin (وستتونى dam-e dastshui 'at the washbasin') ومنان باك كروم) dandân pâk-kardan to brush teeth (دندان باك كروم) 'I brushed my dandânpâkkon toothbrush واندان ماك كور، dush-gereftan to take a shower rakhtekhâb bedclothes, sheets rish-tarâshidan to shave sar-e kâr raftan to go to work sar-e kelâs raftan to go to class sar-o surat shostan to wash the face savâr-e otobus shodan to get on the bus sâbun soap صابون sobhâne breakfast; صجانه درست کرون sobhâne dorost-kardan to fix qalt-zadan to toss and turn qahve dorost-kardan to make coffee (I put on my clothes') لباسم را يوشيد المائي وشيدن

لارتس بيستم

Lesson Twenty

8 59 Uses of the subjunctive III: Adjectival clauses. The subjunctive is used in adjectival clauses of the following types.

59.1 When the antecedent of the relative clause is a true indefinite (i.e. the 'someone who, anyone who' type). Compare and contrast the indicative with the subjunctive in the following examples:

-dombâl-e **kas-i** migar دنبال کسی میگردم ^که -dam ke fârsi balad فارسی بلد **باشد**.

I'm looking for someone (anyone) who knows Persian.

dombâl-e ân mard-i mi- دنبال آن مردی میگردم gardam ke fârsi balad gardam ke fârsi baladast.

I'm looking for the man who knows Persian.

sa'y-mikonam chiz-i pay- I'm trying to find some- کنم که بکار ببره dâ-konam ke be kâr thing I can use. bébaram.

sa'y-mikonam ân chiz-i- سعی میکنم آن چیزی را râ paydâ-konam ke

shomâ be kâr mibarid.

I'm trying to find the thing you use.

مشل Included in this category is the subjunctive used in descriptive clauses after mesl-e 'like' when the complement of mesl-e is indefinite.

jam'iyyat, mesl-e barf-i- جمعیت، مثل برفی که آب شود، به پراکندگی

ke âb shavad, be parâkandegi raft.

The group dispersed like snow that was melting.

mesl-e palang-i ke joft-e مثل پلنگی که جفت khod-râ gom karde-غرش میکرد. bâshad qorreshmikard.

He growled like a leopard that had lost its mate.

This type of indefinite adjectival clause includes all the relative pronouns and conjunctions like هرچه hárche 'whatever,' هرکه hárke 'whoever,' هرکه hárkojâ 'wherever,' هروقت hárvaqt 'whenever' and هروقت hárchand 'however many/ much.' These same relative words also occur as definite, in which case they mean 'everything that,' 'everyone who,' 'everywhere' and 'every time that' and are followed by the indicative. Contrast the following pairs, and note especially the present and past subjunctives.

1 1 7		
هرکه بیاید باید صبر کند.	harke bíâyad, bâyad sabr-konad.	Whoever comes must wait.
هرکه میاید دلش میخواهد بماند.	harke míâyad del-esh mikhâhad bémânad.	Everybody who comes wants to stay.
هركه آمده باشد نميخواهم اورا ببينم.	harke âmade-bâshad, némikhâham u-râ bébinam.	Whoever may have come, I don't want to see him.
هرکه آنجا رفته است خوشش آمده است.	harke ânjâ rafte-ast khosh-esh âmade-ast.	Everybody who has gone there has liked it.
هرچه بگویم فرقی نمیکند.	harche béguyam, farq-i némikonad.	Whatever I may say, it won't make any difference.
هرچه میگوید درست است.	harche míguyad dorost- ast.	Everything he says is right.
هرکجا بروم بازهم به همینجا برمیگردم.	harkojâ béravam, bâz- ham be haminjâ bar- migardam.	Wherever I may go, I'll still come back here.
هرکجا میروم چیز جالبی پیدا میکنم.	harkojâ míravam, chiz-e jâleb-i paydâ- mikonam.	Everywhere I go I find something interesting.
هروقت بيايد بگوئيد من نيستم.	harvaqt bíâyad, béguid man nistam.	Whenever he comes, say I'm not here.
. 1	harvaqt miâyad aqallan panj sâ'at mimânad.	Every time he comes he stays at least five hours.
		· m "ld" tha

59.2 The subjunctive complements any negative expression. The "could" that often comes into the English is built into the Persian subjunctive.

LESSON TWENTY

hichkas-i ânjâ **nábud** ke هیچکسی آنجا **نبود** که fârsi harf-bézanad.

من حمال نيستم كه آن man hammâl nistam ke
من حمال بيستم كه آن
ân sanduqhâ-râ bébaram.

injâ hich-i **nist** ke be اینجا هیچی **نیست** که dard-e shomâ **bókho**rad.

hichkas-i-râ nádidam ke هیچ کسی را ندیدم که آن مشرد ân ketâb-râ nákhânde-bâshad.

fekr-némikonam in be فكر نميكنم اين بدردتان dard-etân bókhorad.

in chiz-i **nist** ke ânhâ این چیزی **نیست** که آنها **nádânand**.

There was no one there who could speak Persian.

I'm no porter that I should carry those trunks.

There's nothing here that could be of any use to you.

I never saw anyone who hadn't read that book.

I don't think this will be of any use to you.

This is not anything they don't know.

shomâ bâhushtar az ân شما باهوشتر از آن هستید hastid ke harfhâ-ye urâ bâvar-konid.

You are too intelligent to believe what he says.

bozorgtar az ân-ast ke بزرگ تر از آنست که intawr gerye-konad.

He is **too** big **to cry** like this.

59.4 The present subjunctive is used after کاش (or کاشک kâsh (or کاشک kâshki) 'would that, I wish' for future wishes. Unfulfilled wishes in the past will be given in §62.

!kâsh intawr bémânad كاش اينطور بماند!

I wish it would stay like this!

!kâshki bíâyand كاشكى بايند!

I wish they would come!

§ 60 Uses of the infinitive.

60.1 The Persian infinitive functions like the English gerund, or verbal noun in '-ing,' and is used substantively (as a noun) as the subject of a verb and complement of a preposition.

qam-khordan fâyede ná- There's no use in being غم خوردن فايده ندارد.

sad.

az gerye-kardan khaste از گریه کردن خسته شد. He grew tired of crying qabl az vâred-shodan قبل از وارد شدن در زدم. I knocked before entering. bachchehâ shoru' be بچهها شروع به **دویدن** . **davidan** kardand The children started running. 60.2 Adverbial modifiers of the infinitive precede the infinitive. zud residan fâyede nádâ- There's no use in arriving early. be sahih neveshtan Pay attention to writing به صحیح نوشتن توجه be sahih neveshtan داشته باشید. داشته باشید. 60.3 Semantic objects of the infinitive. (a) Non-specific and generic objects precede the infinitive and form compounds. رخت شستن در چنین rakht-shostan dar chonin It was difficult to wash . خانه هائي سخت بود. khânehâ-i sakht bud clothes in such houses. tambr-jam'-kardan sar- Stamp-collecting is a تمبر جمع کردن سرگرمی garmi-e khub-i-st. good hobby.

(b) Modified and definite objects of the infinitive are either linked to the infinitive by the *ezâfe* or occur as pronominal enclitics.

آب گرم کردن مشکل **âb-garm-kardan** moshkel It isn't difficult **to heat** nist. water.

shostan-e rakhthâ-ye Washing dirty clothes is شستن رختهای کثیف shostan-e rakhthâ-ye يک کار هميشگی one never-ending job.

shegi-ast.

. از **دیدنتان** خوشحالیم az didan-etân khoshhâl- We're happy **to see yo**u. im.

بعد از **دیدن آنها** یادم آمد ba'd az didan-e ânhâ After seeing them I re-مکه آنهارا قبلا دیده yâd-am âmad ke ânhâ- membered I had seen râ qablan dide-budam. them before.

LESSON TWENTY

(c) Infinitival subjects are either linked to the infinitive by the ezâfe or are pronominal enclitics when there is no definite object.1

qabl az vâred-shodan-e قبل از وارد شدن آنها . دررفته بودم **ânhâ** darrafte-budam

I had run away before they came in.

ba'd az sarshenâs- بعد از سوشناس شدن اه shodan-e u, mâ digar ما دیگر اورا ندیدیم. u-râ nadidim

After he became well known, we didn't see him any more.

(d) When an infinitive serves as complement to an adjective, it is linked by the ezâfe.

sobh-e zud âmâde-ye صبح زود آمادهٔ رفتن بود. raftan bud.

He was ready to go early in the morning.

-sargarm-e nâme سرگرم نامه نوشتنيم.

We're busy writing letters.

-mashqul-e zarf-shostan مشغولِ ظرف شستنم.

I'm busy washing dishes.

mashqul-e shostan-e مشغول شستن ِ ظرفهای zarfhâ-ye kasif-am.

I'm busy washing the dirty dishes.

(e) The infinitive after در حسال dar hâl-e often translates into an English progressive tense (liké the French en train de faire).

mâ dar hâl-e gush- ما در حال گوش کردن

kardan budim-o u dar بوديم و او در حال hâl-e sohbat-kardan.

We were listening, and he was speaking.

Vocabulary 20

be dard khordan to be of use, to be useful (the person for whom something is of use or benefit is expressed as an ezâfe complein be dard-e man né- این به درد من نمیخورد mikhorad 'this is of no use to me')

ىلد بودن balad-budan to know, know how, know about (what one knows is 139

In modern Persian both subject and definite (or modified) object of an infinitive are not expressed together. Such a construction as 'her washing the dirty clothes,' classically expressed by شستن او رخهای کثیف ا shostan-e u rakhtâ-ye kasif-râ, is now circumlocuted as a noun clause (تنكه او رختهاى كثيف را شست 'the fact that she washed the dirty clothes'). The subject of an infinitive with a generic object may be expressed, as in تمبر جمع کردن من tambr-jam'-kardan-e man 'my collecting stamps.'

a noun complement of balad-budan, e.g. فارسى بلدم fârsi balad-am 'I know Persian"; 'to know how to do something' is ملدم فارسي حرف بزنم expressed as a following subjunctive, e.g. balad-am fârsi harf-bezanam 'I know how to speak Persian '

bi ân-ke without, unless (in English 'without' is followed by a ger. und; in Persian bi ân-ke is followed by a subjunctive, which is necessarily personal, e.g. بي آنكه برويد نمي بينيد bi ân-ke béravid, némibinid 'without going (unless you go), you won't see it')

jâleb nice, interesting

dombâl-e after, on the heels of; دنبال چیزی کسی گشتن dombâl-e after, on the heels of chiz-i/kas-i gashtan to look/search for something/somebody

sargarm busy (see usage note to سرگرم below)
sa'y-kardan to try (+ present subj.)
sinemâ cinema, movie theater
shoru' beginning; شروع شدن shoru'-shodan to start, begin (intransitive); התפש אנגט shoru'-kardan to begin, start (be + infinitive, doing something)

shu- to wash شو shostanl شستن

غم خوردن; qam grief غم خوردن qam-khordan to be sad, grieve فایده fâyede pl فواید favâyed benefit, use فرق کردن با farq difference; part (in the hair); فرق کردن با make a difference to (someone)

أفيلم film film, movie gerye weeping; گریه کردن gerye-kardan to cry, to weep mesl-e in-ke (+ subj.) as though mashqul busy, occupied (مشغول are followed by either a complementary noun or an infinitive with the ezâfe, or they are من سرگرم (مشغول) این .preceded by be + noun or infinitive, e.g من به این کار man sargarm (mashqul)-e in kâr-am or کارم man be in kâr sargarm (mashqul)-am 'I'm سرگرم (مشغول) أم busy with this job'; مشغول refers to occupation and being busy in a broad sense, whereas سرگرم is normally restricted to pleasurable activities); مشغول کار خود شدن mashqul-e kâr-e khod shodan to mind one's own business

hárchand however هرچند much/many

hárche whatever هر كجا hárkojâ wherever مر که hárke whoever

hárvagt whenever هروقت

Exercise 20

(a) Complete the following sentences using the verbs given in parentheses and then translate:

۱ ونبال کار حالی ممکر دم که __ (کرون). ع هركه چنین بوالی را __ (كردن)، حمّا نوب ۷ ثما هرکحا انهارا __ (کذاشتن)، فرقی نمی کنه طور که او ___ (کریه کردن)، ماید اتفاق خیلی مدی برایش ___ (افتادن) بحه کوچکتر از آن است که __ (مدرسه رفتن).

(b) Translate into Persian:

- 1. Whoever said that knows nothing.
- 2. Whatever you do and wherever you go, they will be looking for you.
- 3. I'm trying to tell you about my friends in Iran.
- 4. Zahra is too clever to listen to what he has to say.

- Before coming here, by chance I found something that may be of use to you.
- 6. I like learning things I didn't know before.
- 7. He's trying to find something to do tonight.
- 8. This won't be of any use to you unless you learn it well.
- 9. I don't think the film has started, and the theater isn't far.
- 10. He started speaking before he stood up.

Supplementary Vocabulary: Common Materials

The adjectival form is indicated in parentheses. Although almost all materials are theoretically capable of taking the -in ('made of') adjectival suffix, in practice not all do so.

sofâl(in) clay, pottery

sang(i) stone J ajor baked brick, tile *aluminium* aluminum آلومينو âhan(in) iron simân cement مال d abr(i) foam rubber shishe(i) glass abrisham(i) silk talâ(i) gold طلا ostokhân(in) bone اسحال felezz(i) pl -ât metal فار / berenj(i) brass ballur(in) crystal pârche(i) cloth kâshi glazed tile pashm(in) wool kâqaz(i) paper pelâstik(i) plastic بلاستي pambe(i) cotton kâhgel mudbrick 7 charm(in) leather (1) kattân(i) linen chub(in) wood gach(i) plaster lâstik(i) rubber chini china halabi tinplate mes(in) copper moqavvâ cardboard khest brick nogre(i) silver sorb(i) lead

LESSON TWENTY

Review IV

- (a) Review the vocabulary lists for lessons 16-20.
- (b) Read and translate:

۱ بیچ خوشم نمیآید دنبال چنین چنرانی بکر دم.
۲ نمی توانید حدس بزنید ما کجا بوده ایم.
۳ هر وقت وارد خانهٔ او می شوند مشغول کار دیگریست.
۴ نه غم خور دنیان نه کریه کر دنیان فایده دارد.
۵ معمولاً نمیشود اینهارا تعیم داد.
۷ ممکن است آنها بهتر از شما بلد باشند
۷ مکن است آنها بهتر از شما بلد باشند
۸ باور می کنید که امکسان دارد که او هم چنین کاری را کر ده باشد؟
۴ کار ما زیاد پیش نرفته بود که فهمیدیم پول بیشتری لازم است.
۴ کار ما زیاد پیش از برکشتن پدرت این چنرارا دور انداخته باشی.

- (c) Translate the following into Persian:
 - 1. Don't you want to get under way early tomorrow?
 - 2. It makes no difference to me where you found them. Give them to me!
 - 3. Before you get up, let me say this.
 - 4. We cannot go forward. What should we do now?
 - 5. Have you forgotten to throw those things away?
 - 6. It's possible for you to have a good time there.
 - 7. He said he was coming, but I don't think he knows the way.
 - 8. What time do they usually go to sleep?
 - 9. He doesn't want to tell about that event.
 - 10. I don't love you anymore.

Additional Vocabulary: Academic Fields and Related Vocabulary

eqtesâd economics اقصاد adabiyât literature

doktorâ doctorate, Ph.D. elâhiyât divinity, theology dandânpezeshki dentistry درانزگی اتان ثناء bâstânshenâsi archaeology reshte field رثة bakhsh department, division روائای ravânshenâsi psychology bumshenâsi ecology ومثابي ravânkâvi psychiatry روان کاوی behdâri public health riâziyât mathematics راضات parastâri nursing pezeshki/tebb medicine برسكي، طب zaminshenâsi geology رمن شاسی zistshenâsi biology رستشاسی târikh history setâreshenâsi astronomy takhassos specialization shimi chemistry شمي tarbiat-e badan physical ed. tatbiqi comparative تطبقي olum-e siâsi political science علوم ساسي farhang culture فرسك tamaddon civilization jâme'eshenâsi sociology حامعه شاسي falsafe philosophy فله fawq-e lisâns master's degree فوق لسانس jânvarshenâsi zoology حانورشاسي fizik physics فنرمك jarrâhi surgery عراجي lisâns bachelor's degree joqrâfiâ geography حغرافا mardomshenâsi anthropology مردثاء jangaldâri forestry me'mâri architecture hoquq law khâvarshenâsi oriental studies musiqi music موسقى dâmpezeshki veterinary medimohandesi engineering dâneshkade faculty, school honarhâ-ye zibâ fine arts

حربس بيست ويكم

Lesson Twenty-One

- 8 61 Conditionals. Conditional constructions in Persian fall into two basic categories, possible and impossible. In the following discussion the terms protasis (the 'if' clause) and apodosis (the result clause) will be used. The normal word for 'if' in Persian is Slágar.
- 61.1 Possible conditionals are further divided into the actual and the doubtful.
 - (a) In actual conditionals the protasis refers to an action or state that is assumed to be real and actually pertaining. In this type the verb of the protasis is indicative, and 'if' really means 'since.'

If you know (i.e. since you know), why don't

take us along too.

(b) The doubtful conditional is the type in which the condition set forth in the protasis may or may not be fulfilled or may or may not have been fulfilled. In doubtful conditionals referring to present or future time, the verb of the protasis is either present subjunctive or past absolute; the verb of the apodosis is present, future, or imperative. Although there is very little difference between the present subjunctive and past absolute in the doubtful conditional, the subjunctive implies doubt on the part of the speaker as to'whether or not the condition can be fulfilled. The past absolute is used when the speaker is less concerned with the doubtfulness of the situation than with the eventuality of the condition.

agar bébinam-esh اگر ببینمش (دیدمش)، (**dídam-e**s**h**), salâm-e سلام شمارا ميرسانم. shomâ-râ miresânam. If I see him I'll give him your regards.

agar u-râ paydấ-konam If I find him, I'll kill him! اگر اورا پیدا کنم (کردم)، (-kardam), míkoshamesh!

agar béravid (raftid), اگر بروید (رفتید)، النهارا فراموش نكنيد. inhâ-râ farâmushnákonid.

If you go, don't forget these.

If you've seen him, then

you know what I'm

saying.

Doubtful conditionals referring to past time take the past subjunctive in the protasis.

agar u-râ didé-bâshid, اگر اورا دیده باشید پس pas mídânid man che

pas mídânid man che

míguyam.

-agar gonáh-karde اگر گناه کرده باشد، باید

bâshad, bâyad e'terâfkonad.

If he has done something wrong, he should admit

agar chonin kâr-i-râ اگر چنین کاری را کرده باشد، خیلی زحمت

kardé-bâshad, khayli zahmat-keshide-ast.

If he has done such a thing, he has gone to a lot of trouble.

61.2 The impossible conditional, also called contrafactual and irrealis—i.e. the conditional that either cannot be fulfilled in the future or cannot have been fulfilled in the past—uses the past continuous tense in both protasis and apodosis as the irrealis mood. Inasmuch as Persian does not normally distinguish between past irrealis ('if I had been') and future irrealis ('if I were to be'), the correct tense for translation into English must be gained from context.

agar míâmadid, shomâ- اگر میآمدید، شمارا râ mídidam.

If you had come, I would have seen

If you were to come I would see you.

would have been اگر م**یگفتند**، مجبور agar **mígoftand**, majbúr- obliged to go.

mishodim béravim. If they were to say so,

If they had said so, we would have been

we would be obliged to go.

LESSON TWENTY-ONE

agar be harfhâ-ye man اگر به حرفهای من گوش **gúsh-mikardid**, intav میکردید، اینطور

gúsh-mikardid, intawr némishod.

If you had listened to me. it wouldn't have turned out like this.

budan do not take the بودن dashtan (and دوست داشتن dâshtan (and داشتن continuous mí- prefix, even in the irrealis.

agar jâ-ye shomâ budam, If I were you, I wouldn't ما أن شما بودم، آن añ kâr-râ némikardam. do that.

agar man chonin chiz-i- If I had such a thing, I اگر من چنین چیزی را râ **dâshtam**, némifo-**داشتم**، نمیفروختم. rukhtam.

wouldn't sell it.

In less formal and colloquial Persian the past irrealis is expressed in either or both parts of the conditional by the remote past.

agar u-râ dide-budam, اگر اورا دیده بودم، به او be u gofte-budam.

agar injâ mânde-bud, اگر اینجا مأنده بود، námorde-bud.

agar do ruz-e digar dar اگر دو روز دیگر در نشهر shahr **mânde-budam**. مانده بودم ديوانه divâne mishodam. مے شدم.

If I had seen him, I would have told him.

If he had staved here, he wouldn't have died.

If I had stayed in town two more days, I would have gone crazy.

61.3 In conditionals of all types agar is often omitted, particularly in less formal Persian. When it is omitted in possible conditionals, the subjunctive is used in the protasis. In contrafactual conditionals both verbs are in the irrealis (past continuous).

békhâhid movaffaq sha- If you want to succeed. بايد زحمت يكشيد. vid, bâyad zahmatbekeshid.

you must work hard.

kâr-am tamâm bésha- كارم تمام بشود، همراهتان vad, hamrâh-etân míâyam.

If my work is finished, I'll come along with you.

مرحس. ,tormoz-am némigereft ترمزم نمیگرفت چکار ?chekâr-mikardim

If my brakes hadn't held, what would we have done?

némigereft, fawq-esh نميگرفت، فوقش mímordim-o râhat-میمردیم و راحت mishodim.

If they hadn't held, at most we would've died and been at peace.

§ 62 Other irrealis constructions. The irrealis mood (past continuous) is not limited to conditionals but is used for unfulfilled obligation ('should have,' cf. 'must have' in $\S55.2a$) with بايد $b\hat{a}yad$ and its synonyms, بايست $b\hat{a}y\acute{e}st$, ميبايست míbâyest, ميبايستي bâyésti, and ميبايستي míbâyesti.

.bấyad míraftam باید میرفتم

I should have gone.

. They should have come. بایست میآمدند.

bâyésti mídânestid ke mâ You should have know بایستی میدانستید که ما némiâim. we weren't coming.
میبایستی کاری میکردیم.
míbâyesti kár-i mikardim. We should have done something.

All constructions that normally require the subjunctive are in the irrealis mood when they are contrafactual.

behtar bud ke diruz zud- It would have been better مى فتيم. It would have been better had we gone earlier

yesterday.

behtar bud nemiâmadid. It would have been better عبر بود نمي آمديد.

had you not come.

The irrealis mood occurs after کشکی kâsh or کشک kâshki ('would that, I wish') for unfulfilled wishes in the past (cf. §59.4 for unfulfillable wishes for the future).

.kâshki míâmad کاشکی می آمد

I wish he had come.

kâsh man be donyâ كاش من بدنيا نمى آمدم! némiâmadam!

Would that I had never been born!

.kâshki injâ budid کاشکی اینجا بودید

Wish you were here.

§ 63 Expressions of temporal duration. In present expressions of temporal duration, where English uses the present perfect, the length of time is given in Persian with -ast followed by ke (optional) and (1) the present tense of 'to be':

LESSON TWENTY-ONE

اینجا se sâl-ast (ke) injâ
I've been here for three
years.

(که) اینجا
hastam.
years.

(که) اینجا
khayli vaqt-ast (ke)
It's been like this for a

I've been here for three

intawr-ast.

long time.

(2) the past narrative of states, where English uses the present perfect. This category includes most negatives, as in 'haven't/hasn't done something for X amount of time':

panj sâl-ast ke shawhar- پنج سال است که esh morde-ast.

Her husband has been dead for five years.

do sâ'at-ast ke hamânjâ دو ساعت است که neshaste-id.

You've been sitting there for two hours.

shesh sâl-ast ke u-râ ná- I haven't seen him for شش سال است گه اورا . ندیدهام dide-am

three years.

do hafte-ast ke az khâne دو هفته است که از خانه birun **nárafte-ast**. سرون نرفته است.

She hasn't gone out of the house for two weeks.

(3) the present continuous of actions, where English uses the progressive present perfect:

do sâ'at-ast ke kâr- دو ساعت است که کار

I've been working for two hours.

میکنم. سن که کار mikonam. هیکنم. «se ruz-ast ke bârân سه روز است که باران míbârad.

It's been raining for three days.

63.1 In past expressions of temporal duration, the length of time is given with bud followed by (1) the simple past of budan:

se sâl bud ke ânjâ budam I had been there for three سه سال بود كه آنجا بودم

years when...

(2) the remote past of states:

shesh sâl bud ke u-râ شش سال بود كه اوْرُا nádide-budam.

I hadn't seen him for six years.

panj sâl bud ke shawhar- Her husband had been پنج سال بود که شوهرش esh morde-bud. dead for six years.

(3) the past continuous of on-going actions:

se ruz bud ke bârân سه روز بود که ماران míbârid. مىيارىد.

It had been raining for three days.

63.2 'Since' followed by the present perfect in English is rendered in Persian by از وقتی که az váqtike (or equivalent) followed by the present.

az vaqt-i ke man injâ از وقتیکه من اینجا هستم hastam, u-râ nádideam.

I haven't seen him since I've been here

az vaqt-i ke bâ amsâl-e از وقتى كه ما امثال آنها ânhâ sar o kâr dârad, سرو کار دارد اورا u-râ nâdide-im.

Ever since he's been dealing with the likes of them, we haven't seen him.

az ruz-i ke u-râ míshenâ- He's been like this ever از روزی که اورا میشناسم sam hamintawr-ast. since the day I came t

since the day I came to know him.

Vocabulary 21

باران آمدن bârân rain; باران باریدن bârân-bâridan or باران آمدن âmadan to rain

(mi)bâyest(i) = bâyad

bar (prep.) over, upon, at, against (highly idiomatic)

barf-âmadan to برف آمدن barf snow; برف باریدن barf-bâridan or برف

يرسيدن porsidan to ask (az someone)

تمام تمام شدن tamâm-e all of, the whole; تمام شدن tamâm-shodan to be finished, to be over; تمام كردن tamâm-kardan to finish (trs.)

ju- to seek1 جو jostan/ حستن

jostoju-kardan to search for, seek (normally takes a "sandwiched" complement, as jostoju-ye chiz-i kardan 'to search for something')

cherâq light, lamp; torch, flashlight چراغ

ahvâl condition, state احوال hâl pl حال

خاموش کردن ; khâmush silent; off, out (light, machinery) خاموش

¹A common verb in classical Persian, simple jostan has become quite rare in the modern language, its place having been taken by جستجو کردن jostoju-kardan. It is still used in a number of compounds.

LESSON TWENTY-ONE

mush-kardan to turn out, to turn off, to silence

روشن rawshan lit, light, bright; روشن کردن rawshan-kardan to turn on, light

rawqan oil روغن

avaz-kardan to change (transitive)

mâshin automobile, car ماشين

havâ weather, air هوا

yâftan/ياب yâb- to find¹

Exercise 21

(a) Complete the following with the proper mood and tense and translate:

۱۱ کر فردا باران _ (باریدن)، ما _ (توانستن) _ (رفتن) سیرون.
۲ کر دیروز باران _ (باریدن)، ما _ (توانستن) _ (رفتن) سیرون.
۲ کر شا دیروز _ (رفتن)، من ہم ہمراہتان _ (آمدن).
۲ کر شا فردا _ (رفتن)، من ہم ہمراہتان _ (آمدن).
۵ کر خودت بلد _ (بودن)، چرا از من پرسدی؟
۲ کر از من _ (پرسیدن)، به او میکویم چه کار _ (کردن).
۷ اگر شا چراغهارا _ (روشن کردن)، بهتر می بینیم.
۸ اگر فردا ہوا خوب _ (بودن)، من اینهارا _ (شستن).
۹ اگر ما خانہ بزرگتری _ (داشتن)، بهتر _ (بودن).
۱۱ کر تمو خاموش _ (شدن)، من ترا _ (گشتن)!

ا يافتن is seldom used in modern Persian, and never in colloquial Persian (where پيدا کردن is used), in its simple state; it was very common in classical Persian and is still used in compounds like کار يافتن kâr-yâftan 'to find work, to get employed.'

(b) Complete the following using irrealis constructions and translate:

(c) Give appropriate answers to the following:

LESSON TWENTY-ONE

- 1. How long has it been raining? It's been raining for three days.
- 2. We turned on the lights two hours ago, so they've been on for two hours.
- 3. If he had started earlier, he would have finished his work.
- 4. If the weather is good tomorrow, we can go to town and buy some things.
- 5. How long ago did you throw that food away?
- 6. I wish you hadn't said those things to me.
- 7. No matter how many times (= however much) you ask me, I won't tell you the answer.
- 8. It must have rained last night.
- 9. You should have put all the lights out when you finished your work.
- 10. If I had known the answer, I wouldn't have asked you.

Additional Vocabulary: Mishaps beham-khordan to collide zamin-khordan to fall down zir-gereftan to run over bimârestân hospital bihush unconscious sor-khordan to slip shekastan/shekan- to pellekân stair, staircase break (transitive and tasâdof-kardan to have لصاوو intransitive) an accident qash-kardan to faint by khordan be to run into, kabud-shodan to get collide with khis wet gelgir fender dawidan/davidan to run פעעניי leh-shodan to get mashed rânandegi-kardan to راننکي drive (a vehicle) rânande driver راث liz-khordan to slide rol steering wheel

Write a short composition using as much of the vocabulary given above as you can.

ہریں بیسٹ و وور

Lesson Twenty-Two

- § 64 Uses of the subjunctive IV: Adverbial clauses. The subjunctive is used in adverbial clauses introduced by certain conjunctions.
- 64.1 Temporal conjunctions. Temporal clauses in Persian tend to precede the main clause, whereas in English the opposite is true.
 - (a) Conjunctions meaning 'before' (قبل از اینکه qabl az in-ke, پیش از اینکه qabl az in-ke) are invariably followed by the present subjunctive regardless of the tense of the main clause; for English translation, the tense depends upon context.

qabl az in-ke man bíâ- They had already gone قبل از اینکه من بیایم yam, ânhâ rafte- before I came.

- pish az in-ke béravid, bâ I want to see you before پیش ازینکه بروید با شما shomâ kâr dâram. you go.
 - (b) tâ followed by the negative present subjunctive means 'until' (literally, "so long as...not") with reference to future time. This type of clause invariably precedes the main clause of the sentence.

تا شما **نروید** من هم tâ shomâ náravid man- I won't go until you do.
ham némiravam.

تا كارتانرا نكنيد tâ kâr-etân-râ nákonid, You can't go until you . بمى némitavânid béravid. do your work.

- (c) tâ meaning 'by the time that' is followed by the present subjunctive. The verb of the result clause is in the present perfect.
 - ا تا به فرودگاه برسیم tâ be forudgâh bêresim, By the time we get to the airport, the plane will have gone.

تا بیایند دیر شده است. tâ bíâyand, dir shode-ast. By the time they come, it will be too late.

LESSON TWENTY-TWO

64.2 The conjunctions of purpose (ti tâ, as ti tâ ke, as ti tâ in-ke, and as ke 'in order that') introduce a purpose clause. These conjunctions are invariably followed by the present subjunctive regardless of the tense of the main clause. Whereas temporal clauses precede the main clause, purpose clauses always follow the main clause.

64.3 All conjunctions of concession, provision, and exception are followed by the subjunctive, present or past depending upon the temporal relationship to the main clause.

konad

. agar-ham bémiram, bâz- Even though I may die, اگرهم بميرم بازهم ميروم ham míravam. I'm still going. agar-ham shomâ dide- اگرهم شما دیده باشید báshid, bâz-ham Even though you may have seen it, I still bâvar-némikonam. don't believe it. be shart-i ke shomâ بشرطی که شما بیائید من Provided you come, I'll bíâid, man-ham come too. míâyam. bi ân-ke bâ cheshm-e بى آنكه با چشم خودم khod-am bébinam, I won't believe it without seeing it with my bâvar-némikonam. own eyes.

- § 65 Participial forms. There are three distinct types of active participle in Persian, (1) the participial of agency, (2) the verbal adjectival participle, and (3) the participle of manner.
- 65.1 The **agent participle**, which may be used both adjectivally and substantively as a noun, has two formations, one for simple verbs and another for compounds.
 - (a) Simple verbs form the agent participle by adding -(y)ande to the present stem.

SIMPLE INFINITIVE PRESENT STEM

AGENT PARTICIPLE

"nevisande 'writer نویسن nevis-> نوشتن neveshtan نوشتن

'forushande 'salesperson' فروش forukhtan فروش forukhtan فروختن

khânande 'reader, singer' خواندن khândan خواندن

âmadan آمدن

guyande 'speaker, announcer' گوینده goftan گوینده آ â-> آينده âyande 'coming, future'

juyande yâbande-ast.

He who seeks finds.

(b) Compound verbs form the agent participle from the nonverbal element and the simple present stem of the verb. The resulting compound is a single word, with stress on the final syllable.

COMPOUND INFINITIVE

پاک کردن pâk-kardan to erase >

dânesh-jostan to seek دانش جستن knowledge >

sahar-khâstan to get up سحر خاستن at dawn >

boland-goftan to speak بلند گفتن loudly >

fârsi-goftan to speak فارسي گفتن

ruznâme-neveshtan to روزنامه نوشتن write newspapers >

ab-garm-kardan to آب گرم کردن heat water >

khabar-negâshtan to خبر نگاشتن report news >

ketâb-forukhtan to sell کتاب فروختن

AGENT PARTICIPLE

pâkkón eraser یاککن

dâneshjú student دانشجو

saharkhíz early riser سحرخيز

ىلندگو bolandgú loudspeaker

fârsigú Persian-speaking فارسے گو

ruznâmenevís روزنامه نویس journalist

آ بگرمکن *âbgarmkón* waterheater

khabarnegâr reporter خبر نگار

ketâbforúsh bookseller كتاب فروش

Contrary to this principle of formation, a few modern terms, especially of a commercial nature and loan-translations, form compound agent participles on the pattern of the simple verb. They are very limited in occurrence.

tahvilgirande تحویل گیرنده tahvil-gereftan to accept تحویل گرفتن consignment >

consignee

LESSON TWENTY-TWO

emzâkonande signatory امضاکر دن emzâ-kardan to sign > امضاک دن

65.2 The verbal adjective is formed by suffixing -(y)â to the present stem. This form, which means possessed of a quality inherent in the verb, occurs only with and is limited to a very small number of simple verbs, practically limited to the following:

•		
INFINITIVE	PRESENT STEM	VERBAL ADJECTIVE
tavânestan توانستن	<-ravân توان	<i>tavânâ</i> capable توانا
khândan خواندن	 <i>khân-</i> >	khânâ legible خوانا
dâshtan داشتن	clâr- > دار	دارای dârâ possessing (as in دارا dârâ-ye sharâyet qualified) شرایط
dânestan دانستن	<-dân->	دان dânâ knowing, wise
didan دیدن	/- <i>bin ب</i> ين	يينا binâ sighted, capable of seeing
residan رسیدن	res- > رس	resâ far-reaching (voice) رسا
shenidan شنیدن	<-shenaw شنو	shenavâ capable of hearing شنوا
goftan گفتن	<-gu گو	guyâ capable of speech گویا
gereftan گرفتن	<-gir گیر	گيرا gir \hat{a} attractive

65.3 The participle of manner is formed by adding $-(y)\hat{a}n$ to the present stem. This participle is used adverbially to describe a state or manner in which something is done. Verbs that form verbal adjectives in -(y)â do not form participles of manner in their simple states. All compound verbs potentially take this form, although in practice there are not that many in use.

.فت. khandân raft. oftân o khizân az sha- افتان و خيزان از شرابخانه She left laughing.

râbkhâne âmadand.

They came from the tavern, stumbling and reeling.

yârabbguyân bâ marg **يارب گويان** با مرگ ruberu shodand.

Saying "O Lord," they faced death.

-na'rezanân hamle نعرهزنان حمله كردند.

Shouting, they attacked.

65.4 Other productive agent constructions are as follows.

آرایے ش' 'kârgar 'worker, کارگے kârgar 'worker, کار دا) The suffix کار ایے اس

ârâyesh 'adornment' إرايشكر (أيشكر arâyeshgar 'hair dresser,' پژوهش pazhuhesh 'research' إهنكر (pazhuheshgar 'researcher,' آهنگر âhan 'iron' إهنكر âhangar 'ironmonger, blacksmith,' آهنگر tamâshâ 'spectacle' تحاشا shâgar 'spectator,' and مسكر mes 'copper' مسكر mesgar 'coppersmith.'

- (2) The Turkish agent suffix چی -chi is quite productive: پست post 'post, mail' کرشکه چی (adroshke 'carriage' پستچی doroshkechi 'carriage driver,' and شکار shekâr 'hunt' کشکارچی shekârchi 'hunter.'
- (3) Arabic agents usually assume the shape $C_1aC_2C_2\hat{a}C_3$ (i.e. -a- after the first consonant and a doubled second consonant followed by -â-), as in خرّاف harrâf loquacious (< خرف harf), مرف hammâl 'porter', خرّاط khayyât 'tailor,' مغرّاط aassâb 'butcher,' and جّار najjâr 'carpenter.'

Vocabulary 22

amâde ready آماده

âvâz voice, singing voice; آواز کردن âvâz voice, singing voice آواز

ágar...ham although اگر...هم

bâz-ham still, nonetheless بازهم

(game, bet) بردن bordanl بردن

از بس که ; bas enough بس bas enough بس

ba'd az ân-ke after (conj.)

שלו ע, בני be kâr bordan to use, employ

pas az in-ke after (conj.)

piâde on foot, by foot, pedestrian; پیاده رفتن piâde raftan to go on foot; پیاده شدن piâde-shodan to get out, off (of vehicles)

pish az in-ke before (+ subj.)

tâ until, by the time, in order that (see also Appendix A)

tamâshâ spectacle; تماشا کردن tamâshâ-kardan to watch

حرکت کردن , harakat pl حرکت harakât motion, movement حرکت کردن harakat-kardan to take off, start moving

בرد dard pain; درد کردن dard-kardan to hurt, ache

دير dir late; دير کردن dir-shodan to get late (of time); دير کردن dir-kardan to be late (of people), to come late

راه افتادن, (be)râh-oftâdan to get under way, "hit the road," be on one's way

^{&#}x27;A clause introduced by az bas ke is the main clause in English, and the main clause in Persian is the subordinate clause of English, e.g. از بسکه کار کردهایم خسته شدهایم az bas-ke kâr-karde-im, khaste-shode-im 'we've worked so much that we've gotten tired.'

LESSON TWENTY-TWO

sâkhtan/ ساز sâz- to make, build ساختن shâm dinner شام sobhâne breakfast ضبحانه ferestâdan/ فرستادن forudgâh airport

gabl az in-ke before (+ subj.) قبل از اینکه

kelid key, switch

ناهار nâhâr lunch, midday meal

inegâh-dâshtan نگاه داشتن negah-dâshtan to stop (trs.), hold, keep (this compound of dâshtan takes mi- and forms a regular imperative, نگهدار (ید) negah-dâr(id), and subjunctive, نگهدار negah-dâram)

havâpaymâ airplane هواييما

Exercise 22

(a) Give the agent participles for the following verbs:

۱ درس خواندن	ع لباس شستن	۱۱ کتاب فروختن
۲ برون	۷کشتن	۱۲ عیکِ ساختن
۳ بار بردن	۸ نمودن	۱۳ آدم کشن
۴ غم خوردن	۹ یاد کر فتن	۱۴ وندان ساختن
۵ شتن	۱۰ بطری باز کر دن	۱۵ کم خوابین

(b) Change the verbs in boldface to participles of manner (make any necessary adjustments and/or omissions):

۱ از اطاق به اطاق میرفت و چراغ روشن میکرد.

۲ بالاخره رسيديم ولي پرسيديم و پرسيديم.

۳ در حالی که روی تختخواب م**یفتاد** شروع به گریه کرد.

۴ در حالی که برمیخاستند شروع کردند به صحبت کردن.

۵ دراز می کشیدم که خوابم برد.

ع _{بچه}ها **گریه میکردند** و پیش مادرشان آمدند. ۷ همانطور در حالی که **حرف میزد** برخاست و رفت.

(c) Read and translate into English:

۱ فردا صبح زود آمادهٔ رفتن تهران باشید!

۲ موز ناهرمان را نخورده بودیم که صدای ماشین محمدا شنیدیم که میآمد

۳ موز ناهرمان را نخورده بودیم که صدای ماشین محمدا شنیدیم که میآمد

۴ مهتر است با موانیا برویم ، یا میثود با ماشین هم رفت ؟

۵ قبل از اینکه باران بیاید ماشین را نزدیک ده کوچکی گهداشته بودیم.

۶ قبل از اینکه باران بیاید ماشین را نزدیک ده کوچکی گهداشته بودیم.

۷ زود باش! نمینواهم دیرکنم.

۸ از بسکه دیر کر ده الیب، تا با فرودگاه برسیم موانیا رفته است.

۹ مکی از مشهورترین آوازخوانهای ایران شئریان است.

۱ معی کر دم چراغ را روش کنم ولی نتوانشم کلیدش را پیدا کنم.

(d) Translate into Persian:

- 1. Stop the car right here. I want to get out.
- 2. Before you eat dinner, don't forget to wash your hands.
- 3. I guessed they wouldn't throw those things away.
- 4. Before eating lunch I like to stretch out and sleep for a few minutes.
- 5. The announcer is saying something interesting. Let's listen.
- 6. I usually ask before taking anything from (از روى) his desk.
- 7. By the time they get here everything will be finished.
- 8. We can't have dinner until your brother and sister arrive.
- 9. If you go on foot, you won't arrive until 6 o'clock.
- 10. I doubt you can get to the airport before the plane takes off.

LESSON TWENTY-TWO

Additional Vocabulary: Travel

מבה א daraje-ye yek first class asbâb belongings, things e'lân-kardan to andaraje-ye do second ده وو class istgâh station dosare round-trip ومره רנופ אל ניט rezerv-kardan to reserve الرر bârbar porter ازری bâzres conductor restorân restaurant رسوران sari'ossayr express سريع السر bâtel invalid saku platform belit ticket طرط pardâkht-kardan to pay âdi ordinary عادي gatâr train قطار pul-e naqd cash بول تقد tâksi taxi کاکسی kârt-e e'tebâr credit card مافرت mosâferat travel, trip; مافرت کر دن mosâferattran train گران tuâlet toilet توالرت kardan to travel *yeksare* one-way chamedân suitcase

Write a short composition about a trip you have taken.

ہریں بیسٹ و سوم

Lesson Twenty-Three

§ 66 Abstraction of substantives. All substantives (adjectives and nouns) are abstracted by suffixing -i. For substantives ending in -e, the abstraction is -gi.

SUBSTANTIVE	ABSTRACTION
پیر pir old $>$	پیری pirí old age
siâh black >	siâhí blackness سیاهی
بچه $bachche$ child $>$	<i>bachchegí</i> childhood بچگی
آماده آششش âmâde ready >	<i>âmâdegí</i> readiness آمادگی
ديوانه divâne mad >	divâneg í madness دیوانگی
پزشک <i>pezeshk</i> physician >	pezeshkí (the study or پزشکی practice of) medicine
dandânpezeshk dentist >	dandânpezeshkí dentistry دندانپزشكى
nemâyande representa- tive >	nemâyandeg í representa- tion

The abstracted adjective is used in the expression be in (or $\hat{a}n$) ... \hat{i} , equivalent to the English 'so' or 'such a.'

Let's not go so early باین زودی نرویم.

Let's not go so early باین زودی نرویم.

I had never seen a house so big (such a big house).

The abstracted adjective is also used in the idiom be ...í-e ..., equivalent to the English 'as ... as'

in be khubi-e ân-ast. This is as good as that. This is as good as that. This job is not so hard as it in târ be sakhti-e ân kâr that one.

LESSON TWENTY-THREE

khâne-i be bozorgi-e ân- I had never seen a house خانهای به برزگیِ آنرا râ nádide-budam. as big as that one.

66.1 The abstractions of substantives relating to offices and ranks are often used by extension not only for the office or rank itself but also for the place where the office is conducted.

أتشنشانى كتابفروشي منطعه آنتو أنتشنشانى منطعه آنتشنشان أنتسنشان أنتسنسان أنتسنشان أنتسنشان أنتسنشان أنتسنشان أنتسنسان أنتسان أنتسنسان أنتسنسان أنتسان أنتسنسان أنتسنسان أنتسنسان أنتسنسان أنتسنسان أنتسنسان أنتسن

66.2 The abstractions are also used to define the purpose for which things are employed.

sup-khordan to eat soup > supkhor soup eater > supkhor soup khori soupspoon

rakht-shostan rakhtshu
to wash clothes > washer >

zarf-shostan to wash dishes > zarfshu dishwashing liquid

supkhor soup eater > supkhor soup khori soupspoon khori soupspoon
rakhtshu
washtub

tasht-e rakhtshui
washtub

mâye'-e zarfshui
dishwashing liquid

§ 67 Double-substantive compounds. Compounds composed of two substantives (noun-noun or adjective-noun) render substantives. Stress, as in all substantives, is on the final syllable. Generally the first element of a double-substantive compound indicates a quality or modification of the second element, as in شكسته shekaste 'broken' and كل del 'heart', which form شكسته shekaste-dél 'broken-hearted,' and as in المستهدل mehmân 'guest' and دوست dust 'friend,' which form سماندوست mehmândúst 'hospitable.' It is often helpful when first encountering a double-substantive compound to put the two elements together and add '-ed.'

ماهرو mâhru "moon-faced" > beautiful سنگدل sangdel "stone-hearted" > hardhearted مرازدست darâzdast "long-armed" > aggressive

parishânkhâter "disturbed-minded" > distressed, upset پریشانخاطر kutâhqad "short-statured" > short in stature

Not all compounds are quite so transparent in meaning, and some have extended metaphorical applications, such as

خر گوش khargush "donkey-eared" > rabbit تردامن tardâman "wet-skirted" > disgraced, scandalous

67.1 Particularly productive first elements for this type of compound are خوش khosh- ('well, good'), غه bad- ('bad, ill') and نه bi- ('without').

well-dressed خوشلباس **khoshleb**âs ill-dressed بدلباس

خو شبخت lucky, fortunate

يد بخت badbakht unlucky, unfortunate

بیکار **bi**kâr unemployed, idle

bihawsele impatient بي حوصله

A fairly productive second element is کار -kâr.

farâmush**kâr** forgetful فراموشكار

messy, sloppy کثافتکار

67.2 All double-substantive compounds are abstracted by suffixing -(g)f.

shekastedelí brokenheartedness شکسته دلی

mehmândustí hospitality مهماندوستي

aggressiveness درازدستی

badbakhtí misfortune بدبختی bihawselegí impatience

§ 68 Adjectives/adverbs in -âne. The suffix -(g)âne is used to make adverbs from words that are primarily adjectival and also to make adjectives of substantives whose primary connotations have become purely nominal. Although as a general rule most adjectives can be used as adverbs (عبر المعنوة المعنو

LESSON TWENTY-THREE

mo'addabane politely مؤديانه mo'addabane khoshbakht lucky > خو شبختانه khoshbakhtâne luckily

ىدىختانە badbakht unlucky > مدىختان badbakhtâne unfortunately

Similarly, although many nouns can be used indiscriminately as adjectives, by شاعر bachche 'child,' and بحيه bachche 'child,' and برادر shâ'er 'poet,' are used exclusively as nouns. To make them adjectival the -(g)âne suffix is added.

پ ادر barâdar brother > برادر انه barâdarâne brotherly بچه bachche child > بچگانه bachcheg**âne** childish shâ'erâne poetic(al), romantic شاعرانه shâ'er poet > شاعر

These are regularly abstracted by adding the -(g)i suffix, e.g. برادرانگی barâdarânegi 'brotherliness' and بحگانگی bachchegânegi 'childishness.'

§ 69 Magar. The interrogative particle مگر mágar is used (1) with a negative verb when an affirmative answer is expected. In this sense English uses an affirmative verb followed by a negative tag question. The affirmative answer to a negative question is introduced by $-ch\acute{e}r\^{a}$ (like the French si), not by $b\acute{a}le$.

?magar náraftid? cherâ, You went, didn't you مگر نرفتید؟ چرا، رفتم.

Yes, I did.

budam vali nádidam.

was, but I didn't see it.

?magar intawr nist مگر اینطور نست؟

That how it is, isn't it?

(2) Mågar is also used with an affirmative verb when a negative answer is expected. In this sense English uses a negative verb followed by an affirmative tag question.

che midânand? magar چه میدانند؟ مگر آنجا anjâ budand?

What do they know? They weren't there, were they?

? ميآيند مگر míâyand magar?

They aren't coming, are they?

(3) The particle also occurs as $\lambda \sim m \grave{a} gar n\acute{a}$ after an affirmative statement as a tag question to induce agreement (like the French n'est-ce pas?).

?fahmidid, magar na فهمیدید، مگر نه

You understand, don't

you?

أنها هم ميآيند، مگر نه؟ ânhâ-ham miâyand, magar na?

They are coming too, aren't they?

Vocabulary 23

أنچه آذه anche that which, what (a relative pronoun: when it takes -râ, the relative ke is added, e.g. آنچه گذشت ânche gozasht 'that which passed,' but آنچه را که گفتید نشنیدم ânche-râ ke goftid náshenidam 'I didn't hear what you said.'

edâme continuation; ادامه دادن به edâme-dâdan be to continue استفاده کردن از estefâde benefit, benefiting; استفاده کردن از make use of

eshkâl pl اشكال داشتن -ât difficulty, problem; اشكالت eshkâl اشكال dâshtan to have a problem, for something to be wrong; اشكالي eshkâl-i nádârad it's all right, "no problem"

של bâlâ up (adv.), upstairs

bâlâ-ye over, above (prep.)

نخشيدن bakhshidan to excuse, forgive (be) someone (a mistake, direct object)

پائين pâin down (adv.), downstairs

پیشنهاد کردن pishnehâd suggestion; پیشنهاد کردن pishnehâd-kardan to suggest تمیز tamiz clean

خداحافظ khodâhâfez goodbye; خداحافظ خداحافظ khodâhâfezi-kardan bâ to say goodbye to

dobâre again, a second time دوباره

divâne mad, crazy ديوانه

zir-e under, beneath (prep.)

sardard headache سردرد

w salâm hello, greetings; سلام کردن به salâm-kardan be to say hello to, to greet

¹Most aches and pains are compounded similarly with -dard, as ביט בענג gushdard 'ear-ache,' ביט בענג kamardard 'backache,' and בענג deldard 'stomachache' (see Supplementary Vocabulary for parts of the body). When dard precedes with the ezâfe, a metaphorical pain is implied, e.g. בעב של dard-e sar 'pain in the neck' and בעב בע dard-e del 'heart-ache.'

LESSON TWENTY-THREE

شکن shekastan شکن shekan- to break (transitive and intransitive)
kasâfat dirt, dirtiness
کثیف kasif dirty
agarna or اگرنه garna or گرنه mágar see §69

Exercise 23

(a) Read the following words and tell what they mean:

۲۱ پیاده روی	۱۱ فراموش <i>کاری</i>	آ آ قائی
۲۲ خوانانی	۱۲ سختی	۲ بزرگی
۲۳ برادرانکی	۱۳ دوری	۳ کو تاہی
۲۴ معلمی	۱۴ نزد کمي	۴ کوتاه قدی
۲۵ مردشاسی	۱۵ مد بختی	۵ بادی
۶۶ ہماً یک	۱۶ زودگذری	ع زودی
۲۷ بچک کئی	۱۷ پولداري	۷ جوانی
۱۲۸ ایانی	۱۸ شیری	۸ خوشحالی
۲۹ دوستی	۱۹ کهسکی	۹ باربری
۳۰ روز نامه نوسی	۲۰ بخشن کی	۱۰ دانائی

(b) Return to exercise a in Lesson 22 and make abstractions of the words created (skip #10).

(c) Answer the following questions:

۳ مکر آنهارا دیدهاید؟	۱ مکر آن نامه فارا نفرسآدید؟
۴ مکر نمیدانید این چیت؟	۲ به خانهٔ ما نمی آیند کمر ۶

۸ با ماشین میرویم ، مگر نه ؟ ۹ مکر نادار خوردید ؟ ۱۰ مکر نمیدانید آن آ قا کسیت ؟ ۵ مکر آنقدر بول دارید؟ ع فارسی بلدید، مکر نه؟ ۷ مکر آماده نمیشید؟

(d) Read and translate into English:

اکی دو تا اسک ل داشتم و اگر نه زودتر میرسدیم.

ادر ایران هر وقت آدمی مؤدب وارد اطاق میثود باید به بهمه سلام کند

انجه آن دیوانه میکوید درد سر میآورد.

در را سکتید ولی بازیم غم نمی خورم.

در را سکتید ولی بازیم غم نمی خورم.

برای این کار از چه میخوابید اسفاده کنید؟

باخانم، بخید، وقت است که ما با به یکر خداصافطی کنیم.

باخانم، بخید، وقت است که ما با به یکر خداصافطی کنیم.

باشی که چنین حرفهانی را باور کند باید خیلی زود باور باشد.

باشی میخواستم پزشی بخوانم ولی پدرم پیشهاد کر د که دندانسزشی بخوانم.

باشی بآن سایس بیچوقت ندیده بودم. خوشجانه چراغ بهراه داشتیم.

- (e) Translate into Persian:
 - 1. Try to keep this room clean.
 - 2. This is more childishness than madness.
 - 3. Didn't they try to stop the car?
 - 4. Can one get to (reach) those distant cities by airplane?
- 5. It's unlikely such a thing would happen again.
- 6. We knew they would be late.
- 7. Is there any place in this vicinity (نزدیکیها) we can sleep tonight?
- 8. You don't want to forgive someone

LESSON TWENTY-THREE

who has done such a thing, do you? 10. You'd better (بهتر است که شما)

o Didn't you say hello to the ladies and gentlemen who came late?

continue with your work, otherwise you'll never finish.

Supplementary Vocabulary اعصناي من A'zâ-ye Badan Parts of the Body

âranj elbow *abru* eyebrow ارو *ostokhân* bone استوان angosht finger, toe bâzu upper arm bini nose معنى pâ foot تان pestân breast posht back(side)¹ الثت pelk eyelid pahlu side سلو pishâni forehead ستاني jegar liver²

châne chin حانه cheshm eye حثر الله halq throat

dast hand وست

del stomach, heart³

damâq brain; nose واع

dandân tooth ونران

dahân mouth

rokh cheek پر

rokhsâre cheek رخاره

S, rag vein

rish beard ربش

rie lung رم

zânu knee

زمان zabân tongue

¹ With reference to people, پیشبت posht normally refers to the backside; euphemistically skamar is used for the back. ² In Persian the liver is the seat of emo-

جگرگوشه tions; hence expressions such as jegargushe 'a corner of the liver' for a jegarsuz 'liver- جگرسوز burning' for 'heartbreaking.'

³ When دل del refers to a physical organ (or pain), it means 'stomach'; metaphorically it is the heart in all applications. قلب معده Oalb is the physical heart only, and me'de is the physical organ stomach.

sâed forearm kamar waist, back sâg leg gardan neck galu throat sebil mustache gush ear sar head gune cheek sine chest shâne shoulder تانه lab lip shast thumb moch wrist, ankle shekam stomach, belly mardomak pupil (of the eye) asab pl عصاب a'sâb nerve mozhe eyelash azale pl عفلات azalât musme'de stomach معده cle *awrât* private parts r mu hair nâkhon fingernail, toenail galb heart kapal buttocks

وربس بيس وجعارم

Lesson Twenty-Four

§ 70 'As...as possible.' The English 'as...as possible' is rendered in Persian by هر چه hárche and the comparative adjective.

bâyad harche zudtar باید هرچه زودتر برسیم. beresim.

bâ sedâ-ye harche با صدای هرچه بلندتری bolandtar-i goftam. مرچه بیشتر سعی کردند.

kardand.

We must arrive as soon as possible.

I spoke in as loud as voice as possible.

They tried as much as they could.

Adverbial constructions formed from $b\hat{a}$ ('with') or from abstracted compound e harche tamâmtar in order to هرچه تمامتر -e harche tamâmtar circumlocute a long or awkward harche...tar construction.

bâ ehterâm-e harche با احترام هرچه تمامتر tamâmtar ta'zim-kard.

با شکسته نفسی هرچه bâ shekastenafsi-e har-che tamâmtar dombâl-e harfhâ-yesh-râ gereft.

He bowed as respectfully as possible.

He began to speak again as self-deprecatingly as possible.

§ 71 'The more...the more.' The Persian equivalent of the idiom 'the more ...the more' is هرچه مرتب harche ...tar, ...tar.

. The more, the better. The more, the better.

Clauses introduced by harche with reference to future time and situations that may not take place take a subjunctive verb.

harche bolandtar beguid, The louder you speak, the هرچه بلندتر بگوئید بهتر می شنو ند. behtar mishenavand. better they'll hear.

harche zudtar râh biof- هرچه زودتر راه بیفتیم . tim, zudtar miresim.

The earlier we hit the road, the earlier we'll arrive.

هرچه اورا بیشتر ببینید harche u-râ bishtar

کمتر دوستش خواهید
bebinid, kamtar dustesh khâhid dâsht. داشت

The more you see of him. the less you'll like him.

With reference to past or present continuous tenses (i.e. situations that either have taken or are taking place), the indicative mood is used.

harche u-râ bishtar هرچه اورا بیشتر می بینم míbinam, bishtar dust- more I like him. esh dâram. .

The more I see him, the

§ 72 Factitive verbs. The factitive verbal formation ('to make or cause to do or be') is achieved by adding the regular infinitival ending -an(i)dan to the present stem of the simple verb. Most of these verbs occur with both factitive endings -ânidan and -ândan. The present stem of all such factitives is regularly formed as -ân-.

INFINITIVE	PRESENT STEM	FACTITIVE INFINITIVE
رسیدن <i>residan</i> to arrive >	res- > رس	رسان(ب)دن resân(i)dan to make something arrive, deliver
khâbidan to خوابیدن sleep >	<-khâb- خواب	khâbân(i)dan to put خوا با نـ(يـــ)ــدن to sleep, to lay (something) down
بر گشتن bar-gashtan to return >	بر گرد bar- gard->	بر گردا نـ(ـــــ)ــدن bar-gardân(i)dan to return (something), bring/take back
gozashtan to گذشتن pass (int.) >	eozar-> گذر	<i>gozarân(i)dan</i> to گذران(ییـ)ـدن make pass, spend (time)

?in nâme-râ ki miresânad? Who'll deliver this letter این نامه را کی می رساند؟

bâyad bachchehâ-râ be باید بچههارا به مدرسه madrase beresânim.

We have to take the children to school.

. bachchehâ-râ khâbân بچەھارا خوابانديد did?

Did you put the children to bed?

LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

u-râ ru-ye zamin khâbân- They laid him down on .dand خواباندند the ground. .ba'd, bar-migardânam بعد ير ميگردانمت. I'll bring you back afterwards. khâhesh-mikonam, in خواهش میکنم این -ketabhâ-râ be ketâb Please return these books to the library. رگردانید. khâne bargardânid. ruz-i-râ dur az mohit-e روزی را دور از محیط They were spending a شلوغ شهر در بیابان می گذراندند. sholuq-e shahr dar biâday in the country, far bân migozarândand. from the crowded milieu

The only exception in factitive formation is نشستن neshastan 'to sit,' the factitive of which is نشاندن neshândan 'to sit (someone) down, to quell (rebellion), to quench (fire).'

be fâsele-ye sisad- They sat me فاصلهٔ سیصد چهارصد در از جمع زیر chahârsad qadam durtar a tree at a d tare at ad az jam' zir-e derakht-i marâ neshândand. paces away

They sat me down under a tree at a distance of three or four hundred paces away from the group.

of the city.

Factitive compounds and participles are regularly formed.

امه رساندن nâme-resândan to deliver نامه رساندن nâmeresân messenger نامه رساندن nâmeresân messenger أتشنشانى atesh-neshândan to extinguish fire >

§ 73 Verbal nouns. Verbal nouns are formed from many simple verbs (not compounds) by suffixing $-(y) \acute{e} sh$ to the present stem.

, INFINITIVE	PRESENT STEM	VERBAL NOUN
'dânestan 'to know دانستن	<i>dân-></i>	'dânesh 'knowledge دانش
igarmudan 'to order' فرمودن	farmâ- >	farmâyesh 'order, command' فرمايش
رفتن <i>raftan</i> 'to go'	<-raw رو	'ravesh 'method, manner روش
âmukhtan 'to learn' آموختن	<-amuz آموز	'âmuzesh 'instruction' آموزش
'gashtan 'to turn' گشتن	<- gard گرد	"gardesh 'stroll' گردش
	170	

پروردن parvardan 'to train' پرورش parvar-> پرورش parvaresh 'education' پروردن kushidan 'to strive' کوشش kush-> کوشش kushesh 'attempt' کوشش âsudan 'to rest' آسایش âsa²-> آسایش

Many of these verbal nouns then combine with simple verbs to form compounds, like دانشر جستن dânesh-jostan 'to seek knowledge' (whence دانشر جستن dâneshju 'student'), پرورش دادن parvaresh-dâdan 'to nourish,' گردش کردن gardesh-kardan 'to stroll,' and کوشش کردن kushesh-kardan 'to strive.'

§ 74 Infinitival adjectives. Infinitives form adjectives by suffixing -f. Depending on the meaning of the verb, this adjectival form means 'that which ought to be...,' 'can or should be...' or 'about to be..., on the verge of....' This form often renders the English adjective in '-able.' The negative is formed by prefixing na- or nâ-.

در آن موقع قيافهاش dar ân mawqe' qiâfe-ash At that moment his face در آن موقع قيافهاش didani bud. was a sight to see.

dar ânjâ chiz-i **didani** در آنجا چیزی **دیدنی** nist.

There is nothing worth seeing there.

qiâfe-i dust-dâshtani قيافهاي دوست داشتني dâsht.

He had a likeable face.

داست. ânche gofte-ast **bâvar-** آنچه گفته است **باور nakardani**-ast.

What he said is unbelievable.

mortakeb-e gonâh-e مرتكب گناه **نابخشودني** n**âbakhshudani**-ast.

He has committed an unforgivable sin.

Vocabulary 24

آتش زدن ; âtesh fire آتش گرفتن atesh-gereftan to catch fire آتش زدن atesh-zadan to set fire

âmuz- to learn آموز

esterâhat-kardan to rest استراحت كردن ;esterâhat rest استراحت

istadan/ایست ist- to stop, stand still

istâde-am 'I'm standing'; ایستاده ام) istâde budan to be standing ایستاده بودن ایستاده بودم istâde-budam 'I was standing')

ענגט boridan to cut

be qadr-i ... ke to such an extent that, so much ... that

LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

por full (por is normally followed by (1) a generic noun, with which it forms a compound, as پرآب por-âb 'full of water' or (2) az and a generic (absolute) singular or a modified plural, as مع علم المعالية الم

teshne thirsty تشنه

تقدیم کردن; taqdim presentation, offering تقدیم کردن taqdim-kardan to offer, to present

khâli empty, void خالي

khaste tired خسته

khalvat empty, not crowded خلوت

capa'vat invitation; دعوت کردن da'vat-kardan to invite

sholuq crowded شلوغ

فقط دو دفعه faqat only (either (1) precedes what it modifies, as in فقط من فقط این را faqat do daf'e raftam 'I only went twice,' من فقط این را man faqat in-râ miguyam 'I'll say only this,' or (2) comes at the end of the sentence)

قبول کردن; قبول عمو qabul-kardan to accept قبول کردن gorosne hungry

moddat period (of time) مدت

inazdik near; نزدیک بودن nazdik -budan or نزدیک بودن -shodan (impersonal + subj.) nearly, almost: نزدیک بود بیفتم nazdik bud bioftam 'I almost fell'

inazar view, sight; به نظر آمدن be nazar âmadan to seem, appear به نظر neshândan/نشان neshân- to make sit down; to quench, extinguish (fire); to quell (rebellion, commotion)

Exercise 24

(a) Reád and translate the following sentences:

۱ بقدری خسته ام که فقط میخواهم استراحت کنم. ۲ بازار بقدری شلوغ بود که جای خالی پیدا نمیشد.

۳ هرچه تشنهتر باشی، آب خوشمزهتر است.

۴ بهتر است با ماشين برويم. اگرنه، من نميآيم.

۵ نزدیک بود از گرسنگی و تشنگی بمیریم.

۶ وقتی که دیدم خانهٔ همسایه آتش گرفته است به آتشنشانی تلفن کردم. ۱۳۶

هنوز ده کیلومتری از شهر نرفته بودیم که ماشینی روبروی ما ایستاد و مردی $\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}}$ پیاده شد. ۸ شما به نظر خسته میآئید. چرا کمی استراحت نمی کنید؟

(b) Translate into Persian:

- 1. We told her that the earlier we get under way tomorrow morning, the better.
- 2. I tried as hard as I could to put the fire out, but it was no use.
- 3. The sooner you send that letter you've written, the sooner it will arrive
- 4. Let's take a stroll in the garden before the rain comes.
- 5. They must have had some difficulty; otherwise they would have been here by now.
- 6. I've never seen such a dirty room! You don't think I'm going to clean it up, do you?
- 7. He must be mad if he thinks I'm going to do this again.
- 8. She came in and very politely offered everyone tea.
- 9. Shiraz seemed crowded when I arrived, but it is not so crowded as Tehran.
- 10. Pour some of that dishwashing liquid into the water so that the dishes will come out clean.

Supplementary Vocabulary

Jânvarân Animals khargush rabbit pestândârân mammals khoffâsh bat خوک khuk pig âhu deer, gazelle آبو asp horse bâlen whale مالون râsu weasel babr tiger
boz goat rubâh fox روماه L sag dog palang leopard sanjâb squirrel سخاب shotor camel شخال shaqâl jackal

LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

•	
shir lion	tâvus peacock طاووس
fil elephant	tuti parrot طوطي
gâter mule	oqâb eagle
kargadan rhinoceros	jė qâz goose
kaftâr hyena	<i>qu</i> swan
gâv cow	ورقاول qarqâvol pheasant
gâvmish ox	<i>gomri</i> dove قری
gorâz boar	kabk partridge
gorbe cat	kabutar pigeon
gorg wolf	karkas vulture
gusâle calf کومالہ	kalâq crow
gusfand sheep	gonjeshk sparrow
mush mouse موثن	الكال laklak stork
maymun monkey	<i>mâkiân</i> hen
,	mâhikhâr heron
parandegân birds	<i>murq</i> chicken مرع
ordak duck	murqâbi duck, waterfowl
bâz hawk, falcon	, marquor duck, wateriowi
bolbol nightingale	hasharât insects
belderchin quail بلدرچين	bid clothes moth
buqalamun turkey بوقلمون	parvâne butterfly, moth
parastu swallow	pashe mosquito
joqd owl	halazun snail حكزون
khorus rooster	zambur bee, wasp
واركوب dârkub woodpecker	susk beetle موسک
shotormorq ostrich شرمرغ	shepesh lice شيش **

ankabut spider

kerm worm

kerm-e shabtâb firefly

kazhdom scorpion

magas fly

i malakh locust, grasshopper

murche ant

i word muriâne termite

kazhdom scorpion

hazârpâ centipede

khazandegân reptiles رُزُمْرُكَانِ
lâkposht turtle

mâr snake

ارمولک mârmulak lizard

zuhayâtayn amphibians فوحمي تين samandar salamander qurbâqe frog

ianimals غانوران دیانی jânvarân-e daryâi aquatic animals خرجاک kharchang crab sadaf oyster سدن mâhi fish

Reading Passage

آن مرد آمد و پسر بچههائی را که خانه نداشتند دعوت کرد تا با او به جای بهتری بروند. پون بچهها از او محبت دیده بودند با او رفتند. آن مرد خوب بچهها را بخانهٔ خودش برد. در خانهٔ آن مرد دو مرد خوب دیگر هم بودند. آنها به بچهها پول دادند، شام دادند، رختخواب گرم هم دادند و فردا صبح بآنها گفتند اگر میخواهید همیشه دارای یک چنین زندگی باشید، باید مطیع و فرمانبردار باشید. پچهها چون محبت دیده بودند قبول کردند، و یک هفتهٔ بعد هرکدام در یک نقطهٔ شهر مشغول جیببری شدند و آنچه از استاد آموخته بودند در موقع کار بکار می بردند و آخر

يسر بچه pesarbachche boy; دعوت کون da'vat-kardan to invite.

² مطيع mahabbat affection; رختخواب rakhtekhâb bedding (sheets, etc.); مطيع moti' obedient; مطيع farmânbardâr submissive.

LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

شبها با جیب پر به خانه برمیگشتند و هرچه کار کرده بودند بآن سه مرد خوب تقدیم میکردند، و روزگارشان بخوبی و خوشی میگذشت.¹
یک روز یکیشان گیر افتاد و در کلانتری بقیه را هم لو داد. آنها را محاکمه کردند و به دارالتادیب فرستادند. سه ماه در دارالتادیب بودند و در این مدت از دیگران خیلی چیزها یاد گرفتند.²

از «توبه» اثر خسرو شاهانی ا

در موقع عمل ;noqte spot استاد ;jib-boridan to pick pockets جیب بریدن ;noqte spot نقطه ا dar mawqe'-e amal while on the job; روزگار ruzegâr time, days.

² افتادن gir-oftâdan to get caught, nabbed; کر نتری kalântari police station; بقیه baqiye the rest, the others; الو دادن law-dâdan to inform on; محاکمه کردن mohâkeme-kardan to sentence; عاکمه کردن dârotta'dib reformatory.

توبه tawbe repentance; خسرو شاهانی (asar-e by: خسرو شاهانی Khosraw-e Shâhâni Khosrow Shahani, modern Iranian short-story writer.

ورن بيست وينجم

Lesson Twenty-Five

§ 75 The passive. The passive voice, which can be made from transitive verbs only, is formed by conjugating, in all tenses and moods, the auxiliary verb shodan with the past participle of the verb, as گفته شدن goftan 'to say' گفته شدن goftan 'to be said.'

PRESENT	<i>گف</i> ته میشود	gofte mishavad	it is said
FUTURE	گفته خواهد شد	gofte khâhad shod	it will be said
PAST	گفته شد	gofte shod	it was said
PAST HABITUAL	گفته میشد	gofte mishod	it used to be said
PRESENT PERFECT	گفته شده است	gofte shode-ast	it has been said
PAST PERFECT	گفته شده بود	gofte shode-bud	it had been said
PRESENT SUBJ.	گفته شو د	gofte shavad	that it be said
PAST SUBJ.	گفته شده باشد	: gofte shode-bâshad	that it has been said

The passive is used in Persian only when the personal agent is not expressed. There is no passive construction to render 'it was said by me'; such sentences must be expressed in the active ('I said it'). Inanimate instruments are expressed in passive constructions with the preposition $\frac{1}{2}b\hat{a}$ (see examples below).

چنین چیزهائی دید ه نمیشود .	chonin chizhâ-i dide nemishavad.	Such things are not (to be) seen.
هیچ سر و صدائی از داخل خانه شنیده نمیشد.	hich sarosedâ-i az dâkhel-e khâne shenide nemishod.	No noise could be heard from inside the house.
این نامه باید هرچه زودتر با پست فرستاده شود .	in nâme bâyad harche zudtar bâ post feres- tâde shavad .	This letter must be sent by post as soon as pos- sible.

LESSON TWENTY-FIVE

be nazar miâyad ke bâ به نظر ماآيد که ما هفت تبر کشته شده hafttir koshte shodeast. است.

It appears that he was killed with a pistol.

Compound verbs with transitive verbal elements do not normally form passives. Instead, an intransitive compound with a passive sense is formed by changing the transitive verbal element into a corresponding intransitive one, such as كردن -khordan خوردن < zadan - زدن -shodan and- شدن < kardan-

-nâm-e u-râ farâmush نام اورا فراموش کردند.

They forgot his name.

. نام او فراموش شد. nâm-e u farâmush-shod. His name was forgotten

nâm-e barande-râ e'lâm- They will announce the نام برندهرا اعلام میکنند. mikonand.

name of the winner.

nâm-e barande e'lâm- نام برنده اعلام میشود. mishavad.

The name of the winner will be announced.

.rezâ-râ kotak-zadand رضارا کتک ; دند.

They beat Reza up.

rezâ kotak-khord.

Reza got beaten up.

§ 76 Uses of the past participle. The past participle, especially of compound verbs, can be used as an attributive adjective, as in English.

âb-e in qanât zaminhâ-o آب این قنات زمینها و مزارع كشت شدة دهكده را آساري مكد.

mazâre'-e kesht-shodeye dehkade-râ âbyârimikard.

The water from this canal irrigated the cultivated lands and fields of the village.

زنها لباسهاي نشسته zanhâ lebâshâ-ye شانرا در بقچه پیچیدند.

nashoste-shân-râ dar bogche pichidand.

The women wrapped their unwashed clothes in bundles.

پاخورده و زیلوهای نخنما فرش شده بود.

kaff-e otâq bâ gelimhâ-ye The floor of the room كف اطاق با گليمهاي pâ-khorde-o ziluhâ-ye nakhnomâ farsh-shodebud.

was spread with worn rugs and threadbare carpets.

The past participle is also used as an adjectival complement to the direct object of a verb, in which case it comes directly before the verb.

yek vaqt bud ke man یک وقت بود که من خودرا میان این خرابهها، كوهها و بيابانها گمشده

khod-râ miân-e in kharâbehâ, kuhhâ-o biâbânhâ gom-shode گمان میکردم. gomân-mikardam.

There was a time when I thought myself lost among these ruins. mountains, and deserts.

kârhâ-ye khod-râ karde کارهای خودرا کرده و o nakarde gozâsht.

She left her chores half done ("done and not done").

The past participle of certain transitive verbs is used as a passive substantive and normally occurs in the plural. This usage often takes the place of relative-clause constructions.

az **goftehû**-yesh ziâd sar I didn't get much out of از گفته هایش زیاد سر dar-nayâvordam. what he said.

neveshtehâ-ye in نوشتههای این نویسنده

the works (writings) of this writer

The past participle of intransitive verbs used substantively gives the force of a perfect participle, as رفته, rafte 'one who has gone' and رفتگان raftegân 'those who have gone.'

نه یاد در گذشتگان be yâd-e dargozashtegân in memory of those who

have passed away

farâmush-shodehâ-ye فراموش شدههای عصر asr-e gozashte

the forgotten things of a by-gone era

§ 77 Diminutives: -ak and -che. (1) The diminutive suffix $\sqrt{-ak}$ is used for true diminution, denigration, and contempt as well as for endearment, depending upon the tone of delivery and/or context.

morqak chick مرغک مرخ یسر *pesar* boy > سر ک *pesarak* kid, dear boy مرد mard man > مردک mardak fellow ر tefl child حفل طفل teflak brat, darling child طفلک

Many diminutives in -ak often have extended metaphorical connotations, like

arus bride > عروس arusak doll عروسک

LESSON TWENTY-FIVE

surat face > صورت suratak mask صورت surat face > مورتک suratak mask برف barf snow > مرفک sorkh red > مرخک sorkhak measles

(2) The diminutive suffix -che is used for diminution of inanimate objects only.

باغ bâqche garden > باغچه bâqche garden plot باغچه bâqche garden plot کتاب ketâb book > تابچه ketâbche pamphlet کتاب daryâche lake

Vocabulary 25

أشنا ما âshnâ bâ acquainted with jelaw-e in front of bedun-e without بدون jahân world حهان posht back; posht-e behind بشت râst right, true (a thing); يشت سر posht-زمان zamân time, era e sar-e behind (a person) taraf direction, side; taraf-ប tâ (preposition) up to, une toward til, as far as; (conjunction) majbur obliged (+ subj. 'to as soon as (+ past tense), do something') ever since (see also Apma'ruf be known for pendix A) mavâqe' مواقع mawqe' موقع تقسیم ;taqsim division تقسیم کردن taqsim-kardan to time, opportunity; dar mawae'-e at the time of divide nesbat be in relation to

Exercise 25

(a) Turn the verbs in boldface into passives. Delete the agent where necessary, and make any other necessary adjustments.

۶ آن خانه را تازه ساختند.
۷ دلم را شکستید.
۱ند. ۸ آنها مجبورم میکنند که همراهشان بروم.
۹ ماشین را نگهداشته بودند.

۱ رضا کتابهرا گم کرد. ۲ نمی توان اینهارا شست. ۳ ایشانرا روی زمین نشاندهاند. ۴ آنچه کرده بود بخشیدند. ۵ اینرا بکار نمی بریم.

۱۰ آنهارا در این شهر پیدا نمی کنید.

Reading Passage

مه در بیرون شرمرو در روستای ماخان زمینی خرید و خاندای ساخت و خاندان خود را در آنجا نشاند در سال ۱۰۹ بجری که عبدالرحمن به جهان آمد، روستای ماخان در سه فرکنی شهر مرو که این کودک در آنجا چشب باز کر ده بود با چند روستای دیمر از آن پررش بود. مه مه بررش بود مه مهام بیار بلندی رسیده بود و ایشان بطوع و رغبت اورا برانهائی و پیتوانی خود اختیار کر ده بودند عبدالرحمن در این محیط جوانمردی و بزرگواری، در میان دلاوران معروف مرو، رشد کرده و کم کم جوان برومندی شده بود. مردم مرو و جوانم دان آن دیار، پس از مهم، امید شان به پسر رشید او بود که، چون وارد زندگی شد، کنیهٔ ابومهم را اختیار کر د و اینک دیمر «ابومهم عبدالرحمن خراست نی» در بههٔ خراسان به جوانم دی و فقت و بخشف کی و ایران برسی معروف شد و

¹A.H. 109 = A.D. 727-28. For the reading of dates, see Appendix B.

Marv Merv, modern Mary, city on the Oxus in modern-day Turkmenistan; مسلم rustâ village; خاندان khânedân family; عبدالرحمن Abdor-Rahmân masc. proper name; فرسنگ farsang league, در سه فرسنگ dar se farsangi-e within three leagues of; خردك kudak child; از آن az ân-e belonging to; مسيان dar miân-e among; در مسيان javânmard chivalrous, noble; مقام javânmard chivalrous, noble; بطوع و رغبت pishvâ leader; مقام râh-nemudan to guide; اختيار pishvâ leader; پيشوا وkhtiâr-kardan to select.

رشد کردن; delâvar warrior, brave دلاور ; bozorgvâr great دلاور ; delâvar warrior, brave دلاور roshd-kardan to mature; که kam-kam little by little, gradually; برومند borumand worthy, prosperous; رشید diâr region; رشید rashid eldest; میله konye nickname; اینک دیگر inak digar here then; خراسان Khorâsân Khurasan (northeastern province of modern Iran; formerly extended to the Oxus); فتوت fotovvat manliness; برستیدن parastidan to worship, serve.

در آن زمان جوانمردان مرو پسران خود از خردسالی و از بمان اول که به دسرسان می رفتند و خط می آموخند به مسلک و مرام خود آثنا می کر دند و از بمان آغاز زندگی، به آمین ایران قدیم، سواری و تسراندازی و مشت زنی و شمشیرزنی و کمنداندازی و نیرواندازی و زوبین بازی را یاد می دادند عبدالرحمن ِ جوان در این فون از بمسالان خود برتری یافته بود ²

Review V

(a) Read and translate the following into English (unfamiliar words can be found in the Persian-English Vocabulary):

۱ برادم در وزارتخانهٔ آموزش و پرورش کار میکند و پسردانی ام در وزارتخانهٔ خارجه، ولی تنها کاری که میکند دفتر نشینی و کاغذبازی است. ۲ غرق ثنوندگان کشی سکسته امید زندگی را از دست داده بیچ کوششی نمیکر دند که خودشان را به جای امن و امانی برسانند
۳ تا وارد قطار شدیم یک آقای خیبی مهربانی به ما محک کرد که حیرانهایمان را بالای صندلیها بخوابانیم میمیشر سعی کنید، احمال موفق شدن بیشتر میشود. ۴ هرچه بیشتر سعی کنید، احمال موفق شدن بیشتر میشود. ۵ از چه ابزاری استفاده کر دواید که کارتمان را باین خوبی انجام دادید؟

أودسال khordsâl young; دبيرستان dabirestân school (modern 'high school'); خط khatt handwriting; مسلك maslak career; مرام marâm goal.

مشت زدن; tir arrow تیر savâr horseman; سوار âyân custom; مشت زدن tir arrow; عأغاز مشت مشت زدن nayze spear; سوار shamshir sword; منزه kamand lasso; منزه nayze spear; نیزه nayze spear; نیزه fonun skill, art; هسال hamsâl of فن fann pl فن bâzi-kardan to play; هسال basare age; پرتری یافتن از bartari-yâftan az to be superior to.

ع رفتارش و حرفهایش بقدری بچکسانه است که اگر می دیدید و می شنیدید باور نمی کر دید ۷ دیروز شارا دیدم که طرف شهربانی میرفتید. مکر در آنجا کار داشتید؟ ۸ تا دیر نشده میخوابند یک کاری انجام دبند ۹ یک ساعت است در بمینجا نشته ام منظف رشا. ۱۰ شعار وزارت آموزش و پرورش ایران این بود که «توانا بُوَدَا هرکه دانا بُودَ».

(b) Translate the following into Persian:

- 1. If I had thought you were coming yesterday, I would have been here.
- 2. Before they turned the loudspeaker on, we couldn't hear a thing.
- 3. If you've finished all the work you had to do, you can go.
- 4. If we can find a salesperson in this department store to take our money, we can buy the things we've selected and get home early.
- 5. I'm thinking about² studying dentistry, but my mother says that surgeons have a larger (more) income.
- 6. The books you brought from the library this morning may have been heavy, but they weren't so heavy as the ones I took back yesterday.
- 7. The earlier you get under way, the sooner you'll arrive.
- 8. You don't know how difficult my life has been. However unlucky you may have been, you haven't been so unlucky as I have.
- The amount of money they have spent on the house they are building is unbelievable.
- 10. The boys who were caught, sentenced, and sent to the reformatory learned lots of things from the other children, with whom they became friends there.

.(-subj.) در فكر اين هستم كه 2

 $^{^{1}}Boyad$ (an archaic present tense from budan) = ast (see §88).

Part Two

رستور زبان متون Classical and قديمي Archaic Usages

New Persian has a thousand years of literature, which, thanks to the conservatism of the language, can be read today without a great deal of difficulty. There are, naturally, features of earlier stages of the language that have become obsolete in modern Persian, but they are few and easily mastered. It is not easy to assign a date to the point at which these features became archaic and/or obsolete because they continued to be used in written Persian and especially in poetry long after they ceased to be alive in the spoken language. Many are still used today in the higher registers of the literary language.

§ 78 The majhul vowels. Early New Persian had two additional vowels in the vocalic inventory, namely \hat{e} and \hat{o} , called respectively ياى جهول $y\hat{a}$ -ye majhul and y was pronounced [e] like the modern y, and y was probably a true diphthong (like the "y" in "why"); \hat{o} was pronounced [o] like the modern y, which was probably pronounced like the "ow" in "cow." At some point prior to the eighteenth century—and generally within the area that is encompassed by modern Iran— \hat{e} merged with y as y and y which was y within the older contrast between y shir 'milk' and y sher 'lion' and between y will be indicated, but in modern Iran classical Persian is read like modern Persian, so \hat{e} is always read as y and y is read as y. The majhul vowels have been retained in much of Afghanistan, Tajikistan, and the Indian subcontinent.

§ 79 Euphonic -d-. When the preposition بدان be is followed by a pronoun or a demonstrative, it becomes bed-,¹ as in بدان be in بدین bedin, بدان bedân, بدین bedân, بدیشان bedân, بدیشان bedân, بدیشان bedêshân. This classical usage is maintained in modern literary style, especially in certain fixed phrases like بدین وسیله bedânsân 'in that manner.'

§ 80 The optative and the negative imperative. The third-person singular optative is formed by replacing the regular third-person singular ending -ad with -ad. This formation is obsolete in the modern language. The negative optative prefix is maa.

ke Rostam man-am, k'am **mámânâd** nâm / **neshinâd** bar ma'tam-am pur-e Sâm.

For I am Rustam—may my name not endure! May the son of Sâm sit at my funeral. —Ferdawsi, Shâhnâme

¹Bed- is actually a reflex of the Middle Persian preposition pad. In Early New Persian there were two prepositions, the Persian ba (pad) and the Arabic be, but they became conflated and are both be in modern Persian.

CLASSICAL AND ARCHAIC USAGES

chonin dâd pâsokh ke in nist dâd / hedin rôz khorshêd rawshan **mábâd!** Thus he answered, "This is not just. On this day may the sun not shine! -Ferdawsi, Shâhnâme

In classical usage the negative prefix má- was normally used to form the nega-گیان مسر که náraw 'don't go' and نرو máraw for modern مرو tive imperative, as gomân mábar ke... 'don't think that....'

8 81 The vocative enclitic. In classical usage, maintained to the present in a few expressions, -(y)â is added as a vocative enclitic, as خدایا khodâyâ 'O God!,' shâhanshâhâ 'O king of kings!' and حافظ Hâfezâ 'O Hâfez!' The same enclitic is added to interjections, like دردا darda 'oh, woe,' دريخيا darêga 'oh, alas,' and certain verbal forms like مادا mábâdâ 'oh, may it not be.'

When goft is used as "he said in response," the enclitic -â is often appended.

/ vaz khel'at-e to vasf kojâ gôyam man? / **goftâ** ke ma-râ máju be arsh-o be behesht / nazd-e del-e khod, ke nazd-e del pôvam man.

goftam malekâ to-râ kojâ jôyam man? I said, "O king, where should I search for thee? And how should I describe thy robe of honor?" He said (in reply), "Seek me not on the throne or in heaven but in thine own heart, for I dwell within hearts." - Attâr

§ 82 Dative usages. The enclitic -râ, now used as the specific direct-object marker, originally functioned as a dative marker. It indicated both indirect and dative-possessive constructions.

بادشابی را شندم که بکشتن اسری امارت کرد (معدی)

pâdishâh-ê-**râ** shenidam ke be koshtan-e asir-ê eshârat-kard.

I heard of a king who indicated that a prisoner should be killed. -Sa'di.

in mozhde ma-râ nist.

This good news is not for me. —Sa'di

حرران بهتی را دوزخ بود اعراف * از دوزخان برس که اعراف بهشت (معدی)

hurân-e beheshti-râ dôzakh bovad a'râf / az dôzakhiân pors ke a'râf behesht-ast.

For the houris of paradise purgatory would be hell: ask the inhabitants of hell, for whom purgatory would be paradise. - Sa'di

شتران بود مراجله نجیب * در هنر نادر و در شک_ل عجیب (جامی)

shotorân bud ma-râ, jomle najib / dar honar nåder-o dar shakl ajib

I had ("there were to me") camels. noble all, in skill rare and in form amazing. - Jâmi

garche manzel bas khatarnâk-ast-o maqsad nâpadêd / hich râh-ê nist k' ô-râ nist pâyân: qam-mákhor.

'Though the stages are dangerous and the goal not in sight, there is no road to which there is not an end: grieve not! - Hâfez

This dative construction was the normal Early New Persian way to express possession until داشتن dâshtan developed its modern meaning of 'to have.'

وى را بنده اى بود فتح نام (قانو سامه) h nâm. **He had** a slave ("to him was a slave")

vay-râ bande-ê bud Fath nâm.

named Fath. - Qâbusnâme

Whereas nouns in Early New Persian marked by -râ are dative and not objective, pronouns marked by -râ are oblique, i.e. any case but subjective, so they are either dative or objective.

ô-râ goftand.

They said to him (dative).

ô-râ bar posht gereft.

He took him (objective) on his back.

Get some money and come so that I can zar bégir-o bíâ tâ **to-râ** ânjâ bara**m**. take you (objective) there.

CLASSICAL AND ARCHAIC USAGES

to-râ vajh-ê nemâyam ke...

I'll show you (dative) a way in which...

مرا دل از حان برباید داشت و بر رنج کرسکی، بل تلخی مرک، دل بنهاد (ابوالمعالی نصرالله) له و دمیهٔ بهرامثایی)

márâ del az jân bar bâyad dâsht-o har ranj-e gorosnegi, bal talkhi-e marg, del benehâd.

It will be necessary for me (dative) to detach my heart from life and expect the torment of starvation—nay, the bitterness of death. - Abol-Ma'âli Nasrollâh, Kalile-o Demne

The pronominal enclitics, in addition to the use preserved in modern Persian as possessives and direct objects, also functioned as pronouns in the dative and dative-possessive. It is especially important to note the "floating" quality of these pronominal enclitics, i.e., unlike modern Persian, they do not always have a direct syntactical relationship with the words to which they are affixed but often indicate indirect objects or possession of some other word altogether in the sentence.

che guyam-at?

What should I say to you?

واعظ، عذاب دوزخ و میخوارگان مکو * حز این فه

vâ'ez, azâb-e dôzakh-o maykhâregân mágô! / joz in fasâne nist-at afsâne-ê degar?

Preacher, don't talk of the torment of hell and wine-drinkers! Don't vou have any fables besides these? - Fâni

ز بیقوتی اش خاست از جان نفیر * وطن ساخت کر دیکی آبکیر پس از مسدتی کر د آنجا درنک * درافت د غوکیش ماکه بیجنگ (جام

ze bêquti-ash khâst az jân nafir / vatan Because [the old bird] had nothing to sâkht gerd-e yek-ê âbgir // pas az mod- eat, there arose a cry from its soul. dat-ê kard ânjâ derang / dar-oftâd qôk-ê-'sh nâgah be chang.

Then it settled by a pond. After waiting there for a time, suddenly a frog fell into its clutches. - Jâmi

plement as in modern Persian (بسرسر bar sar-esh 'on his head'), in Early New Persian what is now the preposition was commonly a postposition (i.e., after the noun) and the noun was preceded by be, forming a circumposition, as be sar-ash bar 'on his head' and יָמְמֵיֵט ווֹנע, be zamin andar 'in the earth.'

hami ârzu kard ân- // ke lakht-ê ze zôr- in misery he made a wish that he ash setânad hami / ke raftan be rah bar tavânad hami.

bénâlid bar kerdegâr-e jahân / ba zâri He cried out to the maker of the world; would take away a bit of his strength so that he could walk on the road

-Ferdawsi

bas nâmvar be zêr-e zamin dafn-karde- Many a famous one have they buried and / k'az hasti-ash be ru-ye zamin bar beneath the earth, of whose existence neshân namând.

no trace remains on the face of the

earth. - Sa'di

§ 84 The perfective aspect: the be-prefix. In early New Persian the verbal prefix bé- (identical to, and indeed the origin of, the modern subjunctive and imperative prefix) indicates the perfective aspect of the verb. that is, the action or state of the verb done once, suddenly, or finally (the Greek agrist, the French passé simple, and a feature with which students of Slavic languages are all too familiar). This usage was maintained in poetry long after it ceased to function in normal prose-writing. Since English has no formal way of expressing the perfective aspect, circumlocutions must be sought for proper translation.

in bégoft-o béraft.

He blurted this out and got up and left.

del-am bésôkht.

- My heart went up in flames.

پرر بخدید و ارکان دولت بپندیدند و برادران بجان برنجیدند (معدی، کلسان)

¹ A verb marked by the be- prefix is specifically perfective, but a verb that lacks the prefix is simply not marked: it can be either perfective or imperfective in aspect.

CLASSICAL AND ARCHAIC USAGES

, _{pasan}didand-o barâdarân be jân béranjidand.

nedar békhandid-o arkân-e dawlat bé- The father burst out laughing, the ministers of state expressed approval, and the brothers smarted with mortal pain.

-Sa'di, Golestân

he yazdân **bé**nâlid k' ay kerdgâr / hedin kâr in bande-râ pâs-dâr.

All at once he cried out to God, "O Maker, protect this slave in this endeavor." - Ferdawsi, Shâhnâme

ân pir lâshe-râ-ke sepordand zêr-e gel / khâk-ash chonân békhord k'azô ostokhân námând.

That old corpse they entrusted to the clay was so gobbled up by the earth that not even the bones remain.

-Sa'di, Golestân

chon-ke چونکه 85 Cho(n). In modern Persian چون chon usually occurs as and means 'because.' In classical Persian, however, چون chon (together with its shortened form ____ cho) poses special problems because it can be a causal conjunction ('because, since, as'), a temporal/conditional conjunction ('when, if'), a preposition ('like'), and an interrogative ('how?'). When followed directly by a verb, it is a conjunction, but otherwise only context determines how it is used.

cho gâsed shod, payâm-e ô bord: / shod shishe-ye mehr dar miân khord.

When the messenger left, he took his message: thus was the vial of love between them shattered. - Nezâmi

shakhs-ê hame shab bar sar-e bêmâr gerist / chon rôz shod, ô bémord o bêmâr bézist.

A person wept all night over a sick man. When day came, he died and the sick man lived. -Sa'di

cho pêsh-e yusof âmad ebn-e yâmin / neshând-ash hamnafas bar takht-e zarrin.

اكر صد سال كبرآتش فروزد * يو يكدم اندران اقتد ببوزد (سعدى)

agar sad sâl gabr âtesh forôzad / cho yekdam andar ân oftad, bésôzad. Although a Zoroastrian kindles the flame for a hundred years, when (if) he falls into it for an instant, he will go up in flames. —Sa'di

When Benjamin came before Joseph.

he sat him next to himself on the gold-

en throne. - Attår

چه باشد ار ثود از بندغم دلش آزاد * چه ست حافظ مسکین غلام و چاکر دوست (حافظ)

che bâshad ar shavad az band-e qam del-ash âzâd / **cho** hast hâfez-e meskin qolâm-o châkar-e dôst? What would happen were his heart released from the bonds of grief, since poor Hâfez is a slave and servant to the beloved? —Hâfez

تهانه منم ستم رسیده * کو دیده که صدیع من ندیده (نظامی)

tanhâ na man-am setam-reside / ku dide ke sad **cho** man nádide? It is not I alone who have suffered oppression. Where is the eye that has not seen a hundred **like** me? —Nezâmi

دوران بقا حوِ باد صحراً بكذشت * تلخى و خوشى و زشت و زيباً بكذشت (معدى)

dawrân-e baqâ cho bâd-e sahrâ bóg'zasht / talkhi-o khoshi-o zesht-o zêbâ bóg'zasht. The era of existence passes like a desert wind: bitterness and sweetness, ugly and beautiful pass away. —Sa'di

پادشاه خویش را دانستام * حون روم تنها حو نتوانستام (عطار)

pâdishâh-e khêsh-râ dâneste-am / I know my king, [but] how can I go chon ravam tanhâ, cho nat'vâneste-am? I know my king, [but] how can I go alone, unable as I am? —Attâr

§ 86 The continuous marker hami. The older continuous marker is hami. Unlike its modern reflex mi-, it does not have to be prefixed to the verb, and it often follows the verb, especially in poetry. It generally connotes a continual repetition of action, like 'to keep on doing something' in English.

CLASSICAL AND ARCHAIC USAGES

همی بود بوس و کنار و نبید (فردوسی)

hami bud bôs o kenâr o nabid.

There was continual kissing, embracing and wine. -Ferdawsi

cheshmân-ash hamchonân dar chashmkhâne **hami** gardid.

His eyes kept on turning in their sockets. - Sa'di

yâr-e mehrbân âyad **hami**.

hô-ye juy-e Muliân âyad hami / yâd-e The scent of the Mulian river keeps coming; the memory of the beloved friend keeps coming. - Rudaki

§ 87 The past habitual and conditional. Whereas the منه hami marker gives the continuous sense ('to keep on doing, to do over and over'), the past habitual ('used to') was formed in older Persian by the addition of an enclitic -i to the past verb. Like the modern past habitual it was also used for the irrealis mood.

ráftami رفتمي ráftiyi رفتيي ráfti رفتي

ráftimi رفتیمی ráftidi رفتىدى ráftandi رفتندي

صیادان آنجا بیار آمدندی و بدان نواحی دام نهادندی (کاشفی، انوار سهیی)

sayyâdân ânjâ besyâr **âmadandi** o bedân navâhi dâm-nehâdandi.

Many hunters used to come there and set snares in those regions.

-Kashefi, Anvâr-e Sohayli

خواحه نررک احد حن هر روز بسرای خوش بار دادی و تا ناز پیشین بنشتی و کار براندی من با بسران او بودمی و آنچه فرمودی نوشتی (نظامی عروضی) جهار مقاله)

khâje-ye bozorg, ahmad-e hasan, har rôz-ê be sarây-e khêsh bâr dâdi o tâ namâz-e pêshin bén'shasti o kâr bérândi. man bâ pesarân-e ô budami o conducting administrative affairs. I ânche farmudi neveshtami.

The great master Ahmad son of Hasan used to hold court every day at his house and sit until the noon prayer, was with his sons, and I would write down everything he would say.

-Nezâmi Aruzi, Chahâr Magâle

اگر شاه را شاه بودی پدر * بسر بر نهادی مراتاج زر اگر مادر ششاه بانو بدنی * مراسیم و زر تا بزانو بدی (فردوسی)

agar shâh-râ shâh **budi** pedar / be sar bar **nehâdi** marâ tâj-e zar. // Agar mâdar-e shâh bânu **bŭdi** / marâ sim o zar tâ ba zânu **bŭdi**. If the king had had a king for a father, he would have placed on my head a crown of gold. If the king's mother had been a lady, I would have silver and gold up to my knees.

-Ferdawsi, Shâhnâme

ن * نیم کل بشیدند و توبه بشکتن (معدی)

kasân-ke dar ramazân chang **míshekastandi** / nasim-e gol béshenidand-o tawbe bésh'kastand. Those, who would have been smashing harps during Ramadan, suddenly smelled the rose-scented breeze and broke their vows of abstinence.

-Sa'di

§ 88 The archaic present stem of budan. In addition to the present stem باش $b\hat{a}sh$ -, which survives in modern Persian for the subjunctive, there was another present stem of budan, namely بسو bov-, which gives the following present paradigm:

بوم	bovam	بويم	bovim
بوی	bovi	بويد	bovid
بود	bovad	بوند	bovand

The negative is regularly formed with the ná- prefix (ببوى nábovam, نبوى nábovi, &c.). Unfortunately the third-person singular بسود bovad 'he/she/it is' is identical to the past tense, بود bud 'he/she/it was.'

§ 89 The archaic negative copula. In addition to the negative copula as in modern Persian (see §18), there was another negative copula formed by adding the present copulative endings to the negative particle *na*.

نيم	náyam	نئيم	náim
نئى	nái	نئيد	náid
نیست	nist	نيند	náyand

CLASSICAL AND ARCHAIC USAGES

8 90 The archaic past narrative. The archaic past narrative tense is formed by adding the pronominal endings, not directly to the past participle, but to a form of the third-person singular past narrative where an elision of the -e of the participle to the -ast of the third person takes place (thus افتاده است oftâdé-ast > أفتادست oftâdást). The paradigm is as follows.

oftâdástam افتادستم oftâdástim افتادستیم oftâdásti افتادستي oftâdástid افتادستىد oftâdást افتادست oftâdástand افتادستند

The form also occurs in the past habitual-conditional:

oftâdástami افتادستمي oftâdástimi افتادستيمي oftâdástii افتادستس oftâdástidi افتادستىدى oftâdásti افتادستي oftâdástandi افتادستندي

These forms occur with some frequency in poetry.
کاشگی آن شب و آن روز که ترسیدم ازان * نشادسی و ششادی نشدسی تیار (خاقانی)

kâsh-ki ân shab o ân rôz ke tarsidam az ân / náfotâdasti o shâdi náshodasti had not befallen and joy had not timâr.

Would that the night and day I feared turned to grief. - Khâqâni

§ 91 The gnomic past. A special use of the past in classical Persian, quite common in poetry, is equivalent to the Greek gnomic agrist, i.e., the simple past used for proverbial sayings and statements of general validity. The present is used in English. فرق تأہی و بندکی برخاست * حون قصنای مبشة آمد پیش (معدی)

farq-e shâhi o bandegi bar-khâst / chon qazâ-ye nebeshte âmad pêsh.

The distinction between kingship and slavehood disappears when "written fate" (death) comes forth. -Sa'di

دوران تقاحو باد صحرا بكذشت * تلخ و خوشي و زشت و زما بكذشت (معدى)

dawrân-e bagâ cho bâd-e sahrâ bóg'zasht / talkhi o khoshi o zesht o zêbâ bóg'zasht.

The era of existence passes like a desert wind: bitterness and sweetness, ugly and beautiful pass away. - Sa'di

این یک دو سه روزه نوبت عمر کذشت * چون آب بجریب ار و چون باد بدشت هرکز عنسه دو روز مرا سیساد نکشت * روزی که نیامدست و روزی که کذشت (خیام)

in yek-do-se-rôze nawbat-e omr gozasht / chon âb be juybâr o chon bâd be dasht // hargez qam-e do rôz marâ yâd nagasht / rôz-ê ke nayâmadast o rôz-ê ke gozasht. This one-, two-, or three-day period of life passes like water in a stream and like wind on a plain. Never do I worry about two days: the day that has not yet come and the day that is past.

-Khayyâm

Part Three بخش موم بخش موم Part Three دستور زبان Colloquial Transformations

Colloquial Persian is the version of the language used for ordinary, everyday oral communication in Iran. Until recently it was rarely, if ever, ever written in any form, but now written representation has become fairly common. Equivalents are given in this section in the Arabic script, but such "transcriptions" are used only for representing colloquial speech in some novels and short-stories, for very informal writing like notes, and for humorous effect. Where no equivalent is given in the Arabic script, it means that such phenomena have no conventional representation.

§ 92 Phonological transformations.

92.1 In almost all words in all environments -ân- becomes -un-.

Only a few words are not subject to the $\hat{a}n > un$ transformation (e.g., داستان dâstân "story," ایران irân "Iran," and قرآن $qor'\hat{a}n$ "Koran").

92.2 In a few words -âm- becomes -um-:

but these are isolated instances, and $\hat{a}m > um$ is not a general transformation in colloquial Persian.

92.3 -st- is generally pronounced -ss- (and almost never represented in the Arabic script), as in

92.4 Final -ar becomes -e in the following words:

92.5 Final -e followed by any enclitic becomes -á-.

COLLOQUIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

92.6 In the narrative tense final $-\epsilon$ drops when followed by enclitic -i and stress moves to the vowel of the enclitic.

92.7 The plural suffix $-h\hat{a}$ tends to become $-\hat{a}$, as indeed almost all intervocalic h tends to be elided. When $-h\hat{a}$ is suffixed to words ending in $-\hat{e}$, both $-\hat{e}$ and -h-are elided.

92.8 Most words ending in $-\hat{a}h$ and $-\hat{a}'$ lose the final consonant.

§ 93 The copulas. The short copula has two forms, one used after consonants and -i and another used after vowels other than -i.

Following consonants and -i the present copulas are:

Following vowels other than -i, the present copulas are:

Examples:

khub-am خوبم	I'm all right	khub-im خوبيم	we're all right
khub-i خوبی	you're all right	khub-in خوبين	you're all right
khub-e خوبه	he/she/it's all right	khub-an خوبن	they're all right
kojâ-m کجام	where am I?	kojâ-ym كجايم	where are we?
kojâ-y کجای	where are you?	kojâ-yn كجاين	where are you?
kojâ-st كجاست	where is he/she/it?	kojâ-n كجان	where are they?

The long copulas are as follows.

هستم	hástam	I am	هستيم	hástim	we are
هستی	hásti	you are	هستين	hástin	you are
هست	hást	he/she/it is	هست	hástan	they are

In most environments the distinction in meaning in written Persian (see §22) between the long and short copulas has been lost altogether, and generally in spoken Persian the distinction between the long and short copulas is purely one of usage. The long copulas are used (1) for emphasis, as in written Persian (khub hást! "it is good"), (2) after the non-specific enclitic in all persons except the third singular (bachchâ-ye khub-i-hastan "they're good children," but bachcheye khub-i-e "he's a good child"), (3) always after -(a)m, the colloquial reflex of enclitic -ham (khúb-am-hast "it's good too"), and (4) after any word ending in a vowel other than -i and -é (which becomes -á- before the short copulas, see §92.5).

§ 94 Verbal inflections.

94.1 The past stem of almost all verbs remains as in written Persian (a notable exception is *tunestan* for *tavânestan*). Some of the personal endings, however, undergo slight changes and reductions:

-am	-im
-i	-in
(-esh)	-an

An example is the past absolute inflection of raftan:

ráftam رفتم	ráftim رفتیم
ráfti رفتی	ráftin رفتين
(فتش (رفتش (رفتش)	ráftan رفتن

The third-person singular zero ending of written Persian is often replaced in spoken Persian by -esh. Its use is optional.

94.2 Present stems, with exceptions noted below in §95, remain as in written Persian, as does the *mi*- progressive marker. The personal endings for stems ending in consonants are:

-am	-im
-i	-in
-e	-an

as in the inflection of gereftan:

mígirim میگیرم mígirim

COLLOQUIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

میگیری	mígiri	میگیرین	mígirin
میگیره	mígire	میگیرن	mígiran

For stems ending in vowels, the personal endings are:

-m	-ym
-y	-yn
-d	-n

as in the inflection of umad-/â- (âmadan):

míâm میام	míâym میایم
míây میای	míâyn میاین
míâd میاد	míân میان

94.3 The past narrative tense is inflected as follows (for the transformation ℓa - δ - δ - and $-\ell$ - δ - see §92.5 above).

raftám رفتهام	raftím رفتهایم
raftí رفتهای	raftín رفتهاین
rafté رفته	raftán رفتهاند

Note that, except in the third person singular, the only distinction between the past absolute and past narrative is one of stress. In all negatives (náraftam), progressives (míraftam) and compounds (bár-dâshtam), i.e., where the primary stress is removed from the verb itself, the past narrative and the past absolute differ only in the third person singular (náraft-nárafte, míraft-mírafte, bár-dâsht-bárdâshte).

94,4 The formation of the subjunctive of simple verbs is identical to that of written Persian (using the colloquial form of the present stems given below in §95, e.g., פנבות bénvisam, אינם bénvisam, פנבות bénvisam, פנבות bénvisam, פנבות bénvisam, פנבות bénvisam, בנבות bénvisam, בנבות bénvisam, ובות bénvisam, ובות bénvisam, ובות bénvisam, is bénvisam, in spoken Persian, and with the exception of truly close compounds like vardâshtan, the bé- prefix is as likely as not to occur with compounds of -kardan and -shodan.

§ 95 Reduced, altered, and contracted colloquial verbal stems.

WRITTEN	PAST STEM	PRESENT	PRES. 1ST SING.	IMPERATIVE
FORM		STEM		
آوردن	âvord-	-âr-	mí âr am	bí âr (in)
ائدًاختن	(a)ndâkht-	-ndâz-	mí ndâz am	b ándâz (in)

برداشتن	var-dâsht-	var-dâr-	vár- mi dâr am	vár-dâr(in)
توانستن	tunest-	tun-	mí tun am	bé tun (in)
خواستن	khâst-	khâ-	mí khâ m	bé khâ (yn)
دادن	dâd-	d-	mí d am	bé deh , bédin
دانستن	dunest-	dun-	mí dun am	bé dun (in)
ر فتن	raft-	r-	mí r am	bóraw, bérin
شدن	shod-	sh-	mís h am	béshaw, béshin
شستن	shost-	shur-	mís hur am	bés hur (in)
شكستن	sh(e)kast-	shkan-	mís hkan am	bé shkan (in)
شنيدن	shenid-	shn(av)-	mís hn(av) am	bés hnaw , bés hn in
شناختن	sh(e)nâkht-	shnâs-	mís hnâs am	bés hnâ s(in)
گذاشتن	g(o)zâsht-	(g)zâr-	mí(g)zâram	bézâr(in), bógzâr(in)
گذشتن	g(o)zasht-	(g)zar-	mí(g)zaram	bézar(in), bógzar(in)
گفتن	goft-	g-	mígam	bégu, bégin
نشستن	n(e)shast-	(n)shin-	mí(n)s hin am	$b\acute{e}(n)shin(in)$
نوشتن	n(e)vesht-	nvis-	mí nvi sam	bé nvis (in)

§ 96 The present and past progressive. In written Persian the present and past continuous tenses serve as both habitual and progressive, that is, مىروم míravam is both 'I go' and 'I'm going'; مرفتم míraftam is both 'I used to go' and 'I was going.' In colloquial Persian ميرفتم míram means only 'I go' and ميرفتم míraftam is only 'I used to go.' For the present and past progressive a compound tense formation has developed with dâshtan as auxiliary, and they occur only in the affirmative—no negative exists.

The present progressive ('I am going') of raftan is as follows:

dâram míram دارم میرم	dârim mírim داریم میریم
dâri míri داری میری	dârin mírin دارین میرین
dâre míre داره میره	dâran míran دارن میرن

The past progressive ('I was going') is as follows:

dâshtim míraftim داشتیم میرفتیم dâshtim míraftim داشتی میرفتی dâshti mírafti داشتی میرفتی dâshtin míraftin داشتن میرفتن dâsht míraft

Contrast the following:

COLLOQUIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

?, جکار میکنین: chekâr-mikonin? What do you do (for a

living)?

Open the door!

? chekâr-mikonin دارين چکار ميکنين؟ What are you doing?

rezâ doruq-mige. رضا دروغ میگه Reza tells lies.

.rezâ dâre doruq-mige رضا داره دروغ میگه Reza is lying.

§ 97 The direct-object marker. The specific direct-object marker $(1, -r\hat{a})$ becomes -ro or -re. Following consonants the r may be dropped, giving -o/-e. The literary مرا márâ is regularized to (من man-o. Since the resulting -o enclitic is pronounced exactly like the co-ordinating conjunction -o, it is often-and very confusingly—spelled like the conjunction with a separate vâv.

? in-o didín اينو (اين و) ديدين؟ Have you seen this?

kif-e man-o kojâ کیف منو (من و) کجا چیف منو (من و) کجا گذاشتن ؟ Where did they put my

bag?

-inâ-ro kojâ paydâ اینهارو کجا پیدا کردن؟ Where did they find these?

aynak-esh-o gom-karde. عینکشو (عینکشو) گم کرده He's lost his glasses.

!dar-o vâ-kon درو واك

When a direct object is followed by -(a)m, the reflex of -ham, the direct-object marker is omitted altogether.

un-am didam. اون هم دیدم I saw that one too. chizâ-ye shomâ-m چيزهای شماهم آوردم âvordam. I brought your things too.

As in the classical language, the reflex of $-r\hat{a}$ is often used in spoken Persian as a dative, especially with verbs of motion and expressions of time.

shirâz-(r)o náraftam. شيرازو (شيرازرو) نرفتم I haven't gone to Shiraz.

tamâm-e shahr-o تمام شهرو گشتیم gashtim. We went all about the city.

emshab-(r)o haminja امشبو (أمشبرو) Sleep here tonight.

békhâbin. همينجا بخوابين

§ 98 The emphasizing particle -ke. The particle ke, not to be confused with the relative pronoun (§40) or the temporal conjunction (§57), serves to emphasize the word it follows. The same effect is achieved in English by voice intonation.

اینکه ردست نیست نیست in doróst-ke nist. This is not right.

§ 99 Pronominal enclitics. There are two sets of pronominal enclitics, one postconsonantal and the other postvocalic. Following consonants, the enclitics are:

-am	-emun	pedár am پدرم	pedáremun پدرمون
-et	-etun	pedáret پدرت	pedáretun پدرتون
-esh	-eshun	pedár esh پدرش	pedáreshun پدرشون

Following vowels, the enclitics are:

-m	-mun	khuná m خونهم	khuná mun خونهمون
-t	-tun	khunát خونەت	khunátun خونەتون
-sh	-shun	khunás h خو نەش	khunáshun خونەشون

§ 100 Prepositions. Most prepositions remain as they are in written Persian. مدر dar 'in, inside' is seldom used in spoken Persian, however; in its place عنت tu (optionally تسوى tu-ye) is used. Prepositional phrases of location tend to follow the verb, unlike written Persian.

رفتن تو(ی) اون خونه ráftan tu(-ye) un khune. They went into that house.

gozâshtamesh tu(-ye) I put it in the drawer. keshu.

bíâyn tu! Come in!

In expressions of motion toward and location in, prepositions are generally dispensed with entirely in spoken Persian.

COLLOQUIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

cel-am míkhâst béram دلم میخواست برم تهرون tehrun.

I wanted to go to Tehran.

man emruz némikhâm من امروز نمیخوام بمونم bémunam khune.

I don't want to stay at

home today. He should be in that other

bâyad un daftar-e dige باید اون دفتر دیگه ماشه bâshe.

office.

Contrary to written usage, the pronominal enclitics can be added to all prepositions. With the enclitics be becomes béh- (béham, béhet, béhesh, etc.), bâ becomes bâhâ- (bâhâm, bâhât, bâhâsh, etc.) and hamrâh becomes hamrâhâ-(hamrâhâm, hamrâhât, hamrâhâsh, etc.). The only other simple preposition in common use is az, bar being obsolete and dar being either omitted or suppleted by tu.

béhesh nágoftin zud بهش نگفتین زود بیاد؟

Didn't you tell him to come early?

ali bâhâm bude. على باهام بوده

Ali was with me.

?un hamrâhâsh kíe? اون همراهاش كيه

Who's that with her?

?dzesh khosh-et némiâd ازش خوشت نمياد

Don't you like it?

Appendix A

The Uses of & Tâ

I. The preposition tâ can mean 'until,' 'up to,' 'down to,' 'all the way to,' or 'by' (with reference to time).

الماعت بنج كار ميكم I work until 5 o'clock.
الماعت بنج كار ميكم أله الميكم أله الميكم أله الميكم أله الميكم أله الميكم الميك الميكم الميكم الميكم أله الم

- II. The conjunction $t\hat{a}$ has a variety of meanings depending upon its usage.
- (1) With the present indicative it usually means '(for) as long as,' 'as far as.' or 'ever since' for situations that continue into the present.

He's been like this ever since I've نا اورا مثناسم بميطور است known him.

As far as I remember, nothing has changed.

م آید میچ چنری عوض نشده است As far as I remember, nothing has changed.

م آزنده ام زنگی مرا زهر آلود خوابد کر د As long as I am alive it will poison my life.

- (2) With the subjunctive *tâ* means:
 - (a) 'as/so long as' with reference to the future.

 ا زندگی کنید دیمر سنان کاری را نکنید

 Don't ever do such a thing again so long as you live!
 - (b) 'until' (when the tâ-clause follows the main verb) I'll wait until you come.
 - (c) 'by the time that' with reference to the future; see §64.1(c)

APPENDIX A

By the time we get to the airport, the plane will have gone.

(d) 'in order that' for a purpose clause, which always comes at the end of a sentence; see §64.2

I'm coming (in order) to see you.

(e) With the negative present subjunctive $t\hat{a}$ means 'until' (always at the head of the sentence); see §64.1(b)

آ من بم تمروم I won't go until you do.

(3) With the past, tâ means

(a) 'by the time' with reference to the past:

By the time we got to the airport, the plane had gone.

- (b) 'as soon as' تا وارد اطاق شدم ديدم كه كسى آنجا نيت As soon as I entered the room I saw that there was no one there.
- (c) 'ever since' and 'as long as'

 This clock had been in our house for as long as I could remember.
- (d) 'until' بابه ترز رسد He kept going **until he reached** Tabriz.

(4) With the negative present perfect tense, tâ means 'before':

The acrobats set up their stage so that they could accomplish something before it got late and people went to their houses.

Appendix B

Telling Time, Days of the Week, Months of the Year, Reading Dates. **Arithmetical Operations**

Telling Time

?ساعت چند است؟ sâ'at-e chand-ast

.تاعت ده است. sâ'at-e dah-ast.

sâ'at-e dah-o rob'-ast.

sâ'at-e dah-o nim-ast.

sâ'at-e yâzdah-o rob' ساعت یازده و ربع کم kam-ast.

What time is it?

It's ten o'clock.

It's ten fifteen.

It's ten thirty.

It's a quarter to eleven (ten forty-five).

Divisions of the Day

bâmdâd الداد

sobh صبح abl az zohr قبل از ظهر zohr خر ba'd az zohr

ه. nimeshab, nesf-e shab مر

sâ'at-e shesh-e qablaz-zohr-e emruz sâ'at-e shesh-e ba'daz-

zohr-e fardâ

sâ'at-e nim ساعت نیم

early morning (dawn)

morning (generally)

before noon (AM)

noon

after noon (PM)

late afternoon, early

evening

night

midnight

6 ам today

6 рм tomorrow

12:30 рм

210

APPENDIX B

Days of the Week

emruz chandshambe-ast? What day of the week is امروز چندشنبه است؟ it today?

emruz shambe-ast. امروز شنبه است. Today's Saturday.

shambe Saturday شنله chahârshambe Wednesday حهار شنبه

پنجشنبه yekshambe Sunday پنجشنبه panjshambe Thursday پکشنبه doshambe Monday جمعه jum'e Friday

seshambe Tuesday سهشنيه

Because traditionally the day of the week starts at sundown, the night is generally called the "eve" of what we call the next day.

> shab-e jom'e شب حمعه Thursday night ("the eve

> > of Friday")

shab-e yekshambe شب کشنه Saturday night ("the eve

of Sunday")

In modern times, however, most of these expressions have become obsolete. The only one left in common use is shab-e jom'e for 'Thursday night.'

When shab is placed after the name of the day, it means the night following that day, as in English.

> jom'e shab حمعه شب Friday night yekshambe shab کشنیه شب Sunday night

The plural is used for expressing 'on Mondays,' etc.

panjshambehâ-o jom'ehâ We don't work on پنجشنبهها و جمعهها کار kâr-némikonim. Thursdays or Frida Thursdays or Fridays.

Months of the Year

nawruz = 1 نــوروز) The Iranian calendar begins each year at the vernal equinox Farvardin), which usually falls on March 21st. The first six months contain thirty-one days each; the second five months contain thirty days each; the last month contains twenty-nine days except in leap years, when it has thirty. The Iranian months correspond to the signs of the zodiac.

> fasl-e bahâr SPRING farvardin (March 21-April 20, Aries)

The Solar Hegira era (هجرى شمسى hejri-e shamsi) is used in Iran. On Nawruz, the vernal equinox and Iranian New Year's Day, the Solar Hegira era is 621 years behind the Christian era. An on-line conversion program is available at www.payvand.com.

On March 21, 1976 (1 Farvardin 2535) the Imperial (شاهی shâhanshâhî) era was proclaimed. On Nawruz the Imperial era was 559 years ahead of the Christian era. The Imperial era was cancelled after about two years, and Iran returned to the Solar Hegira calendar.

The other calendrical system in use in Iran is the Islamic lunar Hegira era (A.H., anno hegirae), which began in A.D. 622 with the migration of the Prophet Muhammad from Mecca to Medina. This calendar is used for determining religious holidays in Iran, and, being lunar, it bears no readily discernible relation to the solar year of the Christian or Solar Hegira calendars. The lunar year falls 11¼ days short of the solar year annually. On-line conversion programs (e.g. www.ori.unizh.ch/hegira.html and www.assirat.org/Hcal) and downloadable calendars are available (www.topshareware.com/Islamic-Calendar-download-6480. htm).

APPENDIX B

The Islamic lunar months, which do not correspond with solar months in any readily calculable way, are:

The European-style months used in Persian, taken from French, are as follows:

Reading Dates

Dates are read in the following fashion. Note particularly where ezâfes fall.

(هـق) ۱۴۲۶ شعبان ۲۶ bist-o sheshom-e sha'bân 26 Shaban 1426 (A.H., (sâl)-e yek-hezâr-o Lunar Hegira)

chahârsad-o bist-o

shesh(-e hejri-e qamari)

Arithmetical Operations

Arithmetical operations in Persian are written from right to left, exactly as they are in English.

Addition (جمع jam'):

 $\Upsilon + \Upsilon = V$ چهار باضافهٔ سه مساوی chahâr be ezâfe-ye se four plus three mosâvi-ast bâ haft equals seven

:(tafriq تفریق subtraction

 $1 \cdot - Y = \Lambda$ ده منهای دو مساوی $dah \ minh \hat{a}$ -ye do ten minus two mosâvi-ast bâ hasht equals eight

Multiplication (ضرب zarb):

 $\Delta \times \Upsilon = 1$ پنج ضرب در سه panj zarb dar se five multiplied by $mos \hat{a}vi$ -ast $b\hat{a}$ pânz- three equals fifteen dah

Division (بخش bakhsh or تقسيم taqsim):

Powers are expressed by بتوان be tavân-e

do be tavân-e se two to the power دو بتوان سه ۲^۳

Examples of نمونه کئی چند از نثر معاصر و Contemporary فارسی Persian Prose

میگویند در زمانهای قدیم یک کاسب کممایهٔ کاشی هرچه داشت فروخت و دست زنشرا گرفت و از كاشان خارج شد و رفت و رفت تا به تبريز رسيد. در آنجا یک دکان کبابیزی دایر کرد.^۱

در اولین روزی که دکان آب و جاروب شد، کاسب کاشی به انتظار مشتری نشست و پس از چند دقیقهای چهار نفر از باباشمل های تبریز وارد دكان شدند واز كباب مفصل طلب كردند و با نان خوردند. هنگام خروج از دکان به صاحب دکان بطور آمرانه گفتند «آهای، از پول خبری نیست. صدایت هم درنیاید. اگر میخواهی در امان باشی باید هر روز همینطور از ما یذیرائی کنی. آن هم مجانی. فهمیدی؟ در غیر اینصورت پدرترا در

این حرفهارا زدند و رفتند. کاشی بینوا از ترس بلافاصله دکانرا بست و از تبریز با زنش خارج شد و آمد و آمد تا به شهر و دیار خود، یعنی کاشان، رسید. به محض ورود به خانهٔ قبلی به زنش گفت «در خانهرا محکم ببند!» او هم بست. مرد کاشی بالای بام رفت، رو به شهر تبریز ایستاد و با فریاد و عصبانیت دستهارا مرتب بالا و پائین برد و به لوطیها و باباشملهای تبریز بد و بیراه گفت و با توپ و تشر افزود که «من پدرتانرا درمیآورم! مرا مىترسانىد؟!»

أسي; kâseb tradesman كممايه; kaseb tradesman كاشي; kâseb tradesman كم (Kashanis have a reputation for timidity, while Tabrizis are noted for being "rough and tough"); خارج شدن khârej-shodan to go out; د کان کبابیزی dokkân-e kabâbpazi kabob shop; دایر کردن dâyer-kardan to open, run.

⁻entezâr expecta انتظار ;âb-o-jârub-shodan to be swept clean آب و جاورب شدن ² tion; مفصل moshtari customer; باباشمل bâbâshamal ruffian, tough; مفصل mofassal elaborate; نان nân bread (kabob is customarily ordered with either bread or rice); هنگام hangâm-e at the time of; خروج khoruj going out, leaving; صاحب دكان sâheb-dokkân proprietor; آمرانه amerâne imperious; آهاى ahây hey!; يذيرائي كردن از amân safety; يذيرائي كردن از pazirâi-kardan az to receive, take care of; در غير اين صورت majâni gratis; در غير اين صورت dar qayr-e in surat otherwise; يدر کسې ارا درآوردن pedar-e kas-i-râ dar-âvordan to "get" somebody.

يعنى :diâr region ديار ;belâfâsele immediately بلافاصله ;binavâ miserable بينوا³

زنش از داخل حیاط فریاد زد «بابا جان، بیا پائین! میخواهی خون راهٔ بیندازی؟» ۱

-Y-

نیم کیلو گوشت گوسفند خریده بودم و از حاشیهٔ خیابان گلچین گلچین بطرف خانه میرفتم که دوستی به من رسید و بعد از خوش و بش و احوال پرسی، دیدم عینک طبی و به اصطلاح «ذره بینی» به چشم دارد. با تعجب گفتم «فلانی، مگر چشمهایت عیب و علتی پیدا کرده؟»

گفت «نه، یک چشمم کمی ضعیف شده بود و اشیارا درست نمیدید و روز نامه درست نمی خوانم. بناچار به چشمپزشک مراجعه کردم و معلوم شد که چشم چپم ضعیف شده و دکتر این عینکرا داد که به چشمم بزنم.» خداحافظی کرد و رفت.

بعد از رفتن دوستم احساس کردم یک چشم من هم ضعیف است. یعنی چه؟ تا چند لحظهٔ پیش که خوب بود. چطور ظرف چند ثانیه یکیاش ضعیف، شده؟ کمی فکر کردم که بدانم کدام چشمم ضعیف است. نتوانستم چیزی بفهمم. لاعلاج همانجا کنار پیادهرو ایستادم و پاکت گوشترا روی زمین

مياط¹ مياخان hayât courtyard; فرياد زدن faryâd-zadan to shout; باباجان bâbâ-jân address of endearment خون راه انداختن khun râh-andâkhtan to start a (blood) feud.

gusht meat; گوسفند ally; عليان المئة المئة المئة المئة المؤلفية المؤلفية المؤلفية المؤلفية المؤلفية المؤلفية المؤلفية المؤلفية golchin gingerly, carefully; عوش و بش khosh-o besh chit-chat; الموالية المؤلفية ahvâlporsi asking one's condition; عينك طبي aynak-e tebbi prescription glasses; اصطلاح be estelâh idiomatically, "as they say"; اصطلاح azarrebin magnifying glass; اصطلاح عيب ayb defect, fault; عيب ayb defect, fault; الميا ashyâ thing; فلاني ashyâ thing; الميا be nâchâr "there was nothing to be done but"; علم المؤلفة المؤلفة

گذاشتم. چشم چپمرا بستم و با چشم راست کلاغیرا که روی آنتن رادیوی پشت بام خانهٔ مقابل نشسته بود نشانه گرفتم. دیدم درست است. کلاغرا کاملاً می بینم. رنگش سیاه است. نوکش بقاعده است و پاهایش را هم خوب می بینم. خاطرم جمع شد که چشم راستم معیوب نیست و هر عیبی هست در جشم چپ است. ا

کف دستمرا گذاشتم روی چشم راست و با چشم چپ کلاغرا نشانه گرفتم. بی اختیار دلم فرو ریخت. سرم درد گرفت و شقیقه هایم شروع کرد به زدن. گردن کلاغ کوتاه شده بود، نوکشرا درست نمی دیدم، پاهایش محو بود و رنگش خاکستری. یعنی چه؟ دستپاچه شدم. فوری دستمرا از روی چشم راستم برداشتم و چشم چپمرا بستم. دیدم درست می بینم. کلاغ همان کلاغ اولی است، ولی مگر به این زودی امکان داشت که من دست از این آزمایش طبی بردارم؟

پاکت گوشترا روی زمین گذاشتم و به دیوار پیادهرو خیابان تکیه دادم و دیگر بدون اینکه از کف دستهایم کمک بگیرم، با بستن و باز کردن پلکهای چشمم شروع کردم به آزمایش کردن. از بد حادثه نمیدانم کلاغ مورد نشانه و آزمایش من از چه چیز ترسید که رم کرد و پرید و من ماندم بی نشانه. برای پیدا کردن هدف تازهای به تکاپو افتادم ولی از بس هول

احساس کردن المجان ehsâs-kardan to feel; يعنى چه ya'ni che? what does it mean?; الحظه lahze moment; غلوف غني sânie second; ثانيه sânie second; لاعلاج lâ'elâj = be nâchâr, see above; غلرف kenâr edge; ياده pîâderaw sidewalk; كنار pâket package; راست pâsteright; كنار pâket package; ياکن pâket package; مقابل posht-e bâm roof; مقابل posht-e bâm roof; نشانه گرفتن nuk beak; معيوب be qâ'ede as it should be; خاطرجمع شدن khâter jam'-shodan to be relieved; معيوب ma'yub faulty.

دل فرو ؛ biekhtiâr involuntarily بى اختيار ؛ biekhtiâr involuntarily كف دست ما فرو ؛ biekhtiâr involuntarily مريختن del foru-rikhtan for the heart to sink شقيقه shaqiqe temple; گردن gardan neck; هريختن محو pâ foot; محو mahv blurred; خاكسترى khâkestari gray با dastpâche-shodan to get nervous; فورى fawri immediately; آزمايش طبى âzmâyesh-e tebbi medical experiment.

از ;pelk eyelid پلک ;komak help کمک takye-dâdan be to lean against تکیه دادنaz bad-e hâdese as bad luck would have it; مورد نشانه az bad-e hâdese neshâne

شده بودم چشم راستم هم دیگر کار نمیکرد. بالاخره گنجشکی را که بفاصلهٔ سیصد متری روی سیم برق خیابان نشسته بود پیدا کردم و بلافاصله با چشم راست امتحان کردم. دیدم در گنجشک بودنش حرفی نیست ولی کمی ریزتر شد، و با چشم چپم که نگاه کردم روی سیم فقط یک نقطهٔ سیاه دیدم. اصلاً و ابداً شباهتی به گنجشک نداشت. مردی را که از کنارم میگذشت صدا کردم و گفتم «داداش، بی زحمت یک چشمت را ببند!»

مردک از همه جا بیخبر نگاه معنیداری به من کرد و قبل از اینکه به دستور من عمل کند و یک چشمشرا ببندد، با کمک دستهایش در جیبهایشرا محکم گرفت و بعد پرسید «چرا؟»۲

گفتم «تو چکار داری؟ ببند!»

مردک که به خیالش میخواهم یا جیبشرا بزنم یا یک چشمه از چشمبندیهای پروفسور شاندو و میرزا ملکم خانرا نشانش بدهم، روبروی من ایستاد و یک چشمشرا بست. گفتم «حالا پشتترا به من بکن و ببین آنطرف خیابان روی سیم چه میبینی؟» باز یکی دیگر از همان نگاههای معنی دار به من کرد و سرش را بطرفی که من نشان داده بودم گرداند و گفت «هیچی!»

that was the object of my aim; رم کردن *ram-kardan* to shy; پريدن paridan to fly off/away.

هدف المسلم hawl-shodan to be terrified; هول شدن hawl-shodan to be terrified; هدف المسلم المسلم andaf target; هول شدن المسلم الم

أ az hame jâ bikhabar "with no idea what's going on"; معنى دار "az hame jâ bikhabar "with no idea what's going on"; معنى دار "amal-kardan be to act on; حر جيب "amal-kardan be to act on" عمل کردن به dar-e jib pocket flap; محکم mohkam tight.

يک ;bbe khiầl-esh "as he thought"; بيدن بند بيالش be khiầl-esh "as he thought"; يك jib-zadan to pickpocket بيروفسور پروفسور پروفسور yek cheshme az cheshmbandihâ a sleight-of-hand trick; پروفسور Mirza Malkom Khan ميرزا ملكم خان Prof. Shandou, a famous magician in Iran; شاندو ميرزا ملكم خان sar gardândan to turn the head.

دیدم این مادرمرده از من کورتر است. پرسیدم «روی سیم چیزی نیست؟» گفت «نه.» گفتم «کور خدا! من با یک چشم سالمم میبینم. تو حطور نمی بینی؟!»

گفت «کور پدرت است! کور مادرت است! خوب، نمی بینم. مگر زور است؟» ٔ

یک چشممرا بستم و با چشم دیگرم روی سیمرا نگاه کردم. دیدم من هم چیزی نمی بینم. چشم مُعیو بمرا بستم و با چشم سالمم نگاه کردم. باز هم چیزی ندیدم. دستپاچه شدم که نکند هر دو چشمم معیوب شده.

مردک با عصبانیت گفت «آخر، مقصودت چیست؟ چه چیزرا میخواهی بینی؟» ۲

گفتم «گنجسكي روي آن سيم بود. حالا نمي بينمش.»

خودشرا کنار کشید و گفت «حتمًا پریده. گنجشک مال شما بود؟» گفتم «نه، من گنجشکم کجا بود؟» انگشت ایمایشرا کلنگی کرد و چند بار به بالای شقیقهاش کوبید و گفت «تو هم اگر عقل درستی داشتی، روزگارت بهتر از این بود» و راه افتاد.

از «عینک طبی» اثر خسرو شاهانی ٔ

-٣-

من یک روز گرم تابستان، دقیقًا یک سیزده مرداد، حدود ساعت سه و ربع

مادرمرده mâdarmorde "poor fellow"; کور خدا blind; کور خدا kur blind کور خدا sâlem sound, good; کور پدرت است sâlem sound, good سالم who's blind," an impolite rejoinder to the author's having called him a blind fool; مگر زور است؟ magar zur-ast? "Do I have to?"

[.] maqsud intent مقصود ; asabâniyat anger عصبانيت

^{3°} من گنجشکم کجا بود؟ man gonjeshk-am kojâ bud? "Where would I get a sparrow from?"; کولنگی کردن angosht-e imâ index finger; کولنگی کردن kolangi-kardan to crook; کولینگی دین kubidan to tap; عقل ruzgâr-et behtar bud "you'd be better off."

⁴خسرو شاهانی Khosraw-e Shâhâni Khosrow Shahani (1929–2002), journalist and humorous short-story writer.

کم بعد از ظهر عاشق شدم. تلخیها و زهر هجری که چشیدم بارها مرا به این فکر انداخت که اگر یک دوازدهم یا یک چهاردهم مرداد بود، شاید اینطور نمی شد. '

آن روز هم مثل هر روز، با فشار و زور و تهدید و کمی وعدههای طلائی برای عصر، مارا، یعنی من و خواهرم را، توی زیرزمین کرده بودند که بخوابیم. در گرمای شدید تهران خواب بعد از ظهر برای همهٔ بچهها اجباری بود. ولی آنروز هم ما مثل هر بعد از ظهر دیگر در انتظار این بودیم که آقا جان خوابش ببرد و برای بازی به باغ برویم. وقتی صدای خورخور آقاجان بلند شد، من سررا از زیر شمد بیرون آوردم و نگاهی به ساعت دیواری انداختم. ساعت دو و نیم بعد از ظهر بود. طفلک خواهرم در انتظار بخواب رفتن آقاجان خوابش برده بود. ناچار گذاشتم و تنها پاورچین بیرون آمدم.

لیلی دختر دائی جان و برادر کوچکش نیم ساعتی بود در باغ انتظار مارا می کشیدند. بین خانه های ما که در یک باغ بزرگ ساخته شده بود، دیواری وجود نداشت. مثل هر روز زیر سایهٔ درخت گردوی بزرگ بدون سر و صدا مشغول صحبت و بازی شدیم. یکوقت نگاه من به نگاه لیلی افتاد. یک جفت چشم سیاه درشت به من نگاه میکرد. نتوانستم نگاهمرا از نگاه او جدا کنم. هیچ نمیدانم چه مدت ما چشم در چشم هم دوخته بودیم که ناگهان مادرم با

ماشق شدن; daqiqan precisely عاشق شدن مندئ daqiqan precisely عاشق شدن asheq-shodan to fall in love; خشيدن zahr-e hajr pangs of separation; خشيدن cheshidan to taste; خشيدن kas-i-râ be fekr andâkhtan to make someone think.

ي va'de-ye ta-lâ'i promise of something nice; تهديد asr late afternoon; ووعدهٔ طلائی tu-ye in, inside; وهداړ'i promise of something nice; عصر asr late afternoon; زيرزمين tu-ye in, inside; عصر tu-ye in, inside; اجباری zirzamin basement; گرما garmâ heat; اجباری shadid severe; اجباری bâzi play; اجباری خورخور bâzi play; انتظار خورخور bâzi play; خورخور bâzi play; انتظار خورخور snoring; گذاشتم و آمدم shamad sheet; گذاشتم و آمدم por kid; گذاشتم و آمدم por kid; پاورچين pâvarchin on tiptoes.

انتظار کسی را کشیدن ; dear-irâ keshidan to انتظار کسی و انتظار کسی و افزانی جان dâi-jân "dear uncle"; انتظار کسی و sâye shade; درخت sâye shade; مایه sâye shade و بازی derakht tree; سرو صدا bedun-e without; سرو صدا bedun-e without; بازی pâzi play; الوقت و bedun-e without; یکوقت و yekvaqt all at once; جدا کردن dorosht huge; درشت joft pair; درشت jodâ-kardan to separate.

شلاق چندشاخهای بالای سر ما ظاهر شد. لیلی و برادرش به خانهٔ خود فرار

کردند و مادر تهدید کنان مرا به زیرزمین و زیر شمد برگرداند. قبل از اینکه سرم بکلی زیر شمد پنهان شود چشمم به ساعت دیواری افتاد. سه و ده دقیقه کم بعد از ظهر بود. مادر قبل از اینکه بنوبت خود سرش را زیر شمد کند، گفت «خدا رحمت کرد دائیت بیدار نشد وگرنه همه تان را تکه تکه میکرد.» مادرم حق داشت. دائی جان نسبت به دستوراتی که میداد خیلی تعصب داشت. دستور داده بود که بچهها قبل از ساعت پنج بعد از ظهر حتی نفس نباید بکشند. داخل چهاردیواری باغ نه تنها ما بچهها مزهٔ نخوابیدن بعد از ظهر و سر و صدا کردن در موقع خواب دائی جان را چشیده بودیم بلکه کلاغها و کبوترها هم کمتر در آن محدوده پیدایشان میشد چون دائی جان چند بار با تفنگ شکاری آنها را قلع و قمع کرده بود. فروشندگان دوره گرد هم تا حدود ساعت پنج از کوچهٔ ما که به اسم دائی جان موسوم بود عبور نمی کردند زیرا دو سه دفعه الاغی طالبی فروش و پیازی از دائی جان سیلی خورده بودند."

اما آن روز خاطر من سخت مشغول بود و اسم دائی جان خاطرات دعواها و اوقات تلخیهای اورا به یادم نیآورد. حتی یک لحظه از یاد چشمهای لیلی و نگاه او نمی توانستم فارغ شوم و به هر طرف می غلطیدم و به هر چیزی سعی

چه مدت cheshm dar chashm-e ham dukhte staring at each other; شلاق nâgahân suddenly; شلاق shallâq switch; خندشاخهای zâher-shodan to appear; ظاهر شدن farâr-kardan to run away; ظاهر شدن tahdid-kardan to threaten; فرار کردن penhân-shodan to disappear; نوبت nawbat turn; رحمت کردن rahmat-kardan to have mercy; تکه تکه کردن tekke-tekke-kardan to chop to pieces.

asstur حق داشتن - haqq-dâshtan to be right; نسبت به nesbat be in relation to; دستور dastur -ât order; نفس کشیدن ta'assob fanaticism; نفس کشیدن

adakhel-e within; عبزى را چشيدن مترهٔ چيزى را چشيدن متعدوبو chiz-i-râ cheshidan to have a taste of s.th.: مرو صدا كردن sarosedâ-kardan to make a racket; عبوت متعدوده kabutar pigeon; عبدایشان میشد mahdude limited (period); پیدایشان میشد paydâ-yeshân mishod "they were to be found"; قفنگ شكارى "tofang-e shekâri shotgun; قف qal'oqam'kardan to exterminate; قروشندهٔ دوره گرد forushande-ye dawregard house-to-house seller; غبور كردن kuche lane; موسوم به mawsum be named for; عبور كردن ولنالي عبور كردن ولائني zfrâ because; طالبي zfrâ because; طالبي piâzi onion seller; سيلي خوردن sili-khordan to get slapped.

می کردم فکر کنم چشمهای سیاه اورا روشن تر از آنکه واقعًا در برابرم باشد می دیدم. ا

شب باز توی پشه بند چشمهای لیلی به سراغم آمدند. عصر دیگر اورا ندیده بودم ولی چشمها و نگاه نوازشگرش آنجا بودند. نمیدانم چه مدت گذشت. ناگهان فکر عجیبی تمام مغزمرا فراگرفت: خدایا، نکند عاشق لیلی شده باشم! سعی کردم به این فکرم بخندم ولی هیچ خندهام نیامد. ممکن است آدم از یک فکر احمقانه خندهاش نگیرد ولی دلیل نمیشود که احمقانه نباشد. مگر ممکن است آدم اینطور بدون مقدمه عاشق شود؟

سعی کردم کلیهٔ اطلاعاتمرا دربارهٔ عشق بررسی کنم. متاسفانه این اطلاعات وسیع نبود. با اینکه بیش از سیزده سال از عمرم میگذشت، تا آن موقع یک عاشق ندیده بودم. کتابهای عاشقانه و شرح حال عشاق هم آنموقع خیلی کم چاپ شده بود. تازه نمی گذاشتند همهٔ آنهارا ما بخوانیم. پدر و مادر و بستگان، مخصوصًا دائی جان که سایهٔ وجودش و افکار و عقایدش روی سر همهٔ افراد خانواده بود، هر نوع خروج بدون محافظ از خانهرا برای ما بچهها منع میکردند و جرئت نزدیک شدن به بچههای کوچهرا نداشتیم. رادیو هم که خیلی وقت نبود افتتاح شده بود در دو سه ساعت برنامهٔ روزانهٔ رادیو هم که خیلی وقت نبود افتتاح شده بود در دو سه ساعت برنامهٔ روزانهٔ

lobel khâter mind; خاطرات khâterât memories; عود da'vâ fight; عاطرات awqât-talkhi bad mood; اوقات تلخى lahze moment; فارغ شدن از fâreq-shodan az to be free of; فارغ شدن از vâqe'an really, actually; در برابر dar barâbar-e opposite, in front of.

يه بند ye inside of; به سراغ کسی آمدن pasheband mosquito net; به سراغ کسی آمدن be sorâq-e kas-i âmadan to come in search of s.o., to look for s.o.; نوازشگر navâzeshgar caress-ing; نوازشگر farâ-gereftan to seize; غاشق کسی farâ-gereftan to seize; فراگرفتن âsheq-e kas-i shodan to fall in love with s.o.; غاشت خندیدن به dalil némishavad ke "that doesn't mean احمقانه; احمقانه moqaddame preliminaries.

barresi-مررسی کردن ! ettelâ' information عشق eshq love اطلاع ! kardan to inventory کلیه kardan to inventory متاسفانه ; mota'assefâne regrettably وسیع : vasi' vast مشاق vasi' oshshâq lover عشاق asheq pl عاشق asheq pl عاشق e asheq pl تازه ; tâsheqâne romantic تازه ; châp-shodan to be printed چاپ شدن ; tâze moreover

خود مطلب مهمي نداشت كه به روشن شدن ذهن كمك كند. ا

در مرور اطلاعاتم راجع به عشق، در وهلهٔ اول به لیلی و مجنون برخوردم که قصهاشرا بارها شنیده بودم. ولی هرچه زوایای مغزمرا کاوش کردم، دیدم چیزی راجع به طرز عاشق شدن مجنون به لیلی نشنیدهام. فقط میگفتند مجنون عاشق لیلی شد. ۲

اصلاً شاید بهتر بود در این بررسی پای لیلی و مجنون را به میان نمی کشیدم زیرا هماسم بودن لیلی و دختر دائی جان احتمالاً بدون اینکه خودم بدانم در استنتاجهای بعدیم مؤثر بود. اما چارهای نداشتم. مهمترین عشاق آشنایم همین لیلی و مجنون بودند. غیر از آنها از شیرین و فرهاد هم، مخصوصًا از طرز عاشق شدن آنها، چیز زیادی نمی دانستم. یک داستان عاشقانه هم که در پاورقی یک روزنامه چاپ شده بود خوانده بودم، ولی چند شمارهٔ اولش را نخوانده بودم و یکی از همکلاسی هایم برایم تعریف کرده بود. در نتیجه شروع ماجرارا نمی دانستم."

صدای دوازده ضربهٔ زنگ ساعت دیواری زیرزمین را شنیدم. خدایا، نصف شب شده بود و من هنوز نخوابیده بودم. این ساعت تا یادم میامد در خانهٔ ما بود و اولین بار بود که صدای زنگ ۱۲ شبرا میشنیدم. شاید این

afkår افكار fekr pl فكر afkår بستگان bastegån relatives; مخصوصًا afkår بستگان thought, idea; افراد aqide pl عقيده aqide pl عقيده fard pl فرد fard pl فرد aqide pl عقيده aqide pl عقيده bedun-e without; فرد khânevâde family; حرف khônevâde family خانواده mo-hâfez chaperone; منع كردن man'-kardan to forbid; جرثت داشتن jor'at-dâshtan to dare; منع كردن barnâme program; ذهن barnâme program; برنامه barnâme program; كمك كردن komak-kardan to help.

adar vahle-ye avval in the در وهملهٔ اول râje' be about; در وهملهٔ اول dar vahle-ye avval in the first instance; در اویه bar-khordan be to come across; قصه qesse story; زاویه zâvie وایا zavâyâ corner, recess طرز tarz manner.

get s.o. involved; پای کسیرا به میان کشیدن pâ-ye kas-i-râ be miân keshidan to get s.o. involved; إيرا zírâ because; هماسم ham-esm namesake; احتمالاً ehtemâlan probably; استنتاج estentâj conclusion; مؤثر ba'di later (adj.); مؤثر châre remedy; عیر از qayr az other than, aside from; داستان dâstân story; و pâvaraqi the bottom of a page of newsprint, where serialized novels were often printed; همکلاسی hamkelâsi classmate; همکلاسی dar natije as a result.

بیخوابی هم دلیلی بر عاشق شدنم بود. در نیمه تاریکی حیاط که از پشت توری پشه بند سایه های درختها و بته های گلرا بصورت اشباح عجیب و غریبی میدیدم وحشت برم داشته بود چون قبل از اینکه دربارهٔ عاشق شدن یا نشدنم به نتیجه برسم از سرنوشت عشاقی که مرور کرده بودم وحشت کردم. تقریباً همهٔ آنها سرنوشت غمانگیزی داشتند و ماجرا به مرگ و میر تمام شده بود. ا

لیلی و مجنون مرگ و میر، شیرین و فرهاد مرگ و میر، رومئو و ژولیت مرگ و میر، پل و ورژینی مرگ و میر، آن پاورقی عاشقانه مرگ و میر. خدایا نکند واقعًا عاشق شده باشم و من هم بمیرم! ۲ از «دائی جان نایلئون» اثر ایرج یزشکزاد ۳

-4-

یک روز صبح که از خواب بیدار شدم، وضع اطاق و خانهام را غیر از هر روز دیدم. شهری که من قبلاً در آن زندگی میکردم در منطقه ای بود که درخت خرما فقط در گلدانها نگهداری میشد و در زمستان هم حتمًا لازم بود آنها را با گلدانهای دیگر به گلخانه های سرپوشیده و اطاقهای محفوظ انتقال داد. ولی آنروز صبح وقتی بعادت مرسوم که قبل از بیرون آمدن از رختخواب، قدری

أمريه zarbe strike; نگ zang bell; بيخوابى bikhâbi sleeplessness; فريه dalil bar indication of; الريك târik dark; الميث hayât courtyard; تورى turi netting; عجيب و غريب be surat-e in the shape of; اشباح ashbâh phantoms; عجيب و غريب vahshat bar-dâshtan to terrify; وحشت برداشتن vahshat bar-dâshtan to terrify; به نتيجه sarnevesht fate; وحشت به مسرنوشت sarnevesht fate; مسرنوشت vahshat-kardan az to be terrified by; كودن از

مرگ و مير² marg-o mir death and dying; Pol-o Verzhini Paul and Virginie, a pair of youthful lovers in a story by de St.-Pierre; ناپلئون Nâpole'on (colloquial pronunciation Nâpel'on) Napoleon.

³ايرج پزشكزاد Iraj-e Pezeshkzâd Iraj Pezeshkzad (1928–), author and translator.

أخرما ; manteqe region منطقه ; qayr az other than منطقه manteqe region خرما ; وضع أن vaz' situation منطقه إلى منطقه إلى منطقه إلى منطقه goldân flower pot; منطقه negahdâri-shodan to be kept; منطقط golkhâne greenhouse; سرپوشيده sarpushide covered; انتقال وnteqâl-dâdan to move, transfer.

به انطرف و آنطرف غلت میزنم و خمیازه میکشم و به اطراف نگاه میکنم، از پنجره به بیرون نگاه کردم، چشمم بر نخلهای بلندی افتاد که در داخل حیاط، شاخههایش از باد تندی تکان میخورد و باز دورتر، سرهای درختان خرمای بسیار دیده میشد. نه، خواب نمی دیدم. مشغول تماشای فیلمی هم نبودم. من خودم بودم که از خواب بیدار شده بودم و با دو چشمم در عالم بیداری درختان نخل را در خارج می دیدم که شاخههایشان از وزش باد میلرزید و صدای خش و خش آن به گوش من میرسید.

خانهام محوطهٔ بزرگی بود که بیشتر به یک باغ متروک و فراموششده شباهت داشت که یک ساختمان پهن با یک ردیف ستون چهارگوش و کوتاه در وسط آن قرار داشت که کف اطاقهای آن با زمین حیاط برابر بود." زمینی که دور تا دور آن ساختمان بود شاید در چندین سال قبل باغچهبندی شده بود که تنها درختان قابل ذکر آن همین نخلها بودند که بدنهای کلفت و گرهدارشان با الیاف قهوهای رنگ، مانند ستونهائی، اینجا و آنجا دیده میشد. در گوشهٔ باغ هم نزدیک سوراخی که در پای دیوار قرار داشت و شاید محل ورود یا خروج آب بود چند درخت کج و معوج که شاخههایشان بطرف زمین خم شده بود خودنمائی میکرد. در باغچهها علفهای خودرو بسیار روئیده بود و مثل بیابانی بود که علفهای بهاریش از تابش آفتاب سوزان تابستان

أبعادت مرسوم be âdat-e marsum as usual; غلت زدن qalt-zadan to toss and turn; غلت زدن khamyâze-keshidan to yawn; نخل nakhl date palm.

she- همباهت داشتن به matruk abandoned; متروک matruk abandoned; محوطه shebâhat-dâshtan be to resemble; بهن pahn wide, low; رديف radif row; ستون sotun column; قرار داشتن qarâr-dâshtan to وسط qarâr-dâshtan to be situated; قرار داشتن barâbar level.

مور تا دور تا د

خشكيده باشد.

از «مرزبان» اثر رضا بابامقدم

-۵-

او توی رختخواب که افتاد و به عادت همیشه روزنامه و مدادرا دست گرفت، دید که نمی تواند جدول را حل کند. توی گوشش زنگ میزد و جدول با خانه های سفید و سیاهش که هر دو براق بود و با نور آزاردهندهای میدرخشید چشمش را میزد. نگاهش روی روزنامه بود، اما قیافه های تهرانی ها و مرتضی خان و خنده ها و حرفهای مسخره شان را میدید و میشنید. تهرانی ها و مرتضی خان و خنده ها و حرفهای مسخره شان را میدید و میشنید. میدانست که این کارش به نظر آنها چه اندازه بی معنی و پوچ و ابلها نه است و باز میدانست که جز این، کار دیگری از دستش بر نمی آید. مثل اینکه به آنها یا خودش لج کرده باشد، تصمیم گرفت جدول را تا خانهٔ آخر حل کند. از همهٔ کارهای دنیا تنها این کار از دست او بر می آمد و او میخواست به خودش ثابت کند که دست کم از عهدهٔ این کار بر می آید. آ

gushe corner; سوراخ surâkh hole; گوشه mahall place; ورود vorud entrance; ورود khoruj exit; صحور kaj-o mo'avvaj crooked; خم شدن kham-shodan to be bent over; کج و معوب khodnomâi-kardan to display oneself; علف alaf weed; علف khodru wild; عودرو ruidan to grow; بهار biâbân wilderness; بهار bahâr spring; سوزان aftâb sun; افتاب tâbesh heat; تابش khoshkidan to dry out.

مرزبان² marzbân border guard; رضا بابامقدم Rezâ Bâbâ-Moqaddam Reza Baba-Moghaddam (1915–1989).

 $be\ \hat{a}dat$ بعادت همیشه باین به $be\ \hat{a}dat$ بعادت همیشه باین به $be\ \hat{a}dat$ باین به $be\ \hat{a}dat$ باین به $be\ \hat{a}dat$ باین به $be\ \hat{a}dat$ pencil; مداد به $be\ \hat{a}dat$ puzzle; مداد به $be\ \hat{a}dat$ puzzle باین به $be\ \hat{a}dat$ puzzle باین $be\ \hat{a}dat$ puzzle $be\ \hat$

ابلهانه ; nazar view, opinion بوج , bima'ni meaningless بي بوله silly; ابلهانه ; ablahâne stupid; کار از دست برآمدن kâr az dast bar-âmadan to be capable of doing s.th.; کار از دست المهانه tasmim-gereftan to decide; تصميم گرفتن tasmim-gereftan to decide; الج کردن sâbet-kardan to prove; از عهده برآمدن az ohde bar-âmadan to accomplish.

با سماجت شرح خانه هارا میخواند و به مغزش فشار میآورد. میخواست کلمهٔ صحیحرا حدس بزند و جدول را با اشتباههای خودش کثیف و سیاه زکند. اما کلمه های گوناگون مثل اخگرهائی که از ذغال افروخته میجهد، از گوشه و کنار ذهنش می پرید و پیش از آنکه او بتواند آنهارا بگیرد یا ببیند خاموش میشد. اسرش گیج میرفت. زنگ گوشش زننده و آزاردهنده شده بود. پلکهایش سنگین میشد و بهم میرفت. و او که میکوشید آنهارا باز نگهدارد، درد تحمل ناپذیری تخم چشمش را بیرون میکشید. تمام تنش سست شده بود و نزدیک بود رویهم وا برود. دستهایش که روزنامه و مدادرا گرفته بود تیر میکشید. میخواست روزنامه و مدادرا ول کند و خودش را شل و بیحال زمین بیندازد. ا

گیج و بی تاب و کلافه شده بود. مثل اینکه اورا با زنجیر بسته بودند و از همه طرف می کشیدند. یکباره با بیچارگی به گریه افتاد. هق و هق گریه میکرد. روی خودش خم شده بود و شانههایش میلرزید و دانههای اشک از زیر عینکش راه می افتاد و روی خانههای جدول می چکید و پخش میشد و رنگ جوهررا ظاهر میکرد."

حس میکرد که در این دنیا به درد هیچ کاری نمیخورد و باطل و بیهوده

samâjat obstinacy; شرح sharh explanation; مغز maqz brain; فشار آوردن fe-shâr-âvordan to apply pressure; كلمه kalime word; صحيح sahih correct; اشتباه esh-tebâh mistake; استباه إغراقيون gunâgun various; كلمه akhgar spark اخگر akhgar spark افروختن afrukhtan to light; (عاب jastan/jeh- to jump; كنار kenâr edge; جستن (جه paridan to fly.

be-ham-raftan to spin; پلک pelk eyelid; سنگین sangin heavy; بهم رفتن be-ham-raftan to go together, close; سنگین kushidan to try; تحمل ناپذیر tahammolnâ-pazir unendurable; تخم چشم sost weak; تن tan body; تخم چشم tokhm-e cheshm eyeball; تنز tan body; وارفتن ruyeham vâ-raftan to collapse; ول کردن tir-keshidan to tingle; تیر کشیدن bihâl listless.

هق و ; zanjir chain زنجير ; kalâfe impatient كلافه , bitâb weak هق و ; kalâfe impatient زنجير ; anjir chain كلافه , beqq-o heqq gerye-kardan to sob هق گريه كردن , kham-shodan to bend over هق گريه كردن , shâne shoulder چاكيدن , dâne-ye ashk teardrop دانهٔ اشك , chekidan to drip شانه pakhsh-shodan to spread كردن , jawhar ink ظاهر كردن , zâher-kardan to make dark.

است. هیچ کاری بلد نبود و کارهای پیش پا افتاده ای هم که میدانست تازه نمی توانست از عهده اش برآید یا از آن استفاده ای کند که زندگیش اندکی راحت تر یا دلپذیر تر بشود. دلش میخواست یک نفر بود که سر بر شانه اش بگذارد و تا آنجا که میتواند گریه کند، و او نوازشش کند و دلداریش بدهد. اما هیچکس را نداشت.

زنش هم که کمی آنطرفتر با دهان باز خوابیده بود و نفسهای بلند پرصدا میکشید چنان غرق خواب بود که از صدای گریهٔ او هم بیدار نشد. تنها بود، نشسته بود و تنها و بیچاره زار می گریست. در آخر روزنامه و مداد از دستش افتاد و پلکهای او با خستگی و سنگینی بهم رفت. و پیش از آنکه کاملاً بخواب برود فقط توانست عینکشرا از چشمش بردارد.

از «جدول كلمات متقاطع» اثر فريدون تنكابني ً

-9.

مرد پس از اینکه نماز ظهررا در مسجد بزرگ بازار خواند بیرون آمد و راهی را گرفت و به یکی از محلههای شهر رفت. بچهها از اینکه موجود ناشناس و عجیبی را می دیدند که همه چیزش برایشان تازگی داشت خوشحال شدند و دنبالش راه افتادند. و چند دلقک و معرکه گیر هم که کارشان به کسادی کشیده بود به خیال آنکه میتوانند از وجود او برای گرمی بازار خودشان استفاده ای ببرند به آنها پیوستند. آدمهای کنجکاو هم طبیعة از

پیش پا; bihude futile بیهوده; bâtel useless باطل bâtel useless حس کردن¹ باطل bish-e pâ oftâde trivial; باطن tâze moreover افتاده pish-e pâ oftâde trivial; راحت tâze moreover; افتاده râhat comfortable; دلبذیر delpazir pleasant; نوازش کردن navâzesh-kardan to comfort; دلداری دادن deldâri-dâdan to console.

²نفس *nafas* breath; زار گریستن *qarq-e khâb* fast asleep; زار گریستن zâr geristan to weep bitterly.

فريدون ; jadval-e kalemât-e motaqâte' crossword puzzle جدول كلمات متقاطع ^E Feraydun-e Tankâboni Fereidoun Tankaboni (b. 1937), writer of satirical prose.

masjed mosque; محله masjed mosque; محله masjed mosque محله mahalle quarter; محله mawjud being; ناشناس nâshenâs unfamiliar; عجيب ajib strange;

روی کنجکاوی و گداها، شاید به علت احساسی که از مشترک بودن سرنوشت خودشان و این فقیر تازه وارد که اندکی هم دیوانه می نمود می کردند، به حلقهٔ این جمع درآمدند. مرد جوان نمیدانست با آنها چه کند. با خودش میگفت «مسلم است که یکتنه از پس آنها برنمیآیم و هرچه بگویم جری تر خواهند شد.» این بود که تصمیم گرفت پرروئی و ایستادگی کند و به کارشان کاری نداشته باشد. باز به هرکس میرسید سراغ شیخ بهائی و خانهٔ اورا میگرفت و میگفت کار واجبی با او دارد. '

چند جایکی دو نفر به خیال افتادند که اورا گول بزنند. خودشان یا دیگری را «شیخ بهائی» نامیدند، اما خنده و هیاهوی خیل بیکارهها و تماشاگران کاررا خراب کرد، و مرد جوان باز با سماجت و خونسردی در هر خانه را می کوفت و جلو هر کسرا می گرفت و سؤالش را تکرار می کرد. کانه را به کوچهٔ تنگ و باریکی رسید که چند دهاتی فقیر و لاغر میوههایشان را که روی خرهای لاغرتر از خودشان گذاشته بودند برای فروش عرضه می داشتند. راه بند آمده بود. همه ایستادند. مرد جوان به پیر مردی که میوه می خرید نزدیک شد. از او خواهش کرد که به سؤالش جواب بدهد.

بحهها و بیکارهها از بشت سر او به جلو خیره شدند. چند نفر سرک

معرکه گیر dalqak clown, buffoon; دنبال دانیک dalqak clown, buffoon; معرکه گیر be khiâl-e ânke thinking, imagining that; کساه vojud existence; گرمسی بازار garmi-e bâzâr briskness of market; گرمسی بازار payvastan/payvand- be to join.

son; تبیعة allat reason; تبیعة achi'atan naturally; گدا gadâ beggar; تبیعة sarnevesht fate; احساس sarnevesht fate; سرنوشت sarnevesht fate; مسلم moshtarek in common; مسلم faqir poor; مسلم pari balqe ring; مسلم halqe ring; مسلم jam' group; مسلم bar-âmadan az pas-e to برآمدن از پس bar-âmadan az pas-e to يكتنه bar-âmadan az pas-e to get through; يكتنه jari bold; پرروئى كردن porrui-kardan to be bold; ايستادگى كردن sorâq-e kas-i-râ gereftan سراغ كسىرا گرفتن sorâq-e kas-i-râ gereftan to ask the whereabouts of someone; واجب vâjeb urgent.

² كول زدن gul-zadan to fool; ناميدن nâmidan to name, call; هياهو hayâhu uproar, commotion; ناميدن khayl crowd; خونسردى tamâshâgar onlooker; تماشاگر khunsardi composure; خونسرد كوب kuftan/kub- to pound, knock; جلو كسى را گرفتن إولانت tekrâr-kardan to repeat.

کشیدند.' در یکی دو خانه باز و بسته شد و بعد جمعیت، مثل برفی که آب شود، به پراکندگی رفت. بچهها که دیگر قضیه برایشان شیرینی و لطفی نداشت به خرهای دهاتیها هجوم آوردند و به غارت میوهها مشغول شدند. معرکه گیرها از فرصت استفاده کردند و در یک گوشهٔ فراخ و وسیع کوچه بساط خودرا بر پا کردند که تا دیر نشده و مردم به خانههایشان نرفتهاند کاری انجام بدهند.'

از «اذان غروب» اثر بهرام صادقی

-٧-

من در یک چادر سیاه به دنیا آمدم. روز تولدم مادیانی را دور از کرهٔ شیری نگاه داشتند تا شیهه بکشد. در آن ایام اجنّه و شیاطین از شیههٔ اسب وحشت داشتند. هنگامی که به دنیا آمدم و معلوم شد که بحمد الله پسرم و دختر نیستم، پدرم تیر تفنگ به هوا انداخت. من زندگانی را در چادر با تیر تفنگ و شیههٔ اسب آغاز کردم.

الاغر , bârik narrow, thin; باریک , bârik narrow, thin; کوچه bâqar skinny; بندآمدن , khar donkey عرضه داشتن , arze-dâshtan to display خر , band-âmadan to come to a standstill; خواهش کردن از , khâhesh-kardan az to beg, entreat واهش کردن از , jelaw front, forward; سرک کشیدن , khire-shodan to stare سرک کشیدن , sarak-keshidan to poke one's head out.

² به پراکندگی رفتن ; be parâkandegi raftan to scatter به پراکندگی رفتن ; be parâkandegi raftan to scatter جمعیت qaziye affair; غارت ; hojum-âvordan to attack هـجـوم آوردن ; forsat opportunity فرصت ; farâkh broad فرصت ; بساط بر پا ; besât bar pâ kardan to set up shop.

اذان غروب³ azân-e qorub evening call to prayer; بهرام صادقى Bahram-e Sâdeqi Bahram Sadeghi (1936–1983).

بادر châdor tent; چادر be donyâ âmadan to be born; چادر tavallod birth; شيه خشيدن be donyâ âmadan to be born; كره mâdiân mare; كره shiri unweaned; كره shiri unweaned; ماديان shihe-keshidan to neigh; شيط ayyâm days; اجنه jenni pl اجنه ajenne djinn; ايام shaytân pl اجنه shayâtin demon; مياطين vahshat-dâshtan az to be terrified by; وحشت داشتن از hangâm-i ke at the time when; معلوم شدن ma'lum shodan to be known, to be discovered; هوا be hamdellâh with thanks to God; تير انداختن tofang gun, rifle; هوا havâ air; غاز كردن havâ air; هوا âqâz-kardan to begin.

در چهارسالگی پشت قاش زین نشستم. چیزی نگذشت که تفنگ خفیف به دستم دادند. تا ده سالگی حتی یک شب هم در شهر و خانهٔ شهری به سر نبردم. ا

ایل ما در سال دو مرتبه از نزدیکی شیراز میگذشت. دستفروشان و دوره گردان شهر بساط شیرینی و حلوا در راه ایل میگستردند. پول نقد کم بود. من از کسانم پشم و کشک میگرفتم و دلی از عزا در میآوردم. مزهٔ آن شیرینیهای باد و باران خورده و گرد و غبار گرفتهرا هنوز زیر دندان دارم.

از شنیدن اسم شهر قند در دلم آب می شد و زمانی که پدرم و سپس مادرمرا به تهران تبعید کردند تنها فرد خانواده که خوشحال و شادمان بود من بودم. نمی دانستم که اسب و زینمرا می گیرند و پشت میز و نیمکت مدرسهام می نشانند. نمی دانستم که تفنگ مشقی قشنگمرا می گیرند و قلم به دستم می دهند."

پدرم مرد مهمی نبود. اشتباهًا تبعید شد. مادرم هم زن مهمی نبود. او هم اشتباهًا تبعید شد. دار و ندار ما هم اشتباهًا به دست حضرات دولتی و ملتی به یغما رفت. أ

چیزی ;qâsh-e zin saddle horn قاش زین ;chahârsâlegi the age of four چهارسالگی chiz-i naguzasht ke it was no time at all before نگذشت که be sar bordan to live.

dastforush peddler; عربه گرد (گستر) اtribe; دستفروش martabe time; مرتبه dastforush peddler; عربه العنان الله besât-gostardan/gostar- to spread out a carpet; شیرینی shirini sweets, candy; بساط گستردن العسم halvâ helva, a sweet concoction; پشم naqd cash; منان عزا درآوردن del-i az kashk dried yoghurt used in cooking; العنان عزا درآوردن maze zir-e dandân مزه زیر دندان داشتن maze zir-e dandân dâshtan to have a taste in one's mouth; باد و باران خورده باران خورده bâd o bârân khorde wind-swept and rained on; گر د و غبار گرفته gard o qobâr gerefte covered with dust.

قند در دل آب شدن qand dar del $\hat{a}b$ -shodan for sugar to melt in the heart, to "jump for joy"; زمانی که zam $\hat{a}n$ -i ke when; سپس sepas then, later; تبعید کردن tab 'id-kardan to exile; اسب tab individual; شاده tab horse; شادمان tab inimkat bench; ام می نشانند tab ta

⁻haza طفرات ;dâr o nadâr possessions دار و ندار adâr o nadâr possessions اشتباهًا adâr o nadâr possessions حضرات به یغما رفتن ;mellati national ملتی ;dawlati governmental دولتی adalati povernmental

دوران تبعید ما بسیار سخت گذشت و بیش از یازده سال طول کشید. چیزی نمانده بود که در کوچهها راه بیفتیم و گدایی کنیم. مأموران شهربانی مراقب بودند که گدایی هم نکنیم. از مال و منالمان خبری نمی رسید. خرج بیخ گلویمان را گرفته بود. در آغاز کار، کلفت و نوکر داشتیم ولی هر دوی آنان همین که هوارا پس دیدند گریختند و مارا به خدا سپردند.

برای کسانی که در کنار گواراترین چشمهها چادر می افراشتند، آب انبار آنروزی تهران مصیبت بود. برای کسانی که به آتش سرخبن و بلوط خو گرفته بودند زغال منقل و نفت بخاری آفت بود. برای کسانی که فارس زیبا و پهناور میدان تاخت و تازشان بود زندگی در یک کوچهٔ تنگ و خاک آلود مرگ و نیستی بود. برای مادرم که سراسر عمرش را در چادر باز و پر هوای عشایری به سر برده بود تنفس در اطاقکی محصور دشوار و جانفرسا بود. برایش در حیاط چادر زدیم و فقط سرمای کشنده و برف زمستان بود که توانست اورا به چهارد بواری اطاق بکشاند."

be yaqmâ raftan to be plundered.

گدائی ; kuche lane کوچه ; لوردان الاله dawrân period; مأمور ; gedâi-kardan to beg کردن مراقب ; ma'mur agent شهربانی ; shahrbâni police مأمور ; morâqeb watchful, surveilling; مال و منال mâl o manâl possessions; خرج khabar news; خرج bikh-e gelu gereftan to have by the throat; کلفت ; hawkar manservant; حرب ماله hamin-ke as soon as نوکر وارا پس دیدن (گرین شرور اله مین که به hamin-ke as soon as گریختن (گریخ و اله مین مین که به khodâ didan to see a change for the worse in the weather; ومتر اله اله khodâ God; سیردن (سیار) sepordan/sepâr- to entrust.

چادر; govârâ palatable; چشمه cheshme spring; چادر; govârâ palatable; چشمه cheshme spring; چادر; از وازاز) در د شان در شان در افران در شان در

ashâyeri سراسر عمر sarâsar-e omr whole life long; پرهوا porhavâ airy; عمراله ashâyeri tribal; عنفس tanaffos breathing; محصور mahsur enclosed, confined; تنفس jânfarsâ debilitating; محالفرسا hayât courtyard; چادر زدن châdor-zadan to pitch a tent; سرما sarmâ cold; چهار ديواري chahârdivârî an area defined by four walls; كشانيدن keshânidan to

از «بخارای من ایل من» اثر محمد بهمن بیگی ٔ

-۸-

گنبد طلائی باشکوهی با منارههای قشنگش پدیدار شد و گنبد آبی دیگری قرینهٔ آن نمایان گردید که میان خانههای گلی مثل وصلهٔ ناجور بود. ۲

نزدیک غروب بود که کاروان وارد خیابانی شد که دو طرفش دیوارهای خرابه و دکانهای کوچک بود. در اینجا ازدحام مهیبی بر پا شد: عربهای پاچهورمالیده، صورتهای احمق فینه بسر، قیافههای آب زیر کاه، عمامهای، با ریشها و ناخنهای حنابسته و سرهای تراشیده تسبیح میگردانیدند و با نعلین و عبا و زیرشلواری قدم میزدند. آزبان فارسی حرف میزدند، یا ترکی بلغور میکردند، یا عربی از بیخ گلو و از توی رودههایشان درمیآمد و در هوا غلغل میزد. زنهای عرب با صورتهای خال کوبیدهٔ چرک و چشمهای واسوخته حلقه از پرهٔ بینیشان گذرانده بودند. یکی از آنها پستان سیاهشرا تا نصفه در دهن بچهٔ کثیفی که در بغلش بود فرو کرده بود. آ

drag.

محمد بهمن بيگى ;il tribe ايل Bokhârâ Bukhara, city in modern Uzbekistan; ايل il tribe بخارا Mohammad-e Bahmanbaygi Mohammad Bahmanbegi (b. 1920), a Qashqai educator and founder of the tent-school system in tribal areas in Iran.

² گنبد gombad dome; مناره bâshokuh splendid; باشکوه bâshokuh splendid; مناره menâre minaret; بديدار شدن padidâr-shodan to come into view; پديدار شدن ġarine twin; تاجور vasle patch; وصله vasle patch; ناجور nâjur inappropriate, wrong.

وروب (عروب sunset; ازدحام bar pâ shodan to arise; ازدحام pâchevarmâlide impudent; باچه ورماليده pâchevarmâlide impudent; باچه ورماليده pâchevarmâlide impudent; باچه ورماليده pâchevarmâlide impudent; باچه ورماليده ahmaq stupid احمق fine fez; صورت âb zir-e kâh sly, sneaky; باخن rishe beard; ريشه rishe beard; مامه مامه المعامه تراشيدن rishe beard; مامه تابيته tasbih rosary, worry beads; تراشيدن raîlayn sandals; قدم زدن abâ cloak; علين adaam-zadan to walk about.

روده; bikh-e galu depths of the throat; بيخ گلو bikh-e galu depths of the throat; بلغور كردن rude bowel; علل زدن polqol-zadan to make a racket; خال كوبيدن khâl-kubidan to tattoo; خال كوبيدن pare-ye واسوخته wâsukhte bleary; عرك pare-ye bini nostril; يارهُ بينى pestân breast; تا نصفه tâ nesfe half way; فرو كردن baqal lap; تا نصفه foru-kardan to shove down.

این جمعیت به انواع گوناگون جلب مشتری میکرد: یکی نوحه میخواند، یکی سینه میزد، یکی مهر و تسبیح و کفن متبرک میفروخت، یکی جن میگرفت، یکی دعا مینوشت، یکی هم خانه کرایه میداد.'

جهودهای قبادراز از مسافران طلا و جواهر میخریدند. جلو قهوه خانهای عربی نشسته بود، انگشت در بینیش کرده بود و با دست دیگرش چرک لای انگشتهای پایش را درمیآورد و صورتش از مگس پوشیده شده بود و شپش از سرش بالا میرفت.

کاروان که ایستاد، مشدی رمضان و حسین آقا جلو دویدند، کمک کردند، خانم گلین و عزیز آقارا از کجاوه پائین آوردند. جمعیت زیادی به مسافران هجوم آوردند. هر تکه از چیزهایشان بدست یکنفر بود و آنهارا بخانهٔ خودشان دعوت میکردند. ولی درین میان عزیز آقا گم شد. هرچه دنبالش گشتند، از هرکه پرسیدند، بیفایده بود."

بالاخره، بعد از آنکه خانم گلین و حسین آقا و مشدی رمضان یک اطاق کثیف گلی از قرار شبی هفت روپیه کرایه کردند، دوباره به جستجوی عزیز آقا رفتند. تمام شهررا زیر پا کردند. از کفشدار و از زیارتنامهخوانها یکی یکی سراغ عزیز آقارا بنام و نشانی گرفتند. ٔ اثری از او بدست نیامد. آخر

gunâgun various; جلب کردن jalb-kardan گوناگون gunâgun various; جمعیت jalb-kardan to attract; نوحه خواندن moshtari customer; نوحه خواندن nawhe-khândan to wail, lament; مشتری sine breast; جن mohr seal; کفن kafan shroud; متبرک motabarrek blessed; کفن kerâye-dâdan to ځوانده وایمه کون په دادن jenn-gereftan to exorcise demons; کونت kerâye-dâdan to rent out.

مسافر jahud Jew; قبادراز qabâdarâz long-cloaked; مسافر mosâfer traveler; جهود gold; جواهر javâher jewel; قهوه خانه javâher jewel; جواهر jayâher jewel; خاهر jagosht finger; انگشت jagosht finger; الاي bini nose; از سر بالا shepesh lice; شپش shepesh lice; مگس az sar bâlâ raftan to crawl up the head.

مشدی رمضان Mashdi Ramazân masc. proper name; خانم dawidan to run; مشدی رمضان Khânom Galin fem. proper name; عزیزآقا Aziz-Âqâ fem. proper name; کجاوه ka-jâve camel-litter in which women ride; هـجـوم آوردن بـه hojum-âvordan be to attack; تکه tekke piece.

az qarâr-e at the rate of; ووبيه rupie rupee (unit of currency formerly used in Iraq; this story is set at the shrine of Imam Husayn in Kerbela); كفشدار kafshdâr mosque attendant who guards shoes; زيار تنامه خوان ziâratnâmekhân cleric hired to re-

وقت بود، صحن کمی خلوت شد. خانم گلین برای نهمین بار داخل حرم شد و دید که دستهای زن و آخوند دور زنی گرد آمدهاند که بقفل ضریح چشبیده آنرا میبوسد و فریاد میزند. ا

cite the ritual at a shrine; نشانی neshâni description.

حرم; sahn courtyard صحن asar trace; آخر وقت âkher-e vaqt late in the day آخر وقت sahn courtyard; صحرم haram sanctuary; صحن âkhond cleric, mulla; گردآمدن دور gerd-âmadan dawr-e to gather around; قردآمدن دور zarih grate that surrounds a saint's tomb; خسبیدن faryâd-zadan to cry فریاد زدن busidan to kiss; فریاد زدن faryâd-zadan to cry out.

اصرار² sayyedoshshohadâ "lord of martyrs," title of Imam Husayn.

ashk tear; جمله sarâzir rolling down; سرازیر ashk tear اشک sarâzir rolling down; جمله و galyân water pipe, hookah; چاقی کردن چاق کردن châq-kardan to puff on a water pipe to get it going; شرط کردن shart-kardan to stipulate; سرگذشت sargozasht adventure; شرط کردن injur thus.

أمرزش; âmorzesh forgiveness طلب sâdeq-e طلب Sâdeq-e طلب Sâdeq-e Hedâyat Sadegh Hedayat (1903–1951), one of the foremost writers of modern Persian prose.

نمونه ای چند از نثر کلاسیک Examples of
Classical Persian
فارسی
Prose

-1-

د شهری مردی درزی بر دروازه شهر دو کان داشتی بر در گورستان، و کوزهٔ در میخی آویخهٔ بود و بهوسش آن بودی که هر جنازهٔ که از در شهر بیرون بردندی وی سکی در آن کوزه افکندی و بهوسش آن بودی که هر جنازهٔ که از در شهر بیرون بردند و آن کوزه را شی کر دی و باز شی سربی حالب آن سکها کر دی که چند کس بیرون بردند و آن کوزه را شی کر دی و باز شک در بهی افکندی. تا روزگاری برآمد، درزی نیز برد. مردی بطلب درزی آمد و خبر مرک او نداشت. در دوکانش بسته دید جمعی ایهٔ اورا پرمید که «این درزی کجاست که حاضر مرک او نداشت. در دوکانش بسته دید جمعی ایهٔ اورا پرمید که «این درزی کجاست که حاضر میت به جمایه کیک اوس (در سال ۲۷۵ بجری) ا

-4-

گویند روزی نوشروان عادل برنشهٔ بود و با خاصگیان بشک ر میرفت و برکنار دهی گذر کرد. پیری را دید نودسالد که کوز در زمین مینثاند نوشروان را عجب آمد زیرا که بیست سال کوز کشهٔ بر میدمد گفت «ای پیر، کوز می کاری ؟» گفت «آری، خدایک ان» گفت «چندان بخوامی زیست که برش بخوری ؟» پیرگفت «کشند و خوردیم و کاریم و خورند» "

م المدون المنافع المنافعة الم

² قابوسنامه *Qâbusnâme*, a book of counsel written in 475/1082 by Amir Onsorol-ma'âli Kaykâus for his son; تأليف *ta'lif* composition.

Nushervân Anosharvan, title of the Sassanian king Chosroës I, r. A.D. نـــوشـــروان³ الماروان 351–351 مادل: bar-neshastan to mount; عادل شاروان khâssegiân elite;

نوشروان را خوش آمد گفت «زه!» در وقت خزینه داررا گفت تا هزار درم به پیر

إو

سرگفت «ای خداوند، بیچک زودتر از بنده بر این کوز نخورد.» کفت «چکونه؟» پر گفت «اکر من کوز نکشتی و خدایک ان ایجاً گذر نکر دی، آنچ بینده رسد نرسدی و بنده آن جواب ندادی، من این هزار درم از کها یافتی ؟» نوشروان گفت «زازه!» خزیندار در وقت دو هزار درم دیگر بدو داد بهر آنکه دو بار «زه» بر زبان نوشروان رفت!

از ساستنامهٔ خواجه نظام اللک

آورده اند که بازرگانی بود اندکنایه، و میخواست که سفری کند صد من آبن داشت. در خانهٔ دوستی بر سبیل و دیعت نهاد و برفت. چون آمد امین و دیعت را بفروخته بود و بها خرج کرده. بازرگان روزی بطلب آبن بنزدیک او رفت. مرد گفت «آبن تو در بیغولهٔ خانه بنهاده بودم و اختیاطی تام بکرده. آنجا سوراخ موش بود تا من واقف شدم تام بخورده بود.»

شکار shekâr hunt; گرز کردن بر kas-i-râ ajab-âmadan for someone to be astonished; گرز kas-i-râ ajab-âmadan for someone to be astonished; کسی زیراکه غیرت زیراکه غیرت نیراکه غیرت نیراکه bar-dâdan to yield fruit; بردادن ay O (vocative); آری غیرت خدایگان غیر نیراکه khodâyegân great lord; خدایگان zistan/zi- to live.

de-ram drachma; درم ; bande slave, for "I"; خزینددار دوقت ; khazinedâr treasurer بنده أشجر anch archaic spelling for بنده; bande slave, for "I"; چگونه ; chegune how? أنچ janch archaic spelling for بهر آنكه ; bahr-e ânke because زبان zabân tongue.

²سياستنامه Siâsatnâme, a book of counsel for princes written by Khâje Nezâmolmolk (d. 1092).

سفر کردن; *bâzargân* merchant; اندکمایه andakmâye of little capital, petty; سفر کردن safar-kardan to take a trip; من man maund (weight); بر سبیل bar sa-

مازرگان حواب داد که «راست ممکونی، موش آین ر خانب دن آمن قادر باشد» ا امین «راست کار» شاد شد، معنی بنداشت که مازرگان نرم کشت و دل از آن برداشت. کفت «امروز بخانهٔ من مهان باش.» گفت «فردا باز آیم.» رفت و حون بسر کوی رسد بسری را از آن او سرد و پنسان کر د. حون بجتند و ندا در شهر دادند، بازرگان «من مازی دیدم که کودک میسرد.» امین فریاد برداشت که «دروغ و محال پیرا میکوئی ؟ بازرگان بخدید و گفت «در شری که موش صد من آین تواند خورد، مازی کودکی را تمقدار ده من سر تواند کر فت.» . وَ دَمنُه بِراشَاہِی (در حدود ۵۳۸ه/۱۱۴۳م)، ترحمهٔ الوالمعالی نصرالله

bil-e in the way of, for; وديعت vadi'at safekeeping; (نهادن (نه nehâdan/neh- to place; نهادن (نه amin trustee; بيغوله bahâ price; امين bayqule/

biqule pit; موش surâkh hole; سوراخ ehtiât-kardan to take precaution; موش surâkh hole; موش mush mouse; واقف vâqef aware.

 1 سخت sakht very much, extremely; دندان $dand\hat{a}n$ tooth; خائیدن $kh\hat{a}idan$ to gnaw; قادر و $q\hat{a}der\ bar$ capable of.

راست کار râstkâr honest (used ironically); ماد shâd happy; راست کار yendâshtan/pendâr- to think; ماد اشتن (پندار) علی del bar-dâshtan az to give up hope of; سهان mehmân guest; سه sar head; کود که kuy lane; پنهان penhân-kardan to hide; سهان nedâ-dâdan to herald; باز bâz hawk; کود که faryâd bar-dâshtan to cry out; فریاد برداشتن penhân محال برگرفتن ;baz hayâd bar-dâshtan to cry out; فریاد برداشتن bar-gereftan to pick up.

ameqdâr amount; (ستان setadan/setân- to take away.

⁴كليله و دمنهٔ بهرامشاهى *Kalile-o Demne-ye Bahrâmshâhi*, a Persian translation of Ibn al-Muqaffa''s Arabic *Kalila wa-Dimna* made by Abolma'âli Nasrollâh ca. 1143.

مکر بارت

پادست ای را شنیدم که بکشت اسری اثارت کرد. بیچاره در آن حالت نومیدی ملک را د ثنام دادن کرفت و سقط گفتن که گفته اند هرکه دست از حب ان بثوید هرچه در دل دارد بکوید ا

وقت ِ ضرورت چو ناند کریز دست بمیرد سر شمشیر تنیز اندا یه نیست بمیرد سر شمشیر تنیز اندا یه نیست الانسان طال لیسانه کیستورِ مغلوب یصول علی الکلب ملک پرسد که چه میکوید هوال کیسانه ملک پرسد که چه میکوید هوال کاظیمین الفیظ والفافین عن الناس به ملک را رحمت آمد و از سر خون او درکذشت ۴ وزیر دیگر که ضد او بود گفت ابنای جس مارا نشاید در حضرت پادشان جز براسی سخن وزیر دیگر که ضد او بود گفت ابنای جس مارا نشاید در حضرت پادشان جز براسی سخن گفتن این، ملک را دشت م داد و ناسرا گفت.

The 8th-century Arabic version was supposedly made from a Middle Persian translation of the Sanskrit original of the Bidpai fables; ترحمه tarjome translation.

ازین سخن درہم کثید و گفت آن دروغ وی پیندیده تر آمد مرا زین رار

اشارت کردن ; asir prisoner اسیر pâdeshâh king پادشاه pâdeshâh king اسیر asir prisoner اسیر eshârat-kardan be to indicate; نومیدی bichâre helpless حالت ; bichâre helpless دشنام دادن ; nawmidi desperation مقط گرفتن ; doshnâm-dâdan to curse دشنام دادن * saqat-goftan to revile دست از جان شستن ; dast az jân shostan to wash one's hands of life, to give up hope of life.

 $^{^2}$ ضرورت zarurat necessity; چو cho = chon; گریز goriz (means of) escape; سر شمشیر sar-e shamshir tip of a sword; تیز tiz sharp.

³(Arabic) "When man despairs his tongue grows long, like a cornered cat attacking a dog."

خداوند; vazir pl نیکمحضر vozarâ vizier; نیکمحضر nikmahzar of good counsel; خداوند hhodâvand lord; الناس valkâzemina'lqayza val'âfina 'anennâs "and those who bridle their anger and forgive people" (Koran 3:134); رحمت rahmat mercy; از سر خون کسی در گذشتن az sar-e khun-e kas-i dar-gozashtan to spare someone's life.

که توگفتی که آن را روی در مصلحتی بود و این را بن ابر خبثی، و خرد مندان گفته اند: دروغی مصلحت آمیز به که راستی فقیهٔ انگیز!

هرکه ناه آن کند که او کوید حیف باشد که جز نکو کوید!

بر طاق ایوان فریدون نبشته بود:

جسان ای برادر نماند بکس ول اندر جسان آفرین بند و بس"

مکن تکیه بر ملک و دنیا و بیت که بسیار کس چون تو پرورد و کشت "

چو آمیک رفتن کند جان پاک چه بر شخت مردن چه بر روی خاک "

ماسیت کمی از ملوک نراسان، محمودِ سکمکین را بخواب دید بعد از وفات او به صد سال که جملهٔ وجود او ریخته بود و خاک شده، کمر حثمان او که بمخان در چشمخانه نمی کر دید و نظر می کر د. سایر حکا

ابنای جنس !abnâ-ye jens peers نشاید !náshâyad it is not fitting ابنای جنس !náshâyad نشاید !nâsazâ improper ناسزا !nâsazâ improp- دروغ !ruy darham keshidan to frown وی درهم کشیدن !pasandidan to approve روی درهم کشیدن !az in از این = in زین !az in مصلحت | az in مصلحت | benâ basis | benâ basis | hobs vileness خردمند !khobs vileness خردمند | hobs vileness بهتر = had به !behtar بهتر = behtar بهتر = behtar بهتر | behtar بهتر |

² حيف *neku* (for نيكو *niku*) good, beautiful.

dyvân portico; فريدون feridun Freidoun, mythical king of Iran; ايوان ayvân portico; طاق tâq arch; الموان nebeshte; المدر جيزى بستن andar در andar اندر andar اندر چيزى بستن jahân-âfarin world-creator.

on; تکیه کردن بر takye-kardan bar to rely on; پشت کردن بر posht-kardan bar to lean ملک ملک parvardan/parvar- to mourish.

آهنگ کاری کردن 5 $\hat{a}hang-e$ $\hat{k}ar-i$ kardan to be about to do s.th.; پاک $\hat{j}an$ soul; چان $\hat{p}ak$ pure; چه...چه $\hat{c}he...che$ [what difference does it make] whether...or; $\hat{t}akht$ throne; خاک $\hat{k}hak$ dust, earth.

از تعبیر این فرو ماندندگر درویشی که خدمت بجای آورد و گفت «منوز نگرانست که ملکش با دکرانست. ۱ بس سنامور بزیر زمین دفن کر ده اند کز بهتیش بروی زمین بر نمشان نماند ۲ وان پیرلاست را که سپردند زیر گل خاکش چینان بخورد کز و اسخوان نماند ۲ زنده است نام فرخ نوشیروان بعدل گرچه بسی گذشت که نوشین روان نماند ۲ خیری کن ای فلان وغیمت شار عمر زان پشترکه بانک برآید فلان نمساند ۵ از گلسان معدی (۵۶ع ۱۲۵۸م)

ملک malek pl ملک moluk king; خراسان Khorâsân Khurasan, northeastern province of modern Iran, formerly extended to the Oxus and included much of modern Afghanistan and Turkmenistan; محمود سبکتگین Mahmud-e Saboktegin Sultan Mahmud of Ghazna (r. 998–1030), known for his insatiable appetite for conquest; وفات rikhtan/riz- to decompose; مرايختن ويود yojud body; وجود rikhtan/riz- to decompose; مگر mágar except for; نظر کردن nazar-kardan to gaze; ماه sâyer-e all of; مکر hakim pl فرو ماندن از a'bir interpretation; تعبیر foru-mândan az to be incapable of; تعبیر darvish dervish, poor man; خدمت بجای آوردن negarân worried; نگران molk kingdom; گروgar variant form of دیگر digar.

ي بس bas (+ singular noun) many a; نامور nâmvar renowned; دفن کردن dafn-kardan to bury; نشان hasti existence; بروی زمین بر be ru-ye zamin bar see \$83; نشان neshân trace.

 $^{^3}$ لاشه $l\hat{a}she$ corpse; (سپار) $sepordan/sep\hat{a}r$ - to entrust; گل gel mud, clay; گل $kh\hat{a}k$ dust, earth; کنوو $kh\hat{a}k$ dust, earth; استخوان s- s- $tokh\hat{a}n$ bone.

i nâm renown; فرخ jarrokh splendid; نام jarrokh splendid; نام jarrokh splendid; نام Chosroës I Anosharvan, see p. 238, note 3; عدل justice; روان nushin sweet; روان ravân soul (nushin-ravân is a popular—but false—etymology for Nushirvan).

خیر کردنkhayr-kardan to do good; خیر کردن ومانست شمردن aanimat shomordan to make the most of; پیش (تر) از آنکه zan pishtar ke zan pishtar zan pishtar zan pishtar zan pishtar zan zan-ke before (conj.); فلان zan pishtar zan pishtar zan pishtar zan zan-ke before (conj.); فلان zan pishtar za

-۵-

ما ننوا اعلتی است که اطبا در معالجت او فرو مانند اکر حه امراض موداوی بمه مزمن است، کین مالیخوایا خاصیتی دارد مدیر زائل شدن و انوالحن من یحی اندر کتاب معالحت نقراطی که اندر طب کس حنان کت بی نکر ده است) برشمرد از ائمهّ و حکا و فصلا و فلاسعن که حند از اشان مدان علت معلول کشة اند^ا اما حک یت کر د مرا اساد من که مکی را از آل بویه مالیخونیا مدید آمسید و اورا درین علت حینان صورت بت که او گاوی شده است. بهمه روز مانک بهی کر د و این و آن را بمی گفت که «مرا بکشد که از کوشت من حربیهٔ نیکو آید» تا کار بدرجهای بکشد که ننر سیچ نخورد و روز کا برآمد و نهار کر د. و اطبا در معالجت او عاجز آمدند ' و خواجه الوعلى اندرين حالت وزير بود، و ثابتناه علاء الدّوله محرّ بن دشمنريار بر وي اقابی داشت و حلهٔ ملک در دست او نهاده بود و کلی ثنف برأی و تدسر او باز گذاشته و الحق بعدِ اسکندر که ارسطاطالیس وزیر او بود، سپج پادشاه حون انوعلی وزیر نداشته بود. و درین

physician; مرض 'âlejat treatment; فرو ماندن foru-mândan to fail; مراليت mo'âlejat treatment; فرو ماندن foru-mândan to fail; مرض maraz pl مرض mozmen chronic; فرو ماندن sawdâvi melancholic; مرض mozmen chronic; امراض likan but; حاصيت khâssiyat characteristic; زائل شدن تâ'el-shodan to pass away; خاصيت boqrâti Hippocratic; برشمردن از boqrâti Hippocratic; برشمردن از boqrâti Hippocratic; بقم المسلم المسلم أعند المسلم bar-shomordan az to recount; اثمه المسلم المسلم أعند أوضل faram pl اثمه farame leader; فضلا و faylasuf pl فلاسفه faylasuf pl فيلسوف faylasuf pl فضلا a'emme leader; معلول ma'lul afflicted (be with).

Buyid dynasty, r. 932–1062; استاد padid-âmadan to appear; استان البویه هورت بستن مورت بستن padid-âmadan to appear; پدید آمدن surat-bastan to seem, be imagined; پدید آمدن gâv cow; ابنگ کردن bâng-kardan to shout (here, to moo); ابنگ کردن niku good; ابدرجهای کشید که kâr be daraje-i هریسه harise porridge; وزها برآمد iniz too, also; انیز niz too, also; روزها برآمد pahâr-âmad days passed; دوزها برآمد nahâr-kardan to waste away; عاجز âjez incapable.

CLASSICAL PERSIAN PROSE

حال که خواجه ابوعلی وزیر بود، هر روز پیش از صبحه م برخاسی و از کتاب شفا دو کاعف نه تصنیف کر دی. چون صبح صادق بدمیدی شف کر دان را بار دادی چون کیا رئیس بهمنیار و ابو مضور بن زید و عبدالواحد جوزجانی و سلیان دشتی و من که باکالیجارم! تا بوقت اسفار سبها بخواندیی و در پی او ناز کر دیمی و تا بیرون آمدانی هزار موار از مثابیر و معارف و ارباب حوانج و اصحاب عرائض بر در سرای او کر د آمده بودی. و خواجه برنشتی و آن حاعت در خدمت او برفتندی. چون بدیوان رسیدی موار دوهزار شده بودی. پس بدیوان تا ناز پیشین باندی و چون باز کشی بخوان آمدی. جمساعتی با او نان بخوردندی. پس بدیوان تا ناز پیشین باندی و چون برخاسی ناز بکر دی و پیش شانشاه شدی و تا ناز دیگر پیش او مفاوضه و محاوره بودی. میان ایشان در مهات ملک دو تن بودند که هرکز ثالثی نبودی. و مقصود ازین حکسایت آنت که خواجه را بیچ فراغت نبودی.

Alâ'oddawle Abu-Ali Avicenna; خواجه ابوعلى Khâje Abu-Ali Avicenna; خواجه ابوعلى Alâ'oddawle Mohammad ebn-e Doshmanziâr, ruler of central and western Persia, r. 1008–1041; ملک jomle-ye all of; حمله eqbâl-dâshtan bar to hold in high esteem; اقبال داشتن بر jomle-ye all of; حمله ra'y-o tadbir management; اولى و تدبير shoql work; الله bâz-gozâshtan to turn over; الله bâz-gozâshtan to turn over; اسطاطاليس sobhdam dawn; اسكندر الله كناب شفا Arestâtâlis Aristotle; المعادلة ketâb-e shefâ Avicenna's great work on philosophy; كافذ kâqaz page; كتاب شفا خميدن sobh-e sâdeq true dawn; كاف خميدن break (dawn); عاد shâgerd pupil; بار دادن break (dawn); بار دادن shâgerd pupil; بار دادن bâr-dâdan to hold court, receive; Kiyâ Bahmanyâr, Abo'l-Mansur b. Zila, Abdol-Vâhed Juzjâni, Solaymân Dameshqi, and Bâkâlijâr are all well-known students of Avicenna's.

andemâni archaic 1st plural habitual past of âmadan; موار savâr mounted, on horseback; معارف mashhur pl معارف mashâhir famous; معارف ma'âref nobles; معارف ashâb-e havâ'ej people in need; معارف ashâb-e arâ'ez petitioners; ارباب حوائع gerd-âmadan to gather around; برنشستن bar-neshas-tan to mount; عراق المعارف المعارف إلى المعارف المع

پی چون اطبا از معالجت آن جوان عاجز آمدند، پیش نامناه ملک معظم علاء الدوله آن حال بکشند و اورا شفیع برا نکیچند که خواجرا بکوید تا آن جوان را علاج کند علاء الدوله را رد و خواجه قول کر د پی گفت «آن جوان را شارت دهید که قصاب بهی آید تا ترا بکشد» و با آن جوان گفتند. او شادی بهی کر د پی خواجه برنشت و بهخان با کوکه بر در سرای بیار آمد و با تنی دو در فت، و کاردی برست کر فقه گفت «این گاو کجاست تا اورا بکشم به»

مرای بیار آمد و با تنی دو در فت، و کاردی برست کر فقه گفت «بیان سرای آریدش و بکشم به»

دست و پای او بیندید و فرو افلنیدا» آمد و بر بهلوی راست خفت، و پای او بیار چون آن شنید بدوید و به میان سرای آمد و بر بهلوی راست خفت، و پای او بیار چون آن شنید بدوید و به میان سرای آمد و بر بهلوی راست خفت، و پای او بیار بوت بر بهلوی او

نهاد چنانکه عادت قصابان بُودَ. پس کفت «وه! این چه گاو لفریست! این را نشاید کشن. علف دبهیش تا فربه شود!» و برخاست و سیرون آمد و مردم را گفت که «دست و پای او

khordan to dine; قيلوله qaylule nap; شدن shodan to go; مماز ديگر namâz-e digar afternoon prayer; مهمات mofâveze deliberation; محاوره mohâvere discussion; مهمات mohemmât-e molk important affairs of state; هر گز hargez (+ neg.) never; فراغت farâqat leisure.

ملک معظم malek-e mo'azzam magnificent king; ملک معظم shafi' bar-angikhtan to persuade someone to intercede; اشارت کردن elâj-kardan to treat; اشارت کردن eshârat-kardan to make a motion, allude; بشارت aqabul-kardan to accept; قبول کردن shâdi-kardan to rejoice; قسادی کسردن shâdi-kardan to rejoice; فسادی کسردن kawkabe entourage; بیمار bimâr patient; تن tan person دررفتن dar-raftan to go

 $^{^2}$ همچو hamcho like; میان miân middle; آور $\hat{a}r$ - for آور $\hat{a}var$ - فرو افکندن foru-afkan- dan to throw down.

CLASSICAL PERSIAN PROSE

از «چهار مقاله» تالیف نظامی عروضی سرقندی، در حدود ۵۵۰هه/۱۱۵۵م

أورو ; mâlidan to rub ماليدن ; pahlu side خفتن (خواب) خفتن (خواب) pahlu side ماليدن ; pahlu side خفتن (خواب) بهلو foru-neshastan to sit down نشستن bovad see §88; و bovad see §88; و يا bah! نشستن farbeh fat; (گشادن (گشا) goshâdan فربه goshâdan علف goshâdan و goshâ- to open, untie.

 $^{^2}$ شربت sharbat pl ادویه ashrebe potion; اشربه aavâ pl ادویه advie medicine; شنودن shenudan = شنددن

a within الماري يک ماورا يک ماورا يک ماورا يو dast bar-goshâdan be to undertake; يک ماورا يو yek mâh-râ within a month; بصلاح آمدن be salâh âmadan to be cured; صحت يافتن sehhat-yâftan to recover; اهل خرد ahl-e kherad the wise; کامل غشل غرد fazl learning کامل hads guess.

English-Persian Vocabulary

	·
able, be توانستن	همهم bothand
about (prep.) در بارهٔ; about to	box جعبه
تقریباً، در حدود about, nearly	پسر boy
adventure ماجرا	break شکستن
afraid, be ترسیدن	همراه آوردن، آوردنُ bring
ago قبل	شکسته، خراب broken
airplane هواپيما	brother برادر
airport فرودگاه	ساختن build
على Ali	building ساختمان
all همه; in all جمعا	buy خريدن
almost تقريبا	
always هميشه	ماشین car
آمریکائی American	carry بردن
amount مقدار	گیر افتادن caught, get
گوینده announcer	chair صندلی
answer (n.) جواب; answer (vb.)	chalk گچ
دادن	اتفاقا chance, by
دیگرنه anymore, not	ارزان cheap
arrive رسیدن	child بچه
سؤال کردن to ask questions ;پرسید ِن	بچگانه childish
at all اصلا	city شهر
	class کلاس
بد bad	clean تميز
be بودن	زرنگ clever
برای اینکه، چونکه because	ساعت clock
خوابيدن to go to bed ;تختخواب	close (adj.) نزدیک; to close (vb.) بستن
before (adv.) قبلاً، پیش (before (conj.)	لباس clothes
before ;پیش از اینکه، قبل از اینکه	coffee قهوه
پیش از، قبل از (prep.)	سرد cold
بهتر better	to come back ;بازآمدن; to
بزر گ big	درآمدن come out
سیاه black	ادامه دادن به continue
بلوز blouse	درست correct
کتاب book	شمردن count
_	

ENGLISH-PERSIAN VOCABULARY

کشور country جز except گران expensive شلوغ crowded خاموش كردن extinguish دختر daughter دور far روز day يدر father رسانیدن deliver دندانیزشکی dentistry جند few فر و شگاه department store فيلم film بالأخره finally ميز desk ىيدا كردن find مردن die تمام كردن finish فرق کر دن difference, make a آتش fire مشكل، سخت difficult اشكال داشتن difficulty, have نخست، اولین، اول first غذا food شام dinner برای for طرف direction فراموش کردن forget كثيف dirty مشقاب dish بخشو دن forgive ظر فشو ئے dishwashing پیش , forward دوست friend فاصله distance کار کر دن do something fruit ميوه یزشک، دکتر doctor باغ garden در door أقا gentleman شک doubt پیاده شدن (get out (of vehicle) خور دن drink براه افتادن، راه افتادن get under way برخاستن، بلند شدن get up هركدام each دادن give زود early ليو ان glass آسان easy رفتن go خور دن eat دیگر else خوب good انگلیسی English سبز green وارد شدن enter بلند شدن grow up حدس زدن guess پاککن eraser

> half نصف، نيم hand دست happen اتفاق افتادن خوشحال happy

حتى even

ىد evil

واقعه، اتفاق event

همه، هر every

نمو نه example

hard سخت have سخت; to have a good time على المشتن به المشتن المشت

important مهم income درامد interesting جالب Iran ایران ایران

job کار just about to نزدیک بودن

نگهداشتن kilogram کیلوگرم kind, nice نوع kind, sort ;مهربان know (somebody) دانستن (something)

lady خانم last, final خانم; last, past قضر پارسال last year پارسال late دیر شدن (to be late (of time) دیر; to be late (of persons) دیر بعدًا later (adv.) باد گرفتن اقلاً at least, مترين least ت ک ک دن leave چپ left کمتر less درس , lesson گذاشتن let نامه letter كتابخانه library زندگی، زندگانی life جراغ light دوست (to like (vb.) مثل (like (prep.) داشتن, خوش آمدن مايع liquid listen گوش کردن اittle کوچک a little bit کوچک زندگی کردن live دنیال گشتن to look for ;نگاه کردن look گم کردن lose گم شذن lost, get بسیار، زیاد، خیلی Iot, a ىلندگو loudspeaker دوست داشتن love ناهار lunch

mad دیوانه
مرد سده
مرد مرحه

matter, no هرچند، هرچه می

minute دقیقه

پول سوی

money

ماه ho

more بیشتر

morning بیشتر

morning مادر

mother مادر

mountain کوه much

بیراتب

much خیلی (with comparatives)

نام، اسم name

ENGLISH-PERSIAN VOCABULARY

near نزدیک	quarter ربع
بهیچوجه not nearly so بهیچوجه	question سؤال
neighbor همسایه	آرام quiet
never هيچوقت	4
جدید، تازه، نو new	باران باریدن، باران to rain باران
newspaper روزنامه	آمدن
میچ چیزی، هیچ nothing	raincoat بارانی
now Yls	reach رسیدن به
	read خواندن
offer تقدیم کردن	دار التاديب reformatory
پیر، کهنه، قدیمی old	relatively نسبة
روی ۵۳	return (v. intِ.) ; برگشتن (v. trs.)
one (adj.) یک one (pron.) یکی	بر گردا نیدن
only خز only	همینجا right here ;صحیح، درست
other دیگر	room اطاق
گرنه otherwise	
out بيرون	فروشنده salesperson
خود own	همان، همین same
	sample نمونه
گذشته past	حرفها to have something to say ; گفتن say
پرداختن، قیمت دادن، دادن pay	داشتن
pen قلم	هنوزنه scarcely
people مردم	مدرسه school ·
perfectly Lat	دیدن see دیدن
فارسى (language) ;ايراني Persian, Iranian	نمودن، بنظر آمدن seem
کس، نفر person	انتخاب کردن select
pick up برداشتن	فروختن sell
plane هواپيما	فرستادن send
polite مؤدب	محاکمه کردن sentence راه افتادن set out
امكان to be possible ;ممكن	_
داشتن	several چند
قیمت price	shoes کفش show نشان دادن
احتمال داشتن probable, be	
بشرطی که provided that put, place ; نهادن، گزاردن، گذاشتن to	shut بستن
put, place ; نهادن، کزاردن، کداشتن; to	مریض sick ساده simple
پوشیدن (clothes) پوشیدن	simple مناده sister خواهر
پیژامه pyjamas	
	six شش

فکر کاری بودن something دامن skirt ثالث، سُوم، سومين (third (ordinal خوا بىدن sleep کہ حک small أمسال this year; این this زر نگ smart دور انداختن throw away , to have a ; بار، دفعه، مدت، ساعت برف باریدن، برف to snow برف snow خوش گذشتن به good time حور اب socks برای، به to کاری (act),چیزی (something (tangible) امروز today حائے ، somewhere فردا tomorrow زیاد، خیلی too much ;نیز، هم too زود soon هنوز . . . نه sooner, no شهر town صحبت کردن، حرف زدن speak سعیٰ کردن try ىرگشتن (int.) turn around spend (money) خرج کردن; to spend (time) روشن کردن turn on برخاستن، یا شدن stand up شروع كردن، شروع شدن start باورنگردنی unbelievable ماندن stay زيرييراهن undershirt جلو گرفتن، نگهداشتن (.stop (v. trs فهميدن understand دراز کشیدن stretch out دانشگاه university گردش کردن stroll, take a مگر اینکه unless دانشحو student ىدىخت unlucky خواندن، درس خواندن study use of, make استفاده کردن از to be of use به درد خوردن، فابده داشتن تاستان summer usually كعمولاً جراح surgeon يولور sweater سیار، خیلی very

take میز take back ; رواز (to take back ; برگرداندن برواز (to take off (airplane) ; برگرداندن درآوردن (to take off (clothes) حمام tea حام معلم علم تهران الله teacher معلم علم تهران تهران (theacher تعریف کردن از to tell about ; گفتن المنا (adj., pron.) آن (conj.) که (there انجا النجا thing (tangible) ;چیز (act or abstraction) کار دن think about doing

want خواستن
wash شستن
water آب
way ماره
wear پوشیدن
weather هوا
week هفته
what چه
whatever

نزدیکی vicinity

ده village

ENGLISH-PERSIAN VOCABULARY

when (interrogative) کی (when (conj.)	زمستان winter
- وقتی که	کی، کاش wish, I
where کجا	به، با with
wherever هرکجا	زن woman
which (interrogative) کدام (relative	حرف word
pronoun) 45	ر، شغل (n.) work
who (interrogative) کی (relative pronoun)	کردن
مک	نوشتن write
whoever هر که	
چرا why	year سال; last yea
wife ¿ċ	امسال
window پنجره	ديروز yesterday

winter زمستان wish, I کاشکی، کاش به، با with به، با woman خرف word کار (to work (vb.) کار، شغل کار (work (vb.) نوشتن نوشتن

year پادسال; last year پادسال; this year امسال yesterday دیروز

Persian-English Vocabulary

Lessons in which vocabulary items are introduced are given in parentheses.

ī	a- pres. stem of آمدن	آلو	âlu plum
آب	م آب زير کاه ;(11) âb water ~	آلوبالو	âlubâlu sour cherry
•	zir-e kâh sly, sneaky; مآبي ~i	آلومينيوم	âluminium aluminum
	light blue (4); ~ shodan to	آماده	âmâde ready (22)
_	melt	آمدن	
آبياري	âbyâri irrigation; ~-kardan to	آمرانه	âmerâne imperious
_	irrigate	آمرزيدن	
ات <i>ش</i>	âtesh/âtash fire; ~-gereftan to	آمریکا	âmrikâ America; مریکائی
7	catch fire (24)	~	American
أجر	âjor baked brick, tile	آموختن	âmuz- to آموز/âmuz
اخر	avakher last, اواخر avakher last,		
	end (12); اواخر ماه avâkher-	آموز <i>ش</i>	وزارت; amuzesh learning
	e mâh the last ten days of a month		~ vezârat-e آموزش و پرورش
آخند			o parvaresh Ministry of
	âkhond cleric, molla	-	Education
آدم	âdam one (impersonal), human being, person	إميختن	âmikhtan/آميز âmiz- to mix ân that; آنجا مَjâ there (2);
آ. ا،	ârâm calm, quiet (8)	ان	ân that; انجا مُ jâ there (2);
آرام آرد	ârd flour		che that which (23), آنچه
			what; أنطور ~tawr thus, like
آرنج <u>آ</u> ری	âranj elbow âre indeed, yes		that (19); أنقدر ~qadr that
اری آزار	•	1	much, so much
ונונ	âzâr annoyance; ~dâdan to annoy	انتن آواز	_
آزمایش	âzmâyesh experiment	اوار	أواز ;avâz voice, song, singing أواز khândan to sing
ارهایس آزمود <i>ن</i>	âzmudan/آزما âzmâ- to try,		khân singer وازخوان ;(22)
ارمودن	test	آوردن	
آسان	âsân easy (8); آسانی ~i ease	03)3,	bring (6)
آستين آستين	âstin sleeve	آويختن	
آسيا	âsyâ Asia	آهای	âhây hey
آشيزخانه	âshpazkhâne kitchen (17)		âhan iron
آشنا با	âshnâ bâ acquainted with (25)	آهن آهنگر	âhangar blacksmith
آغاز	âqâz beginning; ~-kardan to	آهو	âhu deer, gazelle
Ju	begin	آينده	âyande coming, next, future
آفت	âfat pl آفات âfât calamity	•	(14)
آفريدن	âfaridan/آفرين âfarin- to	آئين	âin, آیین âyin custom
- 5	create	آئىنە	âîne mirror
آفتاب	âftâb sun		
آقا	âqâ gentleman, sir, Mr. (4);	ابدا	abadan (+ neg.) never, not at
	-jân term of respect	•	all
	ful address, especially of	ابر	abr cloud; foam rubber
	fathers	٠.	

ابرو	abru eyebrow		rest (24)
أبريشم	abrisham silk	استفاده	estefâde benefit; استفاده کردن
ابزآر	abzâr tool, instrument		-kardan az to make use
ابله	ablah idiot, fool; ابلهانه ~âne		of (23)
•	foolish, stupid	استنتاج	estentâj conclusion
اتفاق	ettefâq chance, occurrence;	استنتاج اسفناج	esfenâj spinach
	-oftâdan to oc ~ اتفاق افتادن	اسم	esm pl اسامی asâmi name (5);
	cur, happen (18); اتفاقًا ~an	1	ham~ namesake
	by chance (15)	اسير	asir prisoner, captive
اثر	asar pl آثار âsâr trace	اشارت	eshârat indication; ~-kardan
اجباري	ejbâri obligatory		be to indicate
احتمال	ehtemâl probability; احتمال	اشباح اشتباه	ashbah ghosts, phantoms
	- dâshtan to be prob داشتن	اشتبآه	eshtebâh mistake; ~-kardan
	able (17)		to make a mistake
احتمالأ	1 0	اشتباها	eshtebâhan by mistake
احتياط	ehtiat precaution; ~-kar dan	اشک	ashk tears
	to take precaution	اشكال	eshkâl -ât difficulty, problem;
أحساس	ehsâs pl احساسات -ât feeling;		~-dâshtan to have a problem
	~-kardan to feel		(23)
احمق		اصرار	
	~âne stupid, silly		insist
اختيار	ekhtiâr choice; ~-kardan to	اصطلاح	estelâh idiom, technical term,
	-bi~ invol بی اختیار		local expression; be ~ idio-
/ ·1	untarily		matically
اخگر	akhgar spark	اصفهان	esfahân Isfahan (13)
ادامه	edâme continuation; ~dâdan	اصلا	aslan actually; (+ neg.) not at
	be to continue (trs.) (23); ~-	1.1	all (15)
. 1 .1	dâshtan to continue (intrs.)	اصلی	asli original
ادبیات	adabiyât literature	اطا <u>ق</u> الله	otâq room (13)
اذان	azân call to prayer	اطاقك	otâqak a small room, a mis-
اذيت	aziyat annoyance; ~-kardan	(11	erable little room
1	to annoy, vex	اطبا	طبيب atebbâ pl of
ار ا دے	ar poetic contraction of اگر ordak duck	اطلاع	ettelâ' pl -ât information
اردک ۱۰۱۰		اعتبار	e'tebâr credit
ارزان	arzân cheap (14)	أعضا	a'zâ pl of عضو
از	az from (5), among, of (parti-	اعلام	e'lâm making known; ~-kar-
	tive); از اینکه -in-ke be- cause, since	1	dan to make known
اندماد	ezdehâm crowd	اعلان	e'lân announcement; ~-kar-
ازدحام		*121	dan to announce
اسامی'	asâmi pl of اسم	أفتادن	oftadan/افت oft- to fall, be-
اسب	asb horse	انسا	fall (18) eftetâh inauguration; ~-sho-
اسباب	asbâb belongings	افتتاح	dan to be inaugurated
اسپ استاد	asp = اسب	الفيريس.	afrukhtan/افروز afruz- to
	_	افروختن افزودن	light, kindle
استخوان	ostokhân bone	اذمدن	afzudan/افز afzâ- to add
استراحت	esterâhat rest; ~-kardan to	الفرودن	aizuuaii/)5 aiza- 10 auu

افسرده	afsorde dejected	انجير	anjir fig
افكندن	afkandan/افكن afkan- to	اند	-and they are
•	throw, cast (16)	انداختن	andâkhtan/انداز andâz- to
اقتصاد	eqtesâd economics	0	throw, cast
اقلا	aqallan at least (12)	اندازه ،	andâze measure, extent
اكنون		اندر	andar in, on
اگر		اندک	andak little (bit); اندکمایه
	ágar if (19); اگرهم ~-ham al- though, even though (22);		~mâye possessing little cap-
	اگرنه ; che although~ اگرچه		ital, petty
	~na otherwise (23)	انقلاب	enqelâb -ât revolution;
الا	ella otherwise, or else		un- انقلابیون pl نم انقلابی
الأغ	olâq donkey, pack horse;	4	revolutionary
•	i donkey driver الأغي	انگبین	angabin honey
الآن	al'ân now	انگِشت	angosht finger
الحق	álhaqq in truth, truly	انگشتر	angoshtar finger ring
الهيات	elâhiyât divinity, theology	انگِلیس	englis English, British
الياف	alyâf fibers	انگلیسی انگور	englisi English (language) (7)
اما	ámmâ but, nonetheless	انگور	angur grape
امام	a'emme leader ائمه a'emme	انگیختن	angikhtan/انگيز angiz- to stir
امان	amân safety		up
امتحان	emtehân examination, test; ~-	او	u he, she
	kardan to test	اواخر	avakher pl of آخر
امروز	emruz today (5)	اوركت	overkot peacoat
أمسال	emsâl this year (9)	اوقات	awqât pl of vaqt; اوقات تلخ
امشب	emshab tonight (9)		~talkh irritated, in a bad
امضا	emzâ signature; ~kardan to		mood; اوقات تلخى ~talkhi
	sign		bad mood
امكان	emkân possibility; ~-dâshtan	أول	avval first (12); اولين مin first
	to be possible (16)	إهل	ahl people; native of, from (6)
إمن	amn safety, security	ای	ay O (vocative particle)
أميد	omid hope (17); اميدوار ~vâr	ايران	irân Iran, Persia; ايراني انح
1	hopeful (17)	6.1	Iranian, Persian
U	amin trustee	ایستادگی	istâdegi standing one's ground; ~-kardan to stand
انار	anâr pomegranate		one's ground
انبار	ambâr reservoir, storehouse	ايستادن	istâdan/ایست ist- to stop,
انتخاب	entekhâb -ât election; ~- shodan to be elected, cho-	المساوي ،	stand, stand still; ایستاده
	sen; ~-kardan to elect,		ist âde budan to be بودن
	choose (9)		standing (24)
انتظار	entezâr expectation; ~e kas-	ایستگاه	istgâh station
J-2-	i-râ keshidan to wait for	**	ishân they
	someone	ایل	ât tribe - ایلات Il pl
انتقال	enteqâl transfer; ~-dâdan to	این	in this
	transfer, move	اينجا	injâ here (2)
انجام	anjâm end; ~-dâdan to ac-	اينطور	intawr thus, like this (19)
1	complish	اينقدر	inqadr so much, this much
	21	56	

	(14)		باغیه ~che garden plot;
اینک	inak here is, voici		-chebandi~ باغچەبندى شدن
ايوان	ayvân arched portico		shodan to be divided up into
•			plots
با	bâ with (5), despite	باقالا	bâqâlâ fava bean
با آنکه	bâ ân-ke although	باقى	bâql remaining, left
بابا	bâbâ daddy; باباشمل ~-	بالا	bâlâ up, upstairs (23); مبالاي ~-
	shamal ruffian, thug	• S ti	ye over, on top of
باجناق	bâjenâq wife's sister's	بالاخره	bel'akhare finally, at last (16)
	husband	بام بامیه بان <i>گ</i>	bâm roof
باختن	bâkhtan/باز bâz- to gamble,	بامیه ۱۰گ	bâmie okra
. 1	lose (game, bet)		bâng cry; ~-kardan to shout
باد	bâd wind	باور	bâvar belief; ~-kardan to believe (18)
بادام	bâdâm almond	باهم	bâham together
بادنجان	bâdenjân eggplant	بهم باهوش	bâhush intelligent
بار	bâr time; دوباره do~e again (23), another time. ¶ bâr	بايد	bấyad must (16)
	load (12); ~-bordan to carry	بایس <i>ت</i> بایست	bâyést (past of bâyad) must
	a load. J bâr court; ~dâdan		babr tiger
	to hold court	ىتە	bote bush, shrub
باران	bârân rain (21); باراني ~i	ببر بته بچگانگی بچگانه بچه	bacchegânegi childishness
	raincoat	ىچگانە	bacchegâne childish
باربر	bârbar porter	. پ بچه	gân child~بچگان
باريدن	bâridan to rain down (21)	**	(2)
باریک	bârik thin, narrow	بخارى	bokhâri heater
باز	bâz open (11); ~-kardan to	بخت	bakht luck, fortune
	open (11). ¶ bâz hawk.	بخش	bakhsh part, division, depart-
	¶ bâz again; yet, still; ~	4	ment; ~ bar divided by
	âmadan to come again (11); mândan to lag behind;	بخشندگی	bakhshandagi generosity
	-ham still, nonethe-بازهم	بخشندگی بخشودن	-bakhshudan/بخشا bakhshâ
	less (22). J bâz- pres. stem		•
	of باختن	بخشيدن	bakhshidan to give, bestow, forgive (23)
بازار	bâzâr bazaar, market	بد	bad bad, evil, ill (1); بدم میآید
بازرس	bâzres conductor (train)	بد	جوم شيويد , am miâyad az I dislike
بازِرگآن	bâzargân merchant		٥ بد و بيراه گفتن به ;(17)
بازگذاشتر	bâz-gozâshtan to turn over		birâh goftan be to curse
بازگشتن	bâz-gashtan to come back	بدن	abdân body ابدان badan pl
بازو	bâzu upper arm; بازوبند	بدون	bedun-e without (25)
	~band bracelet	بر	bar (prep.) over, upon, at,
بازی	bâzi play; ~-kardan to play		against (21). ¶ bar fruit.
باستان	باستانشناسی; bâstân ancient		بردن J bar- pres. stem of بردن.
۵t	~shenâsi archeology		ا بریدن J bor- pres. stem of بریدن.
باش اماا	bâsh pres. stem of بودن bâtel useless, invalid, void	برابر	barâbar together; level,
باض	bâq -ât garden, orchard (9);	, J	equal; opposite (12) barâdar brother (11)
باغ	vay -at gatuen, ordinatu (3),	برادر	Daradar Diodici (11)

-1.	hammaa alittarina	·	hald often in an ac
براق برآمدن	barrâq glittering bar-âmadan to turn out, come	بعد	ba'd after; بعدًا ~an afterward (15); بعد از معد az after (prep.)
برامدن	through; to come/go up		(10); بعد از آنکه az anter (prep.) معد از آنکه
برا <i>ی</i>			after (conj.) (22)
برای	in-ke because	بعضي '	ba'z-i some
برتر			ba'id unlikely (18)
<i>J.</i> J.	superiority	بعید بغل	baqal lap
برخاستن	bar-khâstan to rise up, stand	بقچه	boqche sack, bundle
	up (19)		boqrâti Hippocratic
برخوردن	bar-khordan be to meet,	بقيه	
	come across	بلافاصله	belâfâsele immediately,
بردادن	bar-dâdan to yield (fruit)		straightaway
برداشتن	bar-dâshtan to pick up (7)	بلد	
بردن	bordan/بر bar- to carry, take		budan to know, know about,
	(10); to win (22)		know how (+ subj., to) (20)
بررسی	barresi inventory	بلغور	balqur chatter; ~-kardan to
برشمردن	bar-shomodan to recount,		gobble, chatter
	count out	بلند	boland tall, high; loud (8)
برف	barf snow (21)	بلوز	boluz blouse
برقٍ	barq electricity	بلوط	balut chestnut
برگ	barg leaf; برگ بو e bu bay	بله	bále yes (2)
	leaf	بلور	ballur crystal
بر گرفتن	bar-gereftan to pick up	بليط بنا	belit ticket
برگشتن	bar-gashtan to return (7)	بنا	benâ basis, foundation
برنامه	barnâme program	بند	band- pres. stem of بستن.
برنج برنشستن	berenj uncooked rice; brass		بند کفش إband tie, lace
برنشستن	bar-neshastan to mount		e kafsh shoelace. I band-
برومند	borumand worthy,		âmadan to come to an end,
	prosperous		be blocked
بريدن		بنده	bande slave; euphemistic for ""
بز	boz goat	24.4	-
بزر گ	bozorg big (1); ~shodan to		bâsh- to be (6) باش/budan
	grow up (9); بزرگوار ~vâr	بوسی <i>دن</i> تا ن	
	great	بوقلمو <i>ن</i>	
بس	bas enough, plenty, many a	بومشناسي	
1.1	(22)	به	be to, with, by (5). ¶ beh bet-
بساط	بساط بر پا کردن ;besât carpet		ter. I beh quince. I ap bah
	∼ bar pâ kardan to set up shop		bah exclamation of delight (8)
:16.	bastegân relatives	امد	bahâ price
بستگان	_	بها	bahâr spring
بسن	bastan/بند band- to shut, close, fasten, tie (11)	بهار	
.*	bastani ice cream	بهتر	behtar better (8) behdâri public health
بسنی			
بسيار	besyâr very, much	بهم	beham together; م بهم خوردن ~ khordan to collide, to fall
بشقاب بطری	boshqâb plate (15)		apart, to get jumbled
بطری	botri bottle		apart, to get junioled

بهيچوجه	behichvajh in no way, (+ neg.) not nearly so	پدید	padid visible; ~-shodan, ~- âmadan to appear, come
بى	bi without; مبي آنکه an-ke		into view (19)
0.	unless, without (20)	يديدار	padidâr visible; ~-shodan to .
بيابان	biâbân wilderness	•	come into view
بيچاره	bichâre helpless, poor	پذیرائی	pazirâi reception; ~-kardan
بیخ بید	bikh bottom, root		az to receive, entertain
بيد	bid clothes moth	پذیرفتن	-pazir- to ac پذیر/pazir- to ac
بيدار	bidâr awake; ~-shodan to		cept, receive
	wake up (17)	پر ۔	por full (24)
بيرون	birun outside (15)	پر پراکندگی	parâkandegi dispersal
ىيست	bist twenty	پراکنده	parâkande scattered
 بیش بیغوله بیمار	bish, بیشتر bishtar more (8)	پُرِتقال	portoqâl orange
بيغوله	bayqule, biqule pit, hole	پرداخت	pardâkht payment; ~-kardan
بيمار	bimâr sick person, patient		to pay
بيمارستان	bimârestân hospital	پرداختن	pardâkhtan/پرداز pardâz- to
بين	bayn-e between, among.		pay
	دیدن J bin- pres. stem of	پررو	porru bold, insolent, cheeky;
بينوا	binavâ miserable		i-kardan to be مردن کردن bold, to be insolent
بینی	bini nose	. 1=	parastâri nursing
بيهوده	bihude futile	پرستاری	
بيهوش	bihush unconscious	پرستو پرستيدن	parastu swallow (bird)
			parastidan to serve, worship
پا	pâ foot; ~-khordan to be trod	پرسیدن	porsidan to ask (az a person)
	on; ~-shodan to stand up	. 13 .	(21) parande pl يرندگان -gân bird
	(19); برپا bar ~ standing,	پرنده پرواز	parvâz flight; ~-kardan to
	erect; پاورقى ~varaqi bottom	پرواز	fly, take off
	of a page, footnote; پاورچين	پروانه	parvâne butterfly, moth
. (~varchin on tiptoes	پرور <u>.</u> پروردن	parvardan/پرور parvar- to
پاچه	pâche cuff (on trousers); ماليده ~varmâlide	پرورو	train, nourish
	impudent	ىرۇ يىنى	pare-ye bini nostril
يارچه	•	پرهٔ بینی پریدن	paridan to fly away, soar
پارسال	pârsâl last year (9)	پریشا <i>ن</i> پریشان	parishân upset, confused
باک	pâk clean, pure; ~-kardan to	بن نز	paz- pres. stem of يختن
Ţ	clean, erase; ياک کن ~kon	پر بزشک	pezeshk physician (4); يزشكي
	eraser (1)	J *	~i the study of medicine
ياكت	pâket package, parcel, envel-	یس	pas then, therefore (17); pas-e
•	ope		through; پس از az after
يالتو	pâlto overcoat		az ~ پس ازا نکه ;(17) (prep.)
يانزده	pânzdah fifteen		ân-ke after (conj.) (22)
ۑٚٲٸؽۜڹ	pâin down, downstairs (23)	پستان	pestân breast; پستاندار ~dâr
پختن	pokhtan/پز paz- to cook		mammal
پخش	pakhsh-shodan to spread;	پسته	peste pistachio
- •	خشيدن~idan to spread	پسر	pesar boy, son (3)
پدر	T 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	پسندیدن	pasandidan to approve of
•			

پشت	posht back; ~-e behind (25)		~khâb nightshirt
	posht-e bâm roof	پیژامه	pizhâme pyjamas
پشم	pashm wool	پیش	pish forward; ~-e before, in
پشه	pashe mosquito; پشه بند	1	front of (17); $-e \sim ago (19)$;
/	~band mosquito net		، ۾ -âmadan to مدن ~- پيش آمدن
پلاِستیک	pelâstik plastic		come up, happen (18); پیش
يلک	pelk eyelid		ماز معلق معلق معلق معلق معلق معلق معلق معلق
پلکان	pellekân staircase		م az in-ke be- fore (conj.) (22); پیش از
پلنگ	palang leopard		پیش پ ; (۷۲۶) (۱۵۳) بیش پ • e pâ oftâde trivial:
پلو	polaw rice steamed with meat		~-raftan to progress, ad-
	pelastic plastic pelk eyelid pellekân staircase palang leopard polaw rice steamed with meat and/or vegetables pambe cotton		vance (7)
	pambe cotton	ىشانى	pishâni forehead
پنج	panj five	پ ىشگفتار	pishgoftår preface
پنجاه	panjâh fifty	بیشنهاد	pishnehâd suggestion (23)
پنجره	panjare window (2)	يشم ا	pishvâ leader
پنج پنجاه پنجره پندار	pendâr notion	پيسر	payvand- be
پنداشتن	pendâr- to پندار/pendâr- to	0	to join
	think, consider		•
پنها <i>ن</i>	penhân hidden; ~-kardan to	تا	tâ unit, counting word (12);
	hide; ~-shodan to disappear		to, up to (25); so long as,
پنیر	panir cheese		until (22); in order that; than
پوچ پوشيدن	puch silly, nonsense		(8); تا آنجا که anjâ-ke in-
پوشیدن	pushidan to cover, clothe; to		sofar as
	پوشیده بودن; (16) put on	تابستان	tâbestân summer (8)
	pushide budan to be	تأبش	
1	wearing	تاخت	tâkht gallop; تاخت و تاز 🗸 o
پوں	pul money (13); ولدار ~dâr wealthy, rich		tâz galloping
پولور	pulover sweater	تاريخ	tavârikh pl تواريخ
پوتور پهلو	pahlu side	, ,	date, history
پھر پھن	pahn wide, stretched out	تاریک	târik dark; تاریکی من darkness
پهناور پهناور	pahnâvar broad, expansive	تازه	tâze fresh, novel, recent(ly);
	pay-e after, on the heels of		moreover, furthermore; تازه
پی پیادہ	piâde on foot, by foot (22); ~-	(1 =	vâred newcomer وارد مناهد
مي و	shodan to get out/off (of a	· · ·	tâksi taxi
	vehicle)	-	ta'lif composition
ييادەرو	piâderaw sidewalk; pedes-	تبريز	
.,	trian	تبعيد	tab'id exile; ~-kardan to exile
يياز	piâz onion	1 - 7	tahammol endurance;
ييازجه	piâzche scallion	تحمل	-nâpazir unen تحمل ناپذير
پیچیدن	pichidan to wrap, turn, twist		durable
بيدا	paydâ found, visible; obvious;	تحویل	tahvil consignment
	~-kardan to find (7)		takhtekhâb bed (17)
پير	pir old (15)		takhassos specialization
ييرامون	pirâmun environ		tokhm seed; تخم مرغ ~-e
پيراهن	pirâhan shirt; پيراهنخواب	1.5	, O F -

	morq egg		e shekâri shotgun شکاری
تخمهٔ حش	tokhme-ye cheshm eyeball tadbir management, plan tar wet tarâshidan to shave	تقديم	taqdim presentation; ~-kar-
تدى	tadbir management, plan	1	dan to present, offer (24)
 ت	tar wet	تقريبا	tagriban almost, nearly; ap-
تر تراشیدن	tarâshidan to shave		proximately (12)
ترسيده	torobche radish	تقسيم	taqsim division; ~-kardan to
تربپ	torobche radish tarbiat education; تربیت بدن	1	divide (25)
حربیت	~e badan physical educa-	تكايو	takâpu search, quest
	tion	تكان	takân shake; ~khordan to
ترجمه	tarjome translation		shake, move (intrs.); ~-dâ-
ر. ترحیح	tarjih preference; ~-dâdan to		dan to shake, move (trs.)
د. ي	prefer	تكرار	tekrâr repetition; ~-kardan to
تردامن	tardâman scandalous		repeat
ترس ترس	tars fear; ترساندن ~ândan to	تکه	tekke piece; تکه تکه کردن ~~-
0 3	scare; ترسیدن از -idan az to		kardan to chop to pieces
	fear, be afraid of (13)	تكيه	takye leaning; ~dâdan be to
ترش	torsh sour; ترشى ~i pickle		lean against
ترک	tark abandonment; ~-kardan	تلخ	talkh bitter; تلخى i bitterness talaffoz pronunciation
•	to leave		
ترمز	tormoz brake	تماشا	tamâshâ show, spectacle; ~-
ترن	tren train	# 1.1	kardan to watch (22)
تره	ye ترهٔ فرنگی ;tare chives	تماشا کر	tamâshâgar onlooker
	farangi leek	تمام	
تسبيح	tasbih rosary, worry beads		e harche - هرچه تمامتر ;all of مرچه تمامتر -e harche
	tashar battle ax		shodan to be finished; ~-
	teshne thirsty (24)		kardan to finish (21)
تصادف	tasâdof pl -ât accident; ~-kar-	تمد	tambr stamp
	dan to have an accident	تمدن	tamaddon civilization
تصميم	tasmim decision; ~-gereftan	تميز	
	to decide	J	clean (23)
تصنیف	tasnif composition	تن	tan body, person
O	tatbiqi comparative	تنب <u>ل</u>	tambal lazy (3)
	ta'bir dream interpretation	تند	tond fast, quick
تعجب		تنفس	tanaffos breathing
تعداد	te'dâd number (12)	تن <i>گ</i>	tang narrow, tight
تعريف	ta'rif definition; ~-kardan az to tell about, relate; ~-kar-	تنها	tanhâ alone, only (19)
	dan to define (13)	ە تو	to you (sing.). I tu(-ye) in,
4 227	ta'assob fanaticism		inside
تعصب	ta'mir repair; ~-kardan to	توالت	tuâlet toilet
تعمير	repair	توانا	tavânâ capable, able; wealthy
تغيير	taqyir change; ~-dâdan to	توانستن	tavân- to be توان/tavân
J	change (trs.); ~-kardan to		able (16)
	change (intrs.) (16)	توبه	tawbe repentance
تفريق	tafriq subtraction	تو <i>پ</i>	tup ball, cannonball; با توپ و
تفنگ	rtofang gun, rifle; تفنگ		b â~o tashar vindictive-

	ly	جراح	jarrâh surgeon; جراحی i sur-
توت	tut berry; توت فرنگیe		gery
	farangi strawberry	جری	jari bold
توجه	tavajjoh attention; ~-dâshtan	جريان	jarayân flow
	be to pay attention to	جرتت	jor'at courage; ~dâshtan to
توري	turi net, screen		dare
توقف	tavaqqof stop, halt; ~-kardan	جز	joz except; بجز اينكه (be) ~
•	to make a stop	•	in-ke unless, except that (19)
تولد	tavallod birth	جزيره	
تومان	tomân 10 rials, toman	حستحو	jostoju search, hunt; ~-kar-
تو <i>ی</i>	tu-ye in, inside	•	dan to seek, search for (21)
تهديد	tahdid threat; ~-kardan to	جستن	jastan/جه jeh- to leap, jump.
- 0	threaten	•	ju- to search for,
تهران	tehrân Tehran		seek (21)
_	tahi empty	جعبه	ja'be box (4)
تهی تیر	tir arrow, bullet; ~-	جعفري	ja'fari parsley
حير	andâkhtan to shoot an arrow		joqd owl
	or bullet; ~keshidan to tin-		joqrâfiâ geography
	gle; تیراندُازی ~andâzi		joft pair, mate
	archery		jegar liver
تيز	tiz sharp		jalb attraction; ~kardan to
J.	-	 ,	attract
ثابت	sâbet proven; ~-kardan to	حلسه	jalese session
	prove	جلو	jelaw-e in front of (25); ~-e
ثالث	sâles third	90,	chiz-i-râ gereftan to stop
ثاني	sâni second (adj.)		(trs.)
ثانیه	savani second ثواني	حلةقه	jelitqe vest
	(time) (12)		jamâ'at group
	(32220) (1-2)	•	jam' group; addition; ~-kar-
1~	jâ place (5)	جمع	dan to collect, gather; ~-bas-
جاروب	-		tan to add
جاروب	swept	(en-	jam'an in all, in toto (13)
جاري	jâri husband's brother's wife	جمعیت	jam'iyat group
	jâleb nice, interesting (20)	جمله	jomle sentence; totality
	jâme'e society; جامعه شناسی	•	jenn the djinn, demons; ~-
ج معه	-shenâsi sociology	جن	gereftan to exorcise demons
جان	jân soul, life; dear (15)	جنازه	janâze funeral procession
		جدارہ جنگل	jangal forest; جنگلداری ~dâri
جانفرسا	jânfarsâ debilitating	جنحل	forestry
جانور	jânvar animal; جانورشناسی -shenâsi zoology		jonub south
1.		جنوب	
جدا	jodâ separate; جدائی i sepa- ration; ~-kardan to separate	جنی	jenni pl اجنه ajenne genii,
1.	_		djinn
جدول	jadval table, crisscross; جدول	جو	jaw barley. ¶ ju- pres. stem of
	e kalemât-e کلمات متقاطع -e kalemât -e	(جستن
	_	جواب	javâb -ât answer, response; ~
جديد	jadid new (5)		dâdan to answer (10)

جوان	javân young, youth (2);	چکیدن	chekidan to drip
•	-mard chivalrous, جوانمرد	چگونه	chegune how, in what manner
	noble	جلو	chelaw plain steamed rice
جواهر	javâher -ât jewel	جمدان	
جور	jur (colloq.) = tawr; آنجور	جنان	
	= ~in أينجور ; ân~=	•	(16); چنانچه ~che in case
	che~ = che- چجور		that
	tawr	جند	chand how many, how much
جوراب	jurâb socks; جوراب نايلن ~e		om(in)~ چن دمين، چندم ;(14)
	nâylon stockings		what humber?; چندشنبه
جوهر	jawhar ink		~shambe what day of the
جهان	jahân world (25); جهانآ فرين		week?
	∼âfarin world-creator	چندان	
جهود	jahud Jew	چنگال	changâl fork (15)
جيب	jib pocket; ~-boridan to pick-	چنین	chonin so, so much, such (16)
	pocket	چو	چون cho apocopated form of
		چوب	chub wood
چاپ	châp-shodan to be printed; ~-	چون	chon because, since (11);
•	kardan to print		when, if; like; چونکه ~-ke
چادر	châdor tent; veil		because, since
چاره	châre remedy, alternative	چه	che what (4); چهچه
چاق	châq fat; ~kardan to puff on	•	cheche whetheror
•	a waterpipe to get it going	چهار	chahâr four; چهارگوش ~gush
چانه	châne chin	·	square
چای	chây tea (11)	چهارده	chahârdah fourteen
چپ	chap left	چهل	chehel forty
جتر	chatr umbrella	چيز	chiz thing (6)
چتر چرا	chérâ why (2); yes in reply to	چینی	chini china
•	a negative question (6)		
چراغ	cherâq light, lamp, flashlight	حاجت	haya'ej need, حوائح haya'e
Car	(21)	•	necessity
چرخ	charkh wheel (14); دوخرخه	حادثه	havâdes حوادث havâdes
G.	do~e bicycle		event, incident; از بد حادثه
چرک	cherk filth(y)		az bad-e ~ as bad luck would
چرم	charm leather		have it
چسبیدن	chasbidan be to stick to, cling	حاشيه	hashie pl حواشي havashi
•	to		edge, margin
چشم	cheshm/chashm eye;	حاضر	hâzer present
1 .	pezeshk eye~ چشمپزشک	حال	hâl pl احوال ahvâl state, con-
	doctor		dition (21)
چشمبند	cheshmbandi sleight-of-hand	حالا	hâlâ now, at present (11)
چشیدن	cheshidan to taste	حالت	hâlât state, حالات hâlât
جطور	chetawr how? (10)		condition
چغندر	choqondar sugar beet	حتما	hatman certainly, surely (14)
چقدر	cheqadr how much (14)	حتى	háttâ even, until (19)
چکمه	chakme boots	حدس	hads guess; ~-zadan to guess
•		_	

	(18)		rat-e ~e Ministry of Foreign
	hodud-e about, ca.	4	Affairs
	haram sanctuary	خاستن	khâstan/خيز khiz- to rise
حرف	harf -hâ word, what one says		khâssegi elite
	horuf letter حروف (10); pl حروف	خاصیت	khâssiyat characteristic
	of the alphabet; ~-zadan to speak (10)	خاطر	khâter mind; خاطرجمع 'jam' relieved; be ~e for the sake
ح کت	harakat pl حركات harakât		of; خاطره ~e pl -rât memory
	motion, movement; ~kar-	خاک	
	dan to move (22)		~âlud dusty
حس	hess feeling; ~-kardan to feel	خاكستر	khâkestar ash; خاکستری
حسآب	hesâb account, reckoning	,	grey
حسرت	hasrat regret	خال	khâl tattoo, mole, beauty spot;
حضرت	hazrat pl حضرات hazarât ex-		~kubidan to tattoo
	cellency, majesty (title)	خاله	khâle maternal aunt
حق	hoquq right; ~-	خالي	khâli empty, void (24)
	dâshtan to be right, be in the	خاموش	khâmush silent; ~-kardan to
	right		turn out/off, silence (21)
	hoquq law		khânedân family
حقيقت	haqâyeq حقايق haqâyeq	خانم	khânom lady, Miss, Mrs., Ms.
	truth, reality	•	(4)
حكايت	hekâyat story, tale; ~-kardan	-	khânevâde family
	to narrate, tell a story		khâne house, home (1)
حكيم	hokamâ wise حکما hokamâ	خاور	khâvar orient; خاورشناسی
	man, physician		oriental studies
حل	hall solution; ~kardan to solve	-	khâidan to gnaw
1_	halabi tinplate		khobs vileness
	halazun snail	خبر	khabar pl اخبار akhbâr news khodâ God; خداحافظ ~hâfez
حارون	halq throat	خدا	
	halqe ring		خداحافظی کردن با ;goodbye
	hamâse epic		∼hâfezi-kardan ba to say goodbye to (23)
	hammâm bath(house)	11.412	khodâvand lord
	hamle attack; ~kardan to		khodâyegân great lord
حمله	attack		khedmat service; خدمت بجا
حنا	hennâ henna; ~-bastan to ap-	٠	be jâ âvordan to
-	ply henna		make an obeisance
حوائج	havâ'ej pl of حاجت	خر	khar donkey, ass. I khar-
حوصله	hawsele patience		خریدن pres. stem of
	hayât courtyard	خراب	kharâb broken, ruined (3);
	hayf pity		bât ruin - خرابات e pl ~ خرابه
		خربزه	kharboze Persian melon
خارج	khârej exterior, outside; ~ az	خرج	kharj expenditure; ~-kardan
	outside of; ~-shodan az to		to spend (money) kharchang crab
	go out of, leave; خارجه ~e	خرچنگ	kharchang crab
	foreign: وزارت خارجه vezâ-	خرد	ahlاهل خرد ; ahl

	e ~ wise people	ځوب	khub good, well (1)
خردمند	kheradmand wise	خود	
-	khardal mustard	- 3-	wild
	kheradmand wise	خودنمائي	khodnomâi self display; ~~
•	khers bear	6	kardan to display oneself
خرگوش	khargush rabbit	خوراک	khorâk foodstuff, food
خر ما	khormâ date	خوردن	khordan/خور khor- to eat,
	khoruj exit, going out	• • •	drink (9); ~ be to hit, collide
خروج	khorus rooster		with
	kharidan to buy (9)	خورش	khoresh stew
	khazande reptile	خوش	khosh good; من ميآيد از am miâyad az I like (17);
	khazidan to crawl		am miâyad az I like (17);
~	khazine treasury; خزينه دار		-o besh chit ~ خوش و بش
	~dâr treasurer	44	chat
خسته	khaste tired (24)		khoshhâl happy (3)
	khesht brick	خوشكل	khoshgel pretty, handsome
	khoshk dry; خشكيدن ~idan		(13)
•	to dry out		khoshmaze delicious (9)
خصوصہ	khosusi private		khuk pig
	khatt pl خطوط khotut line,	خون	خون راه انداختن; khun blood
	handwriting		~ râh-andâkhtan to start a
خفاش	khoffâsh bat		blood feud; خو نسرد ~sard calm
	khâb- to sleep خواب/khâb		
	khafif light		khish self
	khalvat empty (24)		khiâbân avenue
خم	kham bent, bent over		khiâr cucumber
خميازه	khamyâze yawn; ~-keshidan		khiâl thought, notion
-7	to yawn	_	khayr good(ness), charity
خنده	khande laughter	خيره	
	khandidan to laugh		shodan to stare blankly
-	khu habit, custom; ~-gereftan	خيز	خاستن khiz- pres. stem of
	be to become accustomed to	خیس	khis wet
خواب	khâb sleep (17); خواباندن	خیلی	kháyli very, much, many (2)
	~andan to put to sleep, lay	1.1.	Jahan inside interior
	down; خوابيدن~idan to	داحل	dâkhel inside, interior
	sleep, go to sleep (17); ~-di-		dâdâsh brother, friend
	dan to dream	دادن	
خواستن	khâstan/خواه khâh- to want	دار	dâr- pres. stem of <i>dâshtan</i> ; o nadâr all one
	(6); to be about to (16)		has, possessions
خوان	_	دارا	dârâ having, possessing
خواندن	khândan/خوان khân- to read,	•	
	recite, sing (7)	دارالتادیب	
خواه	خواستن khâh- pres. stem of	دارچین داستا <i>ن</i>	dâstân story
خواهر	khâhar sister (11)	داستان داشتن	dastan story dashtan/دار dâr- to have,
خواهش	khâhesh request; ~-kardan to	داستن	hold, keep (7)
	request	65	noid, keep (1)

داميزشكي	dâmpezeshki veterinary med-		¶ derham drachma
5 74	icine	دريا	
دامن	dâman skirt	-	aquatic دریائی
دانا	dânâ -yân learned, wise	دريافتن	dar-yâftan/دریاب dar-yâb-
	dânestan/دان dân- to know,	, 0	to comprehend
	realize (9)	دزد	dozd thief; دزدیدن ~idan to
دانش	dânesh knowledge; دانشجو		rob, steal
	~ju student (3); دانشکده	دست	
	~kade faculty, school;		~ bar-dâshtan az to stop,
	eâh university (3) دانشگاه		cease; ~-keshidan az to stop,
دانه ِ	dâne seed, grain; unit (12)		cease; دست کم -e kam at
دایر کردن	dâyer-kardan to run (a shop)	. 1	least
دائی	dâi maternal uncle	دستپاچه	
دبيرستان	dabirestân high school	دستشوئى	
دختر	dokhtar girl, daughter (5)	0	dastkesh glove
در	dar in (2). ¶ dar door (1); ~	دستور	
	zadan to knock (at a door)		rule; دستور زبان ~e zabân
دراز	darâz long (17); ~-keshidan	4" .	grammar deste group, set
. Т.	to stretch out (17)	دسته دشنام	
	darâmad income	دسنام	curse
درآمدن	dar-âmadan to come out,	دشوار	
درآوردن		دعا	
دراوردن	(clothes) (16); to take out	دعوا	1 7
دربارهٔ		دعوت	
دربره	(3)	وحوت	invite (24)
درجه		دفتر	• '
	derakht -ân tree	دفعه	
درخشيدن	derakhshidan to shine		instance (12)
درد	dard pain (22); ~kardan to	دف <i>ن</i>	dafn burial; ~-kardan to bury
	be ~e بدرد کسی خوردن ;hurt	دقيق	daqiq precise; دقيقًا ~an
	kási khordan to be of use to	<u> </u>	precisely
	s.o. (20)	دقيقه	daqâyeq دقايق daqâyeq
دررفتن	dar-raftan to run away (16)		minute (12)
درزی	darzi tailor	د کان	dakâkin د کا کین dakâkin
درس	درس خواندن ;dars lesson		shop (19)
	khândan to study (7)		doktor doctor
درست	dorost right, correct; ~-kar-		doktorâ doctorate, Ph.D.
	dan to fix (15)		dokme button
درشت	dorosht huge, rough	-	دیگر = degar
	dar miân-e amidst	دل	del heart, stomach; ~ bar-
15	deram drachma		dâshtan az to give up hope
	darvâze gate	: 1:	of
	doruq lie		delpazir pleasant delâvar warrior, brave
درویش	darvish poor man, dervish	دلاور دلداری	
درهم	darham confused, jumbled.		deldâri consolation; ~dâdan

	to console		~kardan to be late (22)
دليل	dalil reason	ديروز	diruz yesterday (6)
دم	dam moment, breath		
دماغ	damâq nose; brain	دیشب دیگر	digar other (6); (+ neg.) no
دمپائی	dampâi slippers		more (17)
دمیدن	damidan to break (dawn)	ديوار	divâr wall
دنبال	dombâl-e after, on the heels	ديوانه	
٠.	of; ~-e chiz-i gashtan to	ديه	
	look for something (20); ~-e		
	chiz-i gereftan to pick up	ذره	zarre particle, atom; ذره بين
	(where left off)	•	~bin magnifying glass
دندان	دندانپاککن ;dandân tooth	ذغال	zoqâl coal, charcoal
	~pâkkon toothbrush;	ذوحياتين	zuhayâtayn amphibian
	pezeshk dentist دندانپزشک	ڏهن	
دنيا	donyâ this world; be ~ âma-		
	dan to be born	رابع	râbe' fourth
دو	daw- pres. stem of دویدن.	راجع به	râje' be about, concerning
1.5	¶ do two davâ pl ادویه advie medicine	راحت	râhat comfortable
دوا دوازده	dava pı ادویه advie medicine davâzdah twelve	راديو	râdyo radio
دوجرخه	docharkhe bicycle	راست	râst right, true (25); راستى ~i
دوچرڪه دوختن	dukhtan/دوز duz- to stitch,		truth
دوحس	sew	راستكار	
دور	dur far, distant (5); ~ andâkh-	راسو	râsu weasel
30	tan to throw away (16)	راندن	rândan/ران rân- to drive
دوران	dawrân period (of time)	رانندگی	
دوره	dawre turn	1.21	to drive rânande driver
دوره گرد	dawregard street seller,		
	hawker	راه	oftâdan to get under way, set
دوست	dust friend (6); ~-dashtan to		out (18); ~-raftan to walk,
	love (15)		go, proceed; ~-nemudan to
دوسره	dosare round-trip		guide; راهنما ~nemâ guide
دوغلو	doqolu twin	رای	ra'y management, planning
دولت	-i belong دولتی; dawlat state	ربع	rob' quarter (12)
	ing to the state, government-	رحمت	rahmat mercy; ~-kardan to
31	dawidan, davidan to run		have mercy
دوی <i>دن</i> ده	dah ten. J deh pl دهات -ât	رخ	rokh cheek
02	village (9). ¶ deh- pres. stem	رخساره	rokhsåre cheek
	of دادن.	رخت	rakht clothes, clothing
دهاتی	dehâti villager	رختخواب	rakhtekhâb bedclothes
	dahân mouth	•	(sheets, blankets, &c.)
	diâr region	ردیف	radif row
	bin- to see (6) بين/	رزرو	rezerv reservation; ~-kardan to reserve
ديده	gân eye- دیدگان dide pl	رساندن	resân(i)dan to deliver
دير	dir late; ~-shodan to get late;	رستن	rastan/و rah- to escape.
	20	67	•

restorân restaurant residan be to arrive at, reach (11) reshte noodle; field of specialization roshd growth, maturity; kardan to grow, mature rashid eldest, grown raqbat delight, desirousness raftâr conduct raftâr onduct raftan ob prow to sweep ragidan to dance rag vein rol steering wheel ram skittish, not tame; rang color (16) raws pres. stem of vibar prows rubes rol steering wheel rafac, aspect. ¶ ru- pres. stem of vibar noise psychology; rubah fox ruberu-ye in front of, facing rupush smock ruude bowel rouz day (8); ruzgâr time rustâ village rusgar time rustâ village rusgar time rusta village rusgar time rusta village rusgar time residan to starrive at, reach (11) reshte noodle; field of specialization rish ten pices riz tiny. ¶ riz- pres. stem of vivâr inty. ¶ riz- pres. stem of vivâr shubarb rie lung y zâr bitter(!y), wretched(!y) zân = az ân (poet.) zâr bitter(!y), wretched(!y) zâr sardan to shve the beard ruânsoul; zâr bitter(!y), wretched(!y) zâr sardan to shve the bear		J rostan/رو ru- to grow		generally
ربی انجاده استخداه الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ا	رستوران	restorân restaurant	روئيدن	ruidan to grow
reshte noodle; field of specialization roshd growth, maturity: ~ kardan to grow, mature rashid eldest, grown raqbat delight, desirousness raftâr conduct raftâr/g) raw- to go (7). J roftan/وی rub- to sweep raqsidan to dance rag vein du rol steering wheel ram skittish, not tame; ~-kardan to shy off rang color (16) praw- pres. stem of نصل face, aspect. J ru- pres. stem of common fase, psychology; wkâvi psychiatry rubâh fox ruberu-ye in front of, facing ruy rupush smock ruh pl pl arvâh spirit; cleric app ruz day (8); pl pl arvâh spirit; cleric app ruz day (8); po mame newspaper (7) ruzgâr time rustâ village rusari headscarf rawshan light, bright, clear; ~-kardan to turn on (lights) (21) ru-ye on (6) ruyeham jumbled; pray de desirousness riz tiny. J riz- pres. stem of incition, clear, clear ish beard; vitis heard; rivâs hubarb rie lung zâr bitter(ly), wretched(ly) zân = az ân (poet.) zân = az ân (poet.) zân eaz ân (poet.) z	رسیدن به	residan be to arrive at, reach	رياضيات	riâziyât mathematics
rization roshd growth, maturity; ~ kardan to grow, mature rashid eldest, grown raphat delight, desirousness raftâr conduct raftan/y raw-to go (7). ¶ roftan/y rup- rub- to sweep ragsidan to dance rag vein لا الله الله الله الله الله الله الله			ريختن	rikhtan/ريز riz- to pour; to
roshd growth, maturity; ** kardan to grow, mature rashid eldest, grown rashid eldest, grown raqbat delight, desirousness raftâr conduct raftan/o, raw- to go (7). J roftan/-, prub- to sweep raqsidan to dance rag vein d, rol steering wheel ram skittish, not tame; ** dan to shy off sare, pres, stem of raw- pres, pres, pressed and pressed an	رشته		• -	fall to pieces
kardan to grow, mature rashid eldest, grown raqbat delight, desirousness raqbat delight, desirousness raftar conduct raftar/g) raw- to go (7). J roftan/روب rub- to sweep ragsidan to dance rag vein du rol steering wheel ram skittish, not tame; ~-kardan to shy off rang color (16) py raw- pres. stem of رست face, aspect. J ru face, aspect. J ru pres. stem of رست rubâh fox ruberu-ye in front of, facing rupush smock ruh pl pl arvâh spirit; cleric rude bowel ruz day (8); yan- affar no dolther rustâ village rusari headscarf rawshan light, bright, clear; ~-kardan to turn on (lights) (21) ru-ye on (6) ray-bar day ard ruberu-ye affer beard; visâs rhubarb rie lung rivisâs rhubarb rie lung zâr bitter(ly), wretched(ly) zân = az ân (poet.) zânu -ân knee zâvie pl lujej zavâyâ corner, angle, recess zâvel ceasing vaban tongue, language (7) zahmat bother, rrouble; rakeshidan to go to trouble; resekh sarberries zadan/ú jzan- to hit, strike (10) zard yellow (4) zardâlu apricot zardchube turmeric zardchube turmeric zardan to turn on (lights) comali land, earth, floor (17); zambur bee zanjabil ginger zanjir chain zendegâni life (9) zendegi life; ~-kardan to live (7)			ريز	riz tiny. I riz- pres. stem of
raphat delight, desirousness raftar conduct rag vein ragidan to dance rag vein ragidan to dance rag vein ram skittish, not tame; ~-kardan to shy off ram color (16) ع رست (مستور) المستورة ال	رشد			
raqbat delight, desirousness raftar conduct raftan/op rub- to sweep raftan/op rub- to sweep ragsidan to dance rag vein rol steering wheel ram skittish, not tame; ~-kardan to shy off sang color (16) praw- pres. stem of راب الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ال			ریش	ریشتراشی کردن;rish beard
raftâr conduct raftan/ ربواس probe to sweep ragsidan to dance rag vein ل				
rie lung rag vein (وسید روب rip to sweep rag vein (الله على الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ال			1.	
الم المعادر المياري المعادر			•	
ragsidan to dance rag vein do rol steering wheel ram skittish, not tame; ~kardan to shy off rang color (16) go raw- pres. stem of روان التلاقية والتلاقية والتلا	رفنن		ريه	He lung
رافر المعلق المقدودة المعلق المقدودة المعلق المقدودة المعلق المقدودة المعلق المقدودة المعلق المقدودة المعلق المعل	، قصدان		.1:	zâr hitter(ly) wrotohod(ly)
رافر المعلق المقدودة المعلق المقدودة المعلق المقدودة المعلق المقدودة المعلق المقدودة المعلق المقدودة المعلق المعل	رکسیدن	rac vein		
ram skittish, not tame; ~-kardan to shy off rang color (16) graw- pres. stem of رائل المنت الم			-	_
dan to shy off rang color (16) graw- pres. stem of رائل face, aspect. ¶ ru- pres. stem of رستن face, aspect. ¶ ru- pres. stem of رستن grawan soul; رستن prayân soul; روانكوى rawân soul; روانكوى rayân sig psychology; والكاوى rayân sig psychology; والكاوى rayân fox relever, wild fox ruberu-ye in front of, facing rupush smock ruh pl وال المالي aryân sig rupush smock rube ever ceresh barberries cleric for ruz day (8); والكاوى rayân time; aday (8); والكاوى rayân time, era (25) zamân time, era (25) zamân land, earth, floor (17); zambur bee zanjabil ginger zanjir chain zendegâni life (9) zendegi life; ~-kardan to live (7)			•	
ramg color (16) graw- pres. stem of رفت Jru face, aspect. Jru- pres. stem of ربات face, aspect. Jru- pres. stem of collapse: ربات face, aspect. Jru- pres. stem of civil press. Jru- pres. stem of collapse: ربات face, aspect. Jru- pres. stem of civil press. Jru- pres. stem of collapse: civil press of collapse: civil press of civil press. Stem of collapse: civil press of civil press. Stem of collapse: civil press of civil press. Stem of civil press	دا		راويه	angle recess
raw- pres. stem of رفان الموقع الموق	, ن <i>گ</i>	rang color (16)	١: اتا	_
ravân soul; روانشاسی she- nâsi psychology; روانشاسی ravân soul; روانشاسی she- nâsi psychology; روانشاسی rubâh fox rubâh fox ruberu-ye in front of, facing rupush smock ruh pl الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل				
روانشاسی المه المه المه المه المه المه المه المه			•	
ravân soul; روانکاوی روانشناسی به chasi psychology; روانکاوی روانکاوی به châsi psychology; روانکاوی بعده مشفق به châsi psychology; روانکاوی به châsi psychology; روانکاوی به châsi psychology; روانکاوی به châsi psychology; روانکاوی بعده به châsi psychology; روونکای بعده به châsi psychology; روانکاوی بعده بواد بعده بعده بعده بعده به châsi psychology; روانکاوی بعده به châsi psychology; روانکاوی بعده به châsi psychology; روانکاوی بعده بعده بعده بعده بعده بعده بعده بعده				
nâsi psychology; روانكاوى hother," please **Râvi psychiatry rubâh fox ruberu-ye in front of, facing rupush smock ruh pl ارواح الماه	روان	ravân soul; روانشناسي <a he-<="" td=""><td></td><td></td>		
rubâh fox ruberu-ye in front of, facing rupush smock ruh pl ارواح الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ال				bother," please
ruberu-ye in front of, facing rupush smock ruh pl اواح اواح الها الهاج			زدن	
rupush smock ruh pl اروا arvâh spirit; اردچوبه روحانیون arvâni pl اروا عardchube turmeric zereshk barberries rude bowel igo ruz day (8); انگین zardchube turmeric zereshk barberries ruz day (8); تعرف تونی zardchube turmeric zereshk barberries igo ruz day (8); zerang clever, smart, wily (3) ruz day (8); zardân saffron igo zardân saffron zaráfañ saffron zoqâl charcoal zamân time, era (25) ido zamân time, era (25) zemestân winter (8) zamin land, earth, floor (17); zam woman, wife (3). ¶ zanpres. stem of icity zambur bee zanjabil ginger zanjabil ginger zanjir chain ruyeham jumbled; والوفتن zendegâni life (9) zendegî life; ~-kardan to live (7)				
ruh pl ارواح اردی الله الله واحادی الله الله واحادی الله الله واحادی الله الله واحادی الله واحادی الله واحدی				
rude bowel joruz day (8); رشک روحانیون ruz day (8); رخش روحانی روده الله و تعدیم و الله و تعدیم و الله و تعدیم و الله و تعدیم و تعدی		_	•	_
rude bowel jop ruz day (8); رفگ روقت time; مان موقع المعتمد	روح	ruh pl ارواح arvāh spirit;		
rude bowel joy ruz day (8); روکه روڅات time; ماه الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ا				
ruz day (8); رفات موقع time; دور الله موقع الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل				
رمان تعتشا time, era (25) ruzgâr time rustâ village rusari headscarf rawshan light, bright, clear;			-	
ruzgâr time rustâ village rusari headscarf rawshan light, bright, clear;	לפנ			
ruzgâr time rustâ village rusari headscarf rawshan light, bright, clear; ~kardan to turn on (lights) (21) rawqan oil (21) ru-ye on (6) ruyeham jumbled; ruyeham jumbled; γεικατία το collapse; γεικατία το collapse; γεικατία το καναν τετετε το του τος τατετε το του τος τατετε το του τος τατετε το του του του του του του του του του			•	
rusari village rusari headscarf rawshan light, bright, clear; ~kardan to turn on (lights) (21) rawqan oil (21) ru-ye on (6) ruyeham jumbled; ruyeham jumbled; رويه وارفتن رويهم ruyeham jumbled; رويه وارفتن رويهم وارفتن رويهم وارفتن رويهم رويه وارفتن رويهم رويه رويهم رويه رويهم (7)	روز گار		•	
rusari headscarf rawshan light, bright, clear;	روستا		رمین	
rawshan light, bright, clear;		_	Δ:	
رنبور (21) تنجيل روغن zambur bee زنجيل روغن rawqan oil (21) ترجيل تanjabil ginger zanjir chain ru-ye on (6) تنجيل رويهم ruyeham jumbled; وزندگانی zendegâni life (9) zendegi life; ~-kardan to live lapse: مورفتن عربه مورفته المعادية عربه مورفته المعادية عربه عربه وارفتن (7)		rawshan light, bright, clear;	ری	
rawqan oil (21) تنجيل zanjabil ginger روغن zanjir chain روغن ru-ye on (6) تابيل zanjir chain رويهم ruyeham jumbled; رندگانی zendegâni life (9) zendegi life; ~kardan to live lapse: مورفتن rafte (7)	•		: نبور	_
rawqan oil (21)			ر ببور i نحسل	
ru-ye on (6)	روغن	rawqan oil (21)	انحب	
ruyeham jumbled; رويهم zendegi life; ~kardan to live زندگی خونه به vâ-raftan to col-	روی		زندگانی	
vâ-raftan to col- (7) lapse; وارفتن rafte زنده zende alive	رويهم	ruyeham jumbled; رويهم	زندگی	
zende alive زنده zende	,	-vâ-raftan to col وارفتن	5	_
		rafte رویهمرفته;	زنده	zende alive

زن <i>گ</i>	zang bell; ~-zadan to ring	ستاره	setâre star; ستارهشناسی ~she-
زوبين	zubin javelin; روبينبازى~bâzi		nâsi astronomy
	fighting with javelins	ستدن	
زود	zud early; quick, fast (8)	•.	away
زودباور	zudbâvar gullible	ستون	
زور	zur force	سحر	33
زه	zeh bravo!		early riser sakht hard; very (8)
زهر	zahr poison; زهر هجر ~-e hajr		sokhan speech
.1 •	pangs of separation	•	sar head; beginning, end; سر
زياد	ziâd much; (with neg.) not much, not too (13)	سر	مر , dar-âvordan ~ درآوردن از
زيبا	zibâ beautiful		az to understand; سردرد
			~dard headache (23); بسر
زیپ زیر	zir-e under (23); زير گرفتن		پردن be ~ bordan to live. ¶
لسار	zir-gereftan to run over		sor slip; ~-khordan to slip
زيرا (كه)	zírâ (ke) because	سرا	sarâ public building, official
زيرپوش	zirpush underwear	.1	residence, palace
زيرپيراهن	zirpirâhan undershirt	سرازير	sarâzir headed down, rolling
زيرزمين	zirzamin basement	سرآستين ·	down sarâstin cuff (shirt)
زيره	zire cumin	O- 3	
زيست	zist life; زیستشناسی ~shenâsi	سراغ	gereftan to look for, search
	biology		for someone; be ~-e kas-i
زیستن زیلو	zi- to live زی/zi-		âmadan to come looking for
زيلو	zilu coarse type of rug		someone
زین	zin saddle. ¶ zin = از این	سرب	sorb lead
		سرد	sard cold (adj.) (8)
	sâkhtemân building (13)	سرشير	sarshir cream
ساختن		سرشناس	
4	make (22)	سرک ت	sarak-keshidan to poke the
ساده	sâde plain, simple (11) sâ'at pl ساعات sâ'ât hour;		head out
ساعت	clock (12)	سرگرم	sargarm busy (20); سرگرمی
ساعد	sâ'ed forearm	1.	~i hobby, amusement sarmâ cold (n.); ~-khordan
	sâq leg	سرما	to catch cold
_	sâl year (10)	سرمهای	sormei dark blue (4)
	sâlâd salad		sargozasht adventure
سالم	sâlem sound, healthy	سرنوشت	sarnevesht fate
سانتيمت	sântimetr centimeter	سروصدا	sarosedâ noise; ~-kardan to
سايه	sâye shadow, shade		make noise
سایه سبز سبق سبیل سپردن	sabz green (4)	سروكار	sarokâr-dâshtan bâ to asso-
سبق	sabaq lesson		ciate with, to have to do with
سبيل	sebil mustache	سريع السير	sari'ossayr express
سپردن	separ- to en- سپار/separ-	سعی	sa'y errort, attempt, ~-kardan
	trust	** -	to try (20)
سپس	sepas then, consequently	سفال	sofâl clay, pottery

سفر	safar journey		∼band bra
سفىد	sefid white (4)		
سقط	sagat revilement	شاخه	shâkhe branch
سکو	saqat revilement saku platform sag dog	شاد	shâd joyful, happy; شادمان
سگ	sag dog	•	~emân glad
سگک	sagak buckle	شانزده	shânzdah sixteen
سلام	salâm greeting; ~-kardan be		sha'er pl شعرا sho'arâ poet
1	to greet (23)	شاعر شاگرد	shagerd pupil, apprentice
سلامت	salâmat healthy; سلامتي ~i	شال	shâl shawl; مال گردن ~-e gar-
	health		dan scarf
سلطان	salâtin سلاطين salâtin	شام	shâm evening (9); evening
1	sultan	.1.4	meal (22)
سماجت	samâjat obstinacy	شانه	shâne shoulder
-	samandar salamander	شاه	shâh -ân king
	sanjâb squirrel	شاهنامه	Shâhnâme the Book of Kings
سنجاق سنگ	sanjaq pin		by Abu'l-Qasim Firdawsi
سنک	sang stone, rock; سنگين ~in	شاهنشاه	(completed A.D. 1010)
11.	heavy sangak pebble	ساهنشاه	shâhanshâh king of kings,
		شايد	emperor shấyad maybe (16)
سوار	savâr horseman, riding (vehi- cle); ~-shodan to mount, get	شايستن	shâyestan/شای shây- to be
	in/on (vehicle); سواری ~i	سايسس	proper
	horseman ship	شب	shab night
سؤال	so'al -ât question; ~-kardan	شانه روز	shabâneruz day, 24 hours
	to ask questions (10)	333	(12)
سوختن	suz- to burn سوز/sukhtan	شباهت	shebâhat resemblance; ~-
سود	sud profit		dâshtan be to resemble
سوداوي	sawdâvi melancholic	شبت	shebbet dill
سوراخ	surâkh hole	شپش	shepesh lice
سوز	سوختن suz- pres. stem of	شتر	shotor camel
سوسک	susk beetle	سپش شپش شتر شترمرغ	shotormorq ostrich
سه	se three	شخص	ashkhâs اشخاص shakhâs
سی سیاه	si thirty		person
	siâh black (4)		sheddat intensity
سيب	sib apple; سیب زمینی zamini potato	شدن	shaw- to become شو/shaw- to become (9); be possible (3rd sing.)
سير	sir garlic. ¶ sir seer, 75 grams	شديد	
سيزده	sizdah thirteen	شراب	sharâb wine
سيل	sayl flood, torrent	شربت	-ashrebe po اشربه sharbat pl
سیلی	sili slap; ~-khordan to get		tion, drink
_	slapped; ~-zadan to slap	ش رت	short briefs
سيم	sim wire	شرح	sharh explanation; شرح حال
سيمان	simân cement	-	~e hâl biography
سينما	sinemâ cinema, movie theater (20)	شرط	dition, qualification (19); ~
سينه	sine breast, chest; سينه بند		bastan to make a bet; ~-kar-

	dan to stipulate; بشرطی که	شهباز	shahbâz falcon
	be ~ike provided that (19)	شهر	shahr city (2); شهرباني ~bâni
شرق	sharq east, orient		police headquarters; شهردار
شروع	shoru'-kardan be (+ inf.) to		~dâr mayor
C	begin, start (20)	شىء	shay' pl اشياء ashyâ' thing,
شستن	shu- to wash (20) شو/shu- to	_	article
شش	shesh six	شير	shir milk; lion; مثيرى ~i
شصت	shast sixty		unweaned
شعار	sho'âr motto, slogan, emblem	شيراز	shirâz Shiraz
شغال	shaqâl jackel	شيرين	shirin sweet; شيريني ~i sweets
شغل	shoql work, occupation	شیرین شیشه شیطان	shishe glass
شفيع	shafi' intercessor	شيطان	shayâtin شياطين shayâtin
سعل شفیع شک شکار شکر شکستز	shaqiqe temple		devil
شک	shakk doubt	شیمی	shimi chemistry
شكار	shekâr hunt	شيهه	shihe-keshidan to neigh
شکر	shekar sugar. ¶ shokr thanks		
شكستر	shekan- to شکن/shekan	صاحب	sâheb owner, master
,	break (23)	صبح	sobh morning, dawn; صبح
شكم	shekam belly, stomach		e sâdeq true dawn حادق
شكوه	shokuh splendor; باشکوه bâ~	صبحانه	
-	splendid	صبحدم	sobhdam the break of dawn
شل	shol loose, flabby	صحبت	sohbat-kardan to speak, talk
شلاق	shallaq switch, crop		(15)
شلغم شلوار	shalqam turnip	صحت	sehhat health; ~-yâftan to
شلوار	shalvar trousers, pants; شلوار		recover
	شلوار ;shalvâr trousers, pants حتانی e kattâni blue jeans	صحن	sahn mosque courtyard
	shalvar trousers, pants; شلوار ختانی e kattani blue jeans sholuq crowded (24)		sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct
شلوار شلوغ شما	e kattâni blue jeans sholuq crowded (24)	صحیح صد	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred
شلوغ شما	e kattâni blue jeans حتاني	صحيح	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~kar-
شلوغ شما شماره	حکتانی ~-e kattâni blue jeans sholuq crowded (24) shomâ you (pl.)	صحیح صد صدا	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~-kar- dan to call out to
شلوغ شما	د منانی ~-e kattâni blue jeans sholuq crowded (24) shomâ you (pl.) shomâre number (12)	صحیح صد صدا صندلی	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~~kar- dan to call out to sandali chair (1)
شلوغ شما شماره شمال شمد	sholuq crowded (24) shomâ you (pl.) shomâre number (12) shemâl north shamad thin white sheet	صحیح صد صدا	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~-kar- dan to call out to sandali chair (1) surat face; case: در آنصورت
شلوغ شما شماره شمال	sholuq crowded (24) shomâ you (pl.) shomâre number (12) shemâl north	صحیح صد صدا صندلی	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~-kar- dan to call out to sandali chair (1) surat face; case: در آنصورت dar ân ~ in that case; در غير
شلوغ شما شماره شمال شمد	sholuq crowded (24) shomâ you (pl.) shomâre number (12) shemâl north shamad thin white sheet shomordan/شمار shomâr- to	صحیح صد صدا صندلی	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~-kar- dan to call out to sandali chair (1) surat face; case: منافع المنافع ال
شلوغ شما شماره شمال شمد	shouq crowded (24) shomâ you (pl.) shomâre number (12) shemâl north shamad thin white sheet shomordan/شمار shomâr- to count	صحیح صد صدا صندلی	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~-kar- dan to call out to sandali chair (1) surat face; case: مر أنصورت dar ân ~ in that case; در غير المعرب الم
شلوغ شما شماره شمال شمد	shouq crowded (24) shomâ you (pl.) shomâre number (12) shemâl north shamad thin white sheet shomordan/شمار shomâr- to count shamshir sword; ~-zadan to strike with a sword; رني ~zani sword-play	صحیح صد صدا صندلی	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~-kar- dan to call out to sandali chair (1) surat face; case: منافع المنافع ال
شلوغ شما شماره شمال شمد	shouq crowded (24) shomâ you (pl.) shomâre number (12) shemâl north shamad thin white sheet shomordan/شمار shomâr- to count shamshir sword; ~-zadan to strike with a sword; د تعمیرزنی خیمان shenâs- to	صحیح صدا صدا صندلی صورت	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~-kar- dan to call out to sandali chair (1) surat face; case: در أنصورت در غير dar ân ~ in that case; در غير dar qayr-e in ~ otherwise; ~-bastan to ap- pear, seem; to be possible
شلوغ شما شماره شمال شمد شمردن	shouq crowded (24) shomâ you (pl.) shomâre number (12) shemâl north shamad thin white sheet shomordan/شمار shomâr- to count shamshir sword; ~-zadan to strike with a sword;	صحیح صدا صدا صندلی صورت	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~-kar- dan to call out to sandali chair (1) surat face; case: در أنصورت در غير dar ân ~ in that case; در غير dar qayr-e in ~ otherwise; ~-bastan to ap- pear, seem; to be possible
شما شماره شمال شمد شمد شمردن شمشیر شناختن	sholuq crowded (24) shomâ you (pl.) shomâre number (12) shemâl north shamad thin white sheet shomordan/شمار shomâr- to count shamshir sword; ~-zadan to strike with a sword; د خمشیرزنی ~zani sword-play shenâkhtan/شناس shenâs- to know, recognize (10) shambalile fenugreek	صحیح صدا صدا صندلی صورت	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~-kar- dan to call out to sandali chair (1) surat face; case: در أنصورت در غير dar ân ~ in that case; در غير dar qayr-e in ~ otherwise; ~-bastan to appear, seem; to be possible zedd opposite zarb beat, beating; multiplica-
شما شماره شمال شمد شمردن شمشیر شناختن شناختن شنودن	sholuq crowded (24) shomâ you (pl.) shomâre number (12) shemâl north shamad thin white sheet shomordan/شمار shomâr- to count shamshir sword; ~zadan to strike with a sword; د خمت خمت خمت *zani sword-play shenâkhtan/شناس shenâs- to know, recognize (10) shambalile fenugreek shenudan = شنيدن	صحیح صدا صندلی صورت صورت ضرب	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~-kar- dan to call out to sandali chair (1) surat face; case: منافر منافر المنافر المن
شما شماره شمال شمد شمد شمردن شمشیر شناختن	shouq crowded (24) shomâ you (pl.) shomâre number (12) shemâl north shamad thin white sheet shomordan/شمار shomâr- to count shamshir sword; ~-zadan to strike with a sword; ختيدن ~zani sword-play shenâkhtan/شناس shenâs- to know, recognize (10) shambalile fenugreek shenudan = شنيدن shenaw- to hear	صحیح صدا صندلی صورت ضورت ضرب	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~-kar- dan to call out to sandali chair (1) surat face; case: مر أنصورت در غير dar ân ~ in that case; در غير dar qayr-e in ~ otherwise; ~-bastan to ap- pear, seem; to be possible zedd opposite zarb beat, beating; multiplica- tion; ~ dar multiplied by zarbe stroke (of a clock)
شلوغ شماره شمال شمد شمردن شمشیر شناختن شنبلیله شنیدن	shouq crowded (24) shomâ you (pl.) shomâre number (12) shemâl north shamad thin white sheet shomordan/شمار shomâr- to count shamshir sword; ~-zadan to strike with a sword; د ختانی *zani sword-play shenâkhtan/شناس shenâs- to know, recognize (10) shambalile fenugreek shenudan = شنیدن shenidan/شنیدن shenidan/شنیدن shenidan/شنیدن shenidan/شنیدن shenidan/شنیدن shenidan/شنیدن shenidan/شنیدن shenidan/	صحیح صدا صندلی صورت ضرب ضرب ضربه	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~-kar- dan to call out to sandali chair (1) surat face; case: رَ أَنصورت عُرِر أَنصورت لا أَنصورت الله مع أَنصورت الله
شما شماره شمال شمد شمردن شمشیر شناختن شناختن شنودن	sholuq crowded (24) shomâ you (pl.) shomâre number (12) shemâl north shamad thin white sheet shomordan/شمار shomâr- to count shamshir sword; ~-zadan to strike with a sword; ختمند *-zani sword-play shenâkhtan/شناس shenâs- to know, recognize (10) shambalile fenugreek shenudan = شنيدن shenidan/شنيدن shenidan/شنيدن	صحیح صدا صندلی صورت ضورت ضرب	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~-kar- dan to call out to sandali chair (1) surat face; case: حر أنصورت ct غير dar ân ~ in that case; مورت المورت المورت dar qayr-e in ~ otherwise; ~-bastan to appear, seem; to be possible zedd opposite zarb beat, beating; multiplication; ~ dar multiplied by zarbe stroke (of a clock) zarurat necessity zarih grating around a saint's
شلوغ شماره شمال شمد شمردن شمشیر شناختن شنبلیله شنیدن	sholuq crowded (24) shomâ you (pl.) shomâre number (12) shemâl north shamad thin white sheet shomordan/شمار shomâr- to count shamshir sword; ~-zadan to strike with a sword; ختمندن ~zani sword-play shenâkhtan/شناس shenâs- to know, recognize (10) shambalile fenugreek shenudan = شنيدن shenaw- to hear (6) shaw- pres. stem of شدن shu- pres. stem of	صحیح صدا صدا صندلی صورت ضرب ضرب ضربه ضرورت	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~-kar- dan to call out to sandali chair (1) surat face; case: حر غير أنصورت ct c غير dar ân ~ in that case; مورت otherwise; ~-bastan to appear, seem; to be possible zedd opposite zarb beat, beating; multiplication; ~ dar multiplied by zarbe stroke (of a clock) zarurat necessity zarih grating around a saint's tomb
شلوغ شماره شمال شمد شمردن شمشیر شناختن شنبلیله شنیدن	sholuq crowded (24) shomâ you (pl.) shomâre number (12) shemâl north shamad thin white sheet shomordan/شمار shomâr- to count shamshir sword; ~-zadan to strike with a sword; ختمند *-zani sword-play shenâkhtan/شناس shenâs- to know, recognize (10) shambalile fenugreek shenudan = شنيدن shenidan/شنيدن shenidan/شنيدن	صحیح صدا صندلی صورت ضرب ضرب ضربه	sahn mosque courtyard sahih correct sad hundred sedâ sound, voice (7); ~-kar- dan to call out to sandali chair (1) surat face; case: حر أنصورت ct غير dar ân ~ in that case; مورت المورت المورت dar qayr-e in ~ otherwise; ~-bastan to appear, seem; to be possible zedd opposite zarb beat, beating; multiplication; ~ dar multiplied by zarbe stroke (of a clock) zarurat necessity zarih grating around a saint's

-11	42		-1-1
طاق	tâq arch	عجب	ajab amazement; ~ âmadan
	tâlebi melon, cantaloupe		to be amazing
	tâvus peacock	عجيب	
طب	tebb medicine; طبى ~i		adad number, unit
- 1	medical	_	adas lentils
	tabaqe -qât class, stratum	_	adl justice
	atebbâ doctor اطبا atebbâ	عدر	ozr pardon; ~khâstan to beg
طبيعت	tabi'at nature; طبيعة ~an	.41	pardon
	naturally	_	arâ'ez pl of عريضه
–	tabl'i natural	عرض	
	tarz manner		humbly
طرف	taraf direction; ~e toward (25)	عرضه	arze display; ~-dâshtan to display (wares)
طشت	tasht tub	عريضه	arâ'ez عرائض arâ'ez
طفل	tefl pl اطفال atfâl child;		petition
U	ak poor kid طفلک	عزا	azâ mourning
طلا	talâ gold; طلائی jolden	عشاق	عاشق oshshâq pl of
طلب			ashâyeri tribal
•	dan to demand, ask for	عشق	eshq love
طور	atvâr manner اطوار tawr pl	عصب	a'sâb nerve اعصاب a'sâb
طوطي	tuti parrot	عصبأني	asabâni angry; عصبانيت ~yat
طوع	taw' willingness		anger
طول	taw' willingness tul length; ~-keshidan to last	عصر	asr late afternoon
		عضله	azale pl عضلات azalât mus-
ظاهر	zâher apparent; ~shodan to		cle
	appear; ~kardan to make	عضو	ozv pl اعضا a'zâ limb, part (of
	apparent		the body)
ظرف	zarf dish, container (15); ~-e	عقاب	oqâb eagle
	within	عقيده	aqâyed belief عقاید aqâyed
ظهر		علاج	elâj treatment ellat pl علل elal malady
	~ A.M.; بعد از ظهر ba'd az ~	علت	elal malady علل elal malady
	P.M.	علف	alaf fodder, grass, weed
		علم	elm learning, science
	âjez incapable	علوم	olum science; علوم سياسي ~-e siâsi political science
عادت	âdat pl عادات -dât custom,	•	siâsi political science
	habit		Ali Ali (5)
	âdel just	عليزاده	Alizâde Alizadeh (family
_	âdi ordinary		name)
عاشق	asheq pl عشاق oshshaq lover,	عمامه	amâme turban
	in love; ~e kas-i shodan to fall in love with s.o.	عمر	omr life, age
11.		عمل	amal pl اعمال a'mâl act,
عالم	âlam world		deed, job; ~-kardan be to act
عاميانه	âmmiâne common, colloquial	1	on
عبا	abâ sleeveless cloak	عمله	jât worker عملجات
عبور	obur-kardan to cross,	عمو	amu paternal uncle
	traverse	عمه	amme paternal aunt

عنكبوت	ankabut spider	فتنه	fetne sedition; فتنها نگيز ~an-
عورات	awrât private parts, genitals		giz seditious
عوض		فراخ	farâkh broad
0-5	(21)	فرار	farâr-kardan to run away
عهده	ohde responsibility; az ~ bar-	فراغت	farâqat leisure
v	âmadan to accomplish	فراً گرفتن	farâ-gereftan to seize, over-
عيب	ayb pl عيوب oyub fault, flaw	0 7 7	take
عيّنك	aynak eyeglasses; عينک	فراموش	farâmush forgetting; ~-kar-
	e dudi dark glasses دودي ~-e	_	dan to forget (13)
		فراموشكار	farâmushkâr forgetful
غارت	qârat plunder	فربه فرخ فرد	farbeh fat, fatted
غاز	qâz goose	فرخ	farrokh splendid
غبار	qobâr dust	فرد	afrâd individual افراد fard pl
غذا	qazâ food (16)	فردا	fardâ tomorrow, next day (10)
غرب		فرستادن	ferestadan/فرست ferest- to
غرش	qorresh growling		send, dispatch (22)
غرق	qarq-shodan to sink, drown;	فرسنگ	
	e khâb sound حواب حواب	فر <i>ش</i>	farsh-kardan to furnish
	asleep	فرصت	forsat opportunity
غرو <i>ب</i> :	qorub sunset	فرق	farq difference; ~kardan to
غريب * *	qarib strange, stranger qash fainting; ~kardan to		make a difference; ~-dâsh- tan bâ to be different from
غش	faint		(20)
غلت	qalt toss; ~-zadan to toss	فرما	فرمودن farmâ- pres. stem of
غلطيدن	qaltidan to toss and turn	فرما <i>ن</i>	فرمانبردار; farmân order
غم	qam grief; ~khordan to		~bardâr obedient
,	grieve (20); غمانگيز ~angiz	فرمايش	ât - فرمايشات farmâyesh pl
	tragic	•. :	order, command
غنيمت	qanimat good opportunity; ~-	فرمودن	farmudan/فرما farmâ- to or- der, command
	shomordan to make the most of, take advantage of an	فرنگی	
	opportunity		foru down; ~-afkandan to
غه	qu swan	فرو	throw down; ~-rikhtan to
غورباغه	qurbâqe frog		sink; ~-kardan to shove
غد	qayr other (-e, az than)		down; ~mandan to fail; to
J			be left behind
فارسى	fârsi Persian (language) (7)	فروختن	forukhtan/فروش forush- to
_	fâreq free, unencumbered; ~-	4	sell (11)
٦	shodan az to get free of	فرودگاه	forudgâh airport (22)
فاصله	fâsele the distance between	فروشگاه	forushgåh department store
	any two things; X ~-dâshtan	فروشنده	forushande seller, salesperson
	bâ to be X distant from (13)	فرهنگ	farhang culture
فاضل	fazel pl فضلا fozalâ learned man	فرياد	faryâd shout, cry; ~-zadan to shout
فايده	fayede pl فوايد favâyed ad-	فشار	feshâr pressure; ~ avordan
وميو	vantage, benefit (20)	,	be to apply pressure to

فشردن	feshar- to فشار/feshar-		~ az in-ke before (conj.)
	press		(22); -e ~ ago
	fazl learning	قبول	qabul-kardan to accept (24)
	fe'lan at present	قدر	qadr amount, extent (14);
	faqat only (24)	•	be ~i ke to such بقدری که
فقير فكر	faqir pl فقرا foqarâ poor	. *	an extent that (24)
فكر	fekr pl افكار afkâr thought, idea (19); ~-kardan to think	قدم	about
	(16)	قديم	qadim ancient
فلان	folân so-and-so	قديمي	qadimi old (1)
فلز	felez metal	قرار	qarâr stability; ~-dâshtan to
فلسفه	falsafe philosophy		be situated; ~-gereftan to
فلفل	felfel pepper		settle, be stable; ~-gozâshtan
فن	fonun skill, art فنون fann pl		to fix on a time, make a date;
	fenjân cup (15)		az ~e at the rate of
فنجان فور	-an imفوراً çan im-	قربا ن تاریخان	qorbân sacrifice
• •	mediately; فورى immedi-	قرقاول	qarqavol pheasant
	ate, urgent	قرمز	qermez red (4)
فوق	fawq-e above; فوقش ~-esh at	قرینه قشن <i>گ</i>	qarine twin, matching
•	e lisâns منوق ليسانس ;most	قشنگ	qashang pretty, beautiful
	master's degree	قصاب	qassâb butcher
فهرست	fehrest index	قصاب قصه قضیه	qesas story قصص qesas
فهم	fahm understanding; فهمیدن	قضيه	qaziye pl قضايا qazâyâ affair
	~idan to understand (10)	قطار	qatâr train
فيزيک	fizik physics	قفل	qofl lock
فيل	fil elephant	قلب	qalb heart
فيلسوف	falâsefe فلاسفه falâsefe philosopher	قفل ۗ قلب قلع و قمع	qal'oqam'-kardan to exter-
ة ا	film film, movie (20)	- lā	minate, wipe out qal'i tin
فيلم	fine fez	قلعی	
فينه	Ime 162	قلم قلیا <i>ن</i>	aqlâm pen (1) اقلام aqlâm pen
C: 11	câbal a calem sucrethur of		
قابل ذك	qâbel-e zekr worthy of mention	قنات	qanât canal
قادر	qâder capable (bar of)	قند	qand lump sugar
	-	قو <i>ى</i> ت	qavi strong, powerful (19)
قارچ قا ہ	qârch mushroom	قهوه	قهوهای ;(11) qahve coffee
قاش قاشق	qâsh horn of a saddle		rang coffee-colored, رنگ
قاسق	qâshoq spoon (15)		dark brown; قهو ه خانه ~khâne coffeehouse
قاطر	qâter mule	ة اذه	qiâfe face, mien
قاعده	qa'ede pl قواعد qavâ'ed rule;	قيافه	
	be ~ according to rule, as it should be	قير قيلوله -	qir tar
1 %		فيلوله	qaylule noontime nap
قبا	qabâ coat, greatcoat; قبادراز ~darâz wearing a long coat	فيمت	qaymat/qimat price, value
1 %	qabl before; گنا ~an before		(14)
قبل	an before مبار (adv.) (15); قبل از az be-	کار	Isân work ich thing (7)
	قبل از اینکه ;(10) fore (prep.)	ىر	kâr work, job; thing (7); ~- kardan to work, to do some-
	* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *		

	be ~ به کار بردن ;(7)		on hire
	bordan to use, employ (22)	كردن	-kon- "to do,"
كارت	kârt card; کارت اعتبار ~-e	,	forms compound verbs
•	e'tebâr credit card	كرفس	karafs celery
كارخانه	jât- كارخانجات kârkhâne pl	کرکس	karkas vulture
	factory	کرم	kerm worm; کرم شبتاب ~-e
کاردِ	kârd knife (15)	10	shabtâb firefly
کارگر	kârgar worker	کرہ	kare butter. I korre colt
	kâravân caravan	كثردم	kazhdom scorpion
كاسب	kâseb tradesman	کس'	kas person, one (13)
كاش.	kâsh-ki would کاشکی	كسآد	kasâd slow (market); کسادی
_	that		~i slump (in market)
کاشی	kâshi glazed tile	کش	kesh- pres. stem of کشیدن.
كاغذ	kâqaz paper; page	_	کشتن kosh- pres. stem of
كاغذبازى	kâqazbâzi paper-shuffling	کشت	kesht-shodan to be cultivated
كامل	kâmel complete, perfect;	كشتن	kêr- to plant.
	املا ~an completely, per-		kosh- to kill کش/kosh- to
	fectly (2)		(19)
کان		كشتي	keshti boat, ship keshmesh raisin keshvar country (1) keshidan to draw, pull (17)
كاوش		كشمش	keshmesh raisin
س.	scrape	كشور	keshvar country (1)
کاه	kâh straw; کاهگل ~gel mud-	کشیدن	keshidan to draw, pull (17)
	brick	کف	kaff palm; كف زمين ~-e za-
كاهو			min floor
كباب	د کان; kabâb grilled meat		kaftâr hyena
	dokk ân-e ~pazi grill shop	كفش	9 9
- (_	س.	kattâni sneakers
لبوتر	kabutar pigeon	کفن	kafan shroud
کبود کا	kabud bruised kapal buttocks	كلاس	kelâs class, classroom (11);
کیل	kot jacket		سر کلاس sar-e ~ in class, to class (17)
	ketâb book (1)	كلاسىك	
•	ketâbkhâne library (6)	عار <i>سیت</i> کلاغ	kalâq crow
	kattân linen	كلافه	
	kate plain boiled rice	کار ن کلانتری	
	kasâfat dirt, filth (23)	کلاه	kolâh hat
کٹافتکار کٹافتکار		عاره کل <i>فت</i>	kolfat maid. I koloft thick
كثيف	kasif dirty (23)		kalampich cabbage
کیف	kaj crooked	کلم پیچ کلمه	mât word کلمات
رجع	kojâ where (2)	گریات گریات	kolangi-kardan to crook
کجا کہا۔۔	kajâve camel litter	کلنگی کلید کلید	kelid key, switch (22)
كجاوه	kajave camer mer	کلیه	kolliye totality
کج کجاوه کجاوه کدام کدو کراوات	kodâm which? (8) kadu squash	ىيە /	kam little; ~-dâdan to give
ددو کارار ه	kadu squasn kerâvât necktie	تم	too little, to shortchange
دراوات ک	kerâye rent; ~dâdan to rent		(14): که که kam-kam little
كرايه	out; ~-kardan to rent, take		کم کم (14); kam-kam little by little; کمتر ~tar less; sel-
		075	

	dom	گچ	gach chalk, piece of chalk (1);
کمر	kamar waist, back	گارا	plaster gadâ beggar; نے گردن
• • •	kamarband belt	130	kardan to beg
	komak help; ~-kardan to help	گذاشتن	
كممايه	kammâye petty, with little capital	گذر	gozar passage; ~-kardan bar
كمند	kamand lasso; ~-andâkhtan		to pass by
	to throw a lasso; کمنداندازی ~andâzi lasso-throwing	گذراندن	(14)
کن	کردن kon- pres. stem of	كدشتن	gozashtan/گذر gozar- az to
كنار	kenâr side, edge		pass by, go beyond (12)
كنج	konj corner	كذشته	gozashte past, last (12)
كنجكاو	konjkâv curious	گراز	gorâz boar
کنگر	kangar cardoon	گران	gerân expensive (14); گران
کنیه	konve nickname, patronymic		kharidan to pay خریدن
كوبيدن	kubidan to tap, pound	_	too much
كوتآه	kutâh short, low (8)	<u>گ</u> ربه	gorbe cat
\S~8	kuchek little, small (1)	گرد	gard- pres. stem of گشتن.
کرچه	kuche lane		I gard dust. I gerd round,
کوچک کوچه کودک	kudak child		~e around (prep.), ~
تود ت کور	kur blind	_	âmadan to gather round
		گرداندن	gardândan to turn (trs.)
کوزه	kuze jug, pitcher	گردن	pardan neck; گردنبند
كوشش			necklace
	make an effort	گردو گردیدن	gerdu walnut
كوشيدن		گردیدن	gardidan to turn (int.); sub-
کوفتن کوکبه	kub- to pound کوب/kub-to		stitutes for shodan in com-
کو کبه	kawkabe entourage		pounds
کوه	kuh mountain (1)	ِگرسنه	gorosne hungry (24)
کوی	kuy lane	گرفتار	gereftâr taken, seized, busy
که	ke that (conj.) (9); when; for	گرفتن	gir- to take, گیر/gir-
كهنه	kohne old (3)	0 0	grasp, seize (6)
کی	kay when? (10). ¶ ki who (4)	گرگ	gorg wolf
كيلو	kilo kilogram	گرم	garm warm, hot (8). ¶ gram
كيلو گرم	kilogram kilogram	1	gram
كيلومتر'	kilometr kilometer	گرما	garmâ warmth, heat
کیف	kif bag; کیف دستی ~e dasti	گرنه	garna otherwise (23)
	handbag	گره	gereh knot; ~-zadan to tie a knot
گالش	gâlosh galoshes	گرهدار	gerehdâr knotted
گاو	gâv cow	گرىستن	geristan/گری gery- to cry
گاو مىش	gâvmish water buffalo	گ به	gerye weeping; ~-kardan to
گاه گاه	gâh time; گاه گاه gâh gâh		cry (20)
	from time to time; کاهی	گ ىختن	gorikhtan/گریز goriz- to flee
	occasionally, once	گ:	gaz yard (measure)
	<u>-</u> ·	حر	B (

گزاردن	gozârdan to put, place,	4 4	ceive, fool
. 4	submit	گوناگون گونه گیج گیر گیر افتادن	gunâgun various
كشاد	goshâd wide	_گونه	gune cheek
گشتن	gashtan/گرد gard- to turn	گیج	gij dizzy, spinning
_	(int.)	گیر	گرفتن gir- pres. stem of
گشنیز		گير افتادن	gir-oftâdan to get caught
گشادن	goshâ- to گشا/goshâ-	گیلاس	gilâs cherry
	open, untie	0 -	
گشودن	goshâ- to گشا/goshâ	لازم	lâzem necessary (16)
	open, widen	الاستبك	lâstik rubber
گفتگو	goftogu talk, dialogue	لاشه	lâshe corpse
گفتن	gu- to say (9) گو/gu-	لاشه ً لاعلاج	lâ'elâj with no alternative,
گل	gel mud, clay. I gol flower,	ت تاريخ	nothing to do but
•	rose; گلچين ~chin carefully,	لاغر	
	gingerly; گلدان ماân flower-	لأكيشت	lâkposht turtle
	rose; گلچین ~chin carefully, gingerly; گلدان ~dân flower- pot; گلدان ~khâne green- house; گل کلم ~kalam cauli-	لای	
	house; کل کلم -kalam caufi-	ال	lab lip
N		لب لبا <i>س</i> لپه لج	lebâs clothes (16)
کلابی	golâbi pear	له	lape split peas
كلكير	gelgir fender	بر مح	lajj obstinacy; -kardan to be
گلگیر گلو گلیم	galu throat	Ć.	obstinate
كليم	gelim flat-woven rug	لحظه	lahazât mo- لحظات
کم	gom lost; ~-shodan to get		ment
گمان	lost; ~-kardan to lose (15)	لرزيدن	larzidan to tremble, shake
ماں	gomân thought, notion; ~ kardan to think, consider	لطف	
گال	gonâh crime, sin	لكلك	laklak stork
گناه گنبد گنجشک گو گوارا گوچه	gombad dome	لوبيا	lubiâ string bean
کنبد گسته ک	gonjeshk sparrow	لو دادن	
التجسك	gu- pres. stem of گفتن	لوطى	
گا ا	govârâ palatable	له	leh mashed, squashed; ~
لوارا گ	gawje green-gage plum; گوجه		shodan to get mashed
روچه	وجعه ye farangi tomato خرنگی	ليتر	litr liter
كور	gur grave; کورستان ~estân	ليز	liz slippery; ~-khordan to
تور	graveyard		slip, slide
گەن	gawz walnut	ليسانس	lisâns bachelor's degree
گوساله	gusâle calf	ليكن	likan but, however
گوسة: ا	gusfand sheep	ليمو	limu lemon; ليموسبز
گه:	gush ear; ~dâdan to listen		lime
گوش	(10); ~kardan be to listen	ليوان	livân glass, tumbler (15)
	to		
گه شت	gusht meat	ما	mâ we, us
گوشواره	gushvâre earring	ماجرا	mâjarâ adventure (15)
گوشه	gushe corner	مادر	mâdar mother (5)
گهار	gul deception; ~khordan to	ماديان	mâdiân mare
0,5	be deceived; ~-zadan to de-	مار	mâr snake

٠			
مارمولک	mârmulak lizard		e defined period of محدوده
	mâst yoghurt		time
ماشين	mâshin car, automobile (21)	محصور	mahsur surrounded, enclosed
مال	mâl pl اموال amvâl property,	محض	be mahz-e as soon as
	possession; مال و منال ~ o	محفوظ	
	manâl possessions	محكم	mohkam tight, fast, hard
ماليخوليا	mâlikhulyâ melancholia	محل '	mahall place; محله ~e quarter
ماليدن	mâlidan to rub		of a city
مامور	ma'mur -in agent	محو	mahv obliteration; ~-shodan
ما <i>ن</i>	mân- pres. stem of ماندن.		to be obliterated
	مانستن mân- pres. stem of	محوطه	mohavvate enclosure
ماندن	mândan/مان mân- to remain,	محيط	mohit milieu
	stay (10); (neg.) to cease to	مخصوصا	makhsusan especially
	exist	مداد	medâd pencil
مانستن به	mânestan/مان mân- be to	مدت	moddat period of time (24)
1	resemble	مدرسه	madrase school; ~-raftan to
مانند	mânand-e like (prep.)		go to school, attend school
ماه	mâh moon, month (12)		(7)
ماهی	mâhi fish	مراجعه	morâje'e reference, consulta-
مايع	mâye' liquid		tion; ~-kardan be to consult
مايو	mâyo bathing suit	مراقب	morâqeb watchful
مايه	mâye capital, base	مرام مرتب	marâm goal
متاسف	mota'assef sorry; متاسفانه	مرتب	morattab constant, continual
	~âne regrettably	مرتبه	marâteb مراتب marâteb
متبرک	motabarrek blessed		degree; بمراتب be marâteb
متر	metr meter	_	much (with comparatives)
متروك	matruk abandoned	مرتكب	mortakeb-shodan to commit
متقاطع مثقال	motaqâte' intersecting		(crime, sin)
مثقال	mesqâl mithcal, a small	مرد	mard man (3)
	weight	مرداد	mordâd midsummer month
مثل	masal pl امثال amsâl likeness;	مردک	mardak fellow
	~an for example. I mesl-e	مردم	mardom people (11);
	اننکه (13); مثل اینکه ~- مثل	·	-shenâsi anthro مردمشناسی
	e in-ke as though (20)		pology
	majâl opportunity		mardomak pupil (of the eye)
مجاني	majâni free, gratis	مردن	mir- to die (14)
مجبور	majbur obliged (25)	مرز	marz border; مرزبان ~bân
مجله	majalle -lât magazine		border guard
مح	moch wrist, ankle	مرسوم	marsum customary
محافظ	mohâfez guardian, chaperone	مرض	-amrâz dis امراض maraz pl
محاكمه	mohâkeme judgment; ~-kar-		ease, illness
••	dan to sentence	مرع	morq chicken
	mohâl absurd, impossible	مر ک	o مرگ و میر ;marg death
•••	mohâvere discussion		mir death and dying
•	mahabbat affection, kindness	مرو ر	morur review
محدود	mahdud limited, delineated;	مريض	mariz sick (15)
	77	ď.	

مريم	maryam Maryam (5)		ma'lul diseased, afflected
مزرغه	maryam Maryam (5) mazra'e pl مزارع mazâre'	معلوم	ma'lum known, of course; ~-
•••	farm	10	shodan to become known,
مزمن	mozmen chronic		be found out
_		معماري	me'mâri architecture
	maze taste		ma'mulan usually (17)
مره	mozhe eyelash		
مس	mes copper	معنى	ma'nâ or ma'ni pl
مسافر	mosâfer traveler		ma'âni meaning
مسافرت	mosâferat travel; ~kardan to	معوج	mo'avvaj crooked
	travel	1 10.00	ma'vub faulty
مسأله	masa'el مسائل masâ'el	مغز	maqz brain
	problem	مفاوضه	mofâveze deliberation
مسحد	masjed mosque	مفصا	mofassal elaborate
۸.خ۸	maskhare derisive; ~kardan		mofid useful (3)
استحرن	az to mock	متابا	moqâbel opposite, facing
٥.	maslak career	مقابل	modaber opposite, racing
		مقام	maqâm -ât position
مسلم	mosallam certain mosht fist, fistful; ~-zadan to	مقايٰسه	moqâyese comparison; ~-kar-
مشت			dan to compare
	box; مشتزنی ~zani boxing	مقدار	meqdâr amount
مشترك	moshtarek in common	مقدمه	mât- مقدمات moqaddeme pl
مشتري	moshtari customer		preliminaries
	mashqul busy, occupied (20)	مقصود	maqsud intention, goal
	mashq practice; مشقى ~i for	مقوا	
٠	practice	مگر	mágar interrogative particle
1<.	moshkel difficult, problematic	سحر	(23); except; perhaps; ~ in-
			ke unless (19)
مشهور	mashhur famous, well-known		•
	(3); pl مشاهیر mashâhir	مکس	magas fly
	well-known person	محسحش	magaskosh fly-swatter
مصلحت		ملت	mellat pl ملل melal nation malakh locust, grasshopper malek pl ملوک moluk king.
	one's best interest, best	ملخ	malakh locust, grasshopper
	course of action, prudence;	ملک	moluk king. ملوک malek pl
	âmiz prudent مصلحتا ميز		J molk kingdom
مصيبت	mosibat catastrophe	ملی	melli national
مطلب	matlab pl مطالب matâleb		momken possible (16)
	matter (17)	مملكت	ممالک mamlakat pl
مطمثن	motma'enn sure, certain (19)	00	mamâlek country
	moti' obedient	• •	man I, me. ¶ man maund, 3
مطيع معاصر	mo'aser contemporary	من	kilograms
	ma'âlejat treatment	1	
معانجت		_	menâre minaret
معده	me'de stomach	-	montazer waiting, expecting
معذرت	ma'zarat apology; ~-khâstan	• •	mondarejât contents
4.	to apologize	منزل	manâzel sta- منازل manâzel sta-
معركه گير	ma'rekegir acrobat	-	tion, residence
معروف به معظم معلم	ma'ruf be known as/for (25)	منطقه	manâteq مناطق manâteq
معظم	mo'azzam magnificent		region
معلما	mo'allem -in teacher (4)	منع کرد <i>ن</i>	man'-kardan to forbid
I.		79	
	_		

منقل	manqal brazier	ناخن	nâkhon fingernail
مو	mu hair	نارنگی	nârangi tangerine
مۇثر	mo'asser influential	ناسزا	nâsazâ improper
موجود	mawjud existent, being	ناشناس	nâshenâs unfamiliar
مؤدب	mo'addab polite	ناشنا <i>س.</i> ناگها <i>ن</i>	nâgahân suddenly
مورچه	murche ant	نام	nâm name
موريانه	muriâne termite	نامزد	nâmzad fiancé(e)
موز	mawz banana	نامور	nâmvar renowned
موسير	musir shallot	نامه	nâme letter (8)
	musiqi music	ناميدن	nâmidan to name
-	mush mouse	نان	nân bread
موفق	movaffaq successful	ناهار	nâhâr midday meal (22)
موفقيت	movaffaqiyat success	نتيجه	natije pl نتايج natâyej result,
موقع	mavâqe' مواقع mavâqe	• •	conclusion; be ~ residan to
	time, opportunity (25)		come to a conclusion
مهر	mohr seal	نثر	nasr prose
	mehrbân kind	نخ	nakh thread; نخنما ~nomâ
مهم	mohemm important (11); pl		threadbare
1	at important affairs مهمات	نخست	nokhost first, prime; نخست
مهمان	mehmân guest		vazir prime minister ~ وز ير
مهندس	mohandes engineer; مهندسي	نخل	nakhl date palm
	∼i engineering		nokhud chickpea
مهيب	mahib frightful, terrifying	نخودسبز	nokhudsabz green peas
ميان	miân middle; ~e between,	نخير	nákhayr no (2)
	among	ندا	nedâ proclamation; ~dâdan
ميانه	miâne midst		to herald
میخ میخک	mikh nail, peg	نرم	narm soft
	mikhak cloves	نزديک	nazdik close, near (5); نزدیکی
ميدان			~i vicinity; ~-budan (+
	city square		subj.) to be on the verge of
میر میز میگو میل	مردن mir- pres. stem of		(24)
ميز	miz table, desk (1)	ىسېت	nesbat relationship; نسبت به be relative to (25)
ميكو	maygu shrimp	نسبة	
ميل	mayl inclination; ~-dâshtan	نشان	
•.	to be inclined maymun monkey	رسان	dâdan to show (14); نشانی
ميمون	maymun monkey		∼i description, address
ميوه	mive -jât fruit (9)	نشاندن	neshândan to make sit down:
. 11.	A 111	Q =	quench; quell (24)
نااميد	nâomid despondent, hopeless	نشانه	neshâne target; ~gereftan to
ناپدید	nâpadid invisible; ~-shodan		take aim at
1.	to disappear (19)	نشستن	neshin- to نشين/neshin-
ناجور ناچار	nâjur inappropriate, wrong,	•	sit; نشسته بودن neshaste bu-
.1-1:	out of place		dan to be seated, to be sitting
ناچار	nâchâr helpless; بناچار be ~		(18)
	there was nothing to do but	نشيمن	neshiman home, nest

نصف	nesf half (12)		(15)
نظر	nazar sight, view; be ~ âma-	نوک	nuk beak
	dan to seem (24); ~-kardan	نوكر	nawkar manservant
	to gaze; بنظر be ~-e in the	نومیدی	nawmidi hopelessness
	opinion of	نه	na no. آ ناست nana nei-
نعره	na're shout; ~-zadan to cry		thernor. ¶ neh- pres. stem
	out		of نهادن. ¶ noh nine
نعلين	na'layn sandals	نهادن	neh- to place, put
	na'nâ' mint	نهارِ	nahâr wasting away
	naft oil, kerosene	نهنگ	nahang alligator, crocodile
نفر	nafar person (12)	نیز نیزه	-niz too, also
نفس	nafas breath; ~keshidan to	نيزه	nayze spear; ~andâkhtan to
	breathe		نيزه اندازي;throw a spear
نقد	naqd cash		~andâzi spear-throwing
نقره	nogre silver	نيست	nist is not
نقطه	noqat dot, point نقط noqat dot,	نيستي	nisti nonexistence
نقل	naql narration; ~-kardan to	نیک	nik = نيکو
.16	relate, narrate	نيكمحضر	nikmahzar of good counsel
نگاشتن	negâshtan/نگار negâr- to re-	نيكو	niku good, well
10.	cord	نيم	nim half (12)
نگأه		نيمكت	nimkat bench
:1 e.	to look (at) (11)		
نگران نگه	negarân worried negah = نگاه; ~-dâshtan to	و	-o/va- and
ىدە	stop, hold, keep (22)	واجب وارد	vâjeb urgent, necessary
نگهداری	negahdâri-shodan to be kept	وارد	
نماز	namâz ritual prayer; نماز		enter (16)
تمار	دی را با المسامی	وارفتن	vâ-raftan to collapse
ald.;	nomâyân apparent, visible	واسوختن	vâ-sukhtan to burn out vâqe'an really, actually
نمک	namak salt		
نمودن نمودن	nemudan/نیا nemâ- to seem,	واقعه	vaqaye' وقايع vaqaye' event, occurrence (18)
مودن	appear; to represent (19)		
نمونه	nemune example, sample (14)	وأقف	vâqef aware (az of)
نه	naw new (1)	وای	vây exclamation of woe (8)
ئوازش	navâzesh caress; ~- kardan to	وجب	vajab handspan
الراوس	caress; ~gar caressing	وجود	vojud existence; body; ~- dâshtan to exist
نو ىت	nawbat turn		
ر. نوحه	nawhe wailing, lamentation;	وحشت	vahshat terror; وحشت برم bar-am dâsht I was داشت
	khândan toسنوحه خواندن		gripped by terror; ~-kardan/
	wail		dâshtan az to be terrified by
نود	navad ninety	وديعت	vadi'at deposit for
نور	nur light	رديد	safekeeping
نوزده	nuzdah nineteen	وررفتن	var-raftan be to tinker, fiddle
نوشتن	nevis- to نویس/neveshtan	ررز س	with
	write (7)	ورود	vorud entrance
نوع	anvâ' sort, kind انواع naw' pl	وزارت وزارت	vezârat ministry; وزارتخانه
•	_	01	333

	~khâne ministry	هفده	hivdah seventeen
وزرا	vozarâ pl of وزير	ھل	hel cardamom
وزش	vazesh blowing (of the wind)	هلو	holu peach
وزيدن	vazidan to blow (wind)	هم	ham each other; -ham too,
وزير	vozarâ minister, وزرا vozarâ	1	also (6); ham- same; همان
	vizier		∼ân that very, that same (11);
وسط	vasat middle		anjâ right there هما نجا
وسيع وسيله	vasi' wide, broad, expansive		antawr just ممانطور ;(15)
وسيله	vasâyel وسایل vasâyel		like that; هما نطور که ~ân -
	means		tawrke just as (16); همين
وصله	vasle patch		~in this very, this same (11);
وضع	awzâ' situation اوضاع vaz' pl		- chonân nonethe- less
وصله وضع وعده	va'de promise		
وفات	vafât death	همچو همدیگر	hamcho just like
وقت	awqât time اوقات vaqt pl	همديحر	hamdigar each other (6)
	ike when وقتى كه ;(13)	همراه	hamrâh companion; ~e along with (16)
	dar ~ at once در وقت ;(11)	همسال	hamsâl contemporary, of the
ول	vel loose; ~kardan to let go,	المسان	same age
	turn loose	همسانه	
ولي	váli but (2)	2 000	neighbor (13)
وهله	vahle instance	ه	hamsar spouse
وي	vay (archaic and literary) he,	همشيره	•
	she		hamkelâsi classmate
		_	hame all, every; همه چيز
هجده			~chiz everything (8)
هجری		همىشگى	hamishegi never-ending
هجوم	hojum attack; ~- avordan be	همیشه	
•	to attack	همين	
هدف	0 . 0	0	همينجا ~jâ right here;
هر	har every, each (8); هرچند		همینکه ~ke as soon as;
	~chand however (20) much;		ا tawr just so- همينطور
	هرچه ~che whatever (20); ~kojâ wherever (20);	هندوانه	hendavâne watermelon
	هر که درکه ۸۴۰ wh e whoever (20);	هنر	honar art, skill; منرهای زیبا ~~
	«kodâm each one هركدام		ye zibâ fine arts; هنرمند
	(8); هروقت ~vaqt whenever		~mand artful, skillful,
	(20)		artisan
هر گز	hargez (+ neg.) never	هنگام	hangâm time, moment; ~-e at
هزار	hezâr, hazâr thousand	_	the time of
هزاريا	hazârpâ centipede	هنوز	hanuz still, yet (13)
	hasti existence	هوا	havâ air, atmosphere, weather
هستی هشت	hasht eight	1 1	(21)
هشتاد	hashtâd eighty	هواپيما	havâpaymâ airplane (22)
هفت	haft seven; هفت تير ~tir pistol	هوس هول شدن	havas passion, fancy
هفتاد	haftâd seventy	هول شدن	hawl-shodan to be terrified,
هفته	hafte week (12)		startled, flustered
	` '		

هوو havu relationship of a second wife to the first in a polygamous marriage havij carrot هويج hayâhu uproar, ado

هیچکس ;(8) hich no, nothing «kas nobody (13); هیچوقت «vaqt ever, (+ neg.) never (11)

یا yâ or (9) یافتن yâb- pres. stem of یاب yâd memory (19); be ~ âvordan to recall; یادم âmad I remembered (19); سادم رفت ~am raft I forgot (19); ~dâdan to teach; ~gereftan to learn (19)

yârabb O Lord!
yâzdah eleven
yâftan/باب yâb- to find (21)
yakh ice (15)
yakhchâl refrigerator
ya'ni i.e., that is, that means
yaqmâ pillage, plunder
پغها
yaqe collar
yek one (adj.); پکباره *bâre
all at once; پکباره *chigar
each other (6); سکسه *sare
one-way; سکسه *vaqt all at
once; پکسه *vaqt all at
once; پکسه *vi one (pronoun)

Index

-â (verbal adjective) §65.2 -che (diminutive suffix) §77 -â (vocative enclitic) §81 -chi (agent suffix) §65.4(2) Academic fields, p. 143 Chist §19 -âd (archaic optative) §80 Cho(n) §85 Âdam (impersonal pronoun) §58 Circumpositions §83 Adjectives, abstraction of §66; attribu-Clauses, absolute §53; relative §40 Clothing, articles of, p. 113 tive §8.1, §14; comparative §31; comparison of §31; compounds §67; Compounds. See Nouns, Verbs demonstrative §9, §25(c); demon-Conditional types §61, §87 strative, with d §79; in ane §68; Conjunctions, concessive §55.2(b): infinitival §74; order of §14.2, §6; coordinating §11; ke, temporal uses superlative §31.3; with nonspecific of §57; provision §55.2(b); with noun §8.1 comparatives §31.1, §31.6; tâ Adverbs §12; in -âne §68; in the ezâfe Appendix A; with ezâfe §14.3 §14.4 Consonants, p. xiv Agar, ellipsis of §61.3 Coordination §11 -ak (diminutive suffix) §77 Copulas. See Verbs. Counting words §38.1 $-\hat{a}m > -um$ (colloquial phonological change) §92.2 $-\hat{a}n > -un$ (colloquial phonological -d-, euphonic §79 change) §92.1 Dâshtan §27, §61.2 -ân (manner participle) §65.3 Dative usages §82 -ân (plural suffix) §32.1 Days of the week, Appendix B -ande (agent participle) §65.1 Diminutives §77 -andegi (abstraction of agent participle) §66 \hat{e} (archaic vowel) §78 -e. See ezâfe. -âne (manner suffix) §68 Animals, p. 176 Ellipsis of agar §61.3, of parallel -ât (plural suffix) §32.2 verbs §33 Enclitics, $-\hat{a}$ §81; -i §4, §5; indefinite be(d)- (preposition) §79 §4.2; relative -ke §40; emphasizing be-imperative prefix §45; subjunctive -ke §98; nonspecific -i §4; -o §11; marker §48; perfective aspect markpronominal §36, §99; -râ §25, §82, er §84 §97 bi- (prefix) §67 -esh (verbal noun formative) §73 Body, parts of, p. 169 Ezâfe, noun-adjective §14; possessive Budan, archaic present §88 §21; with geographical names

§21.3(c)

Che §30

§21.3(b); with proper names

INDEX

Family relationships, p. 95 Foodstuffs, p. 102

-(g)âne (manner suffix) \$68 -gar (agent suffix) \$65.4 Gender \$3 -(g)i (abstracting suffix) \$66 Glides, p. xiii, \$78

-hâ (plural suffix) §7, §32 Hami §86 Hamze, p. xxx(5)

 -i: abstracting suffix §66; nonspecific enclitic §4.2, §5; relative antecedent marker §40; classical past habitual suffix §87

Idioms: "as... as" §66; "as...as possible" §70; "the more... the more" §69; "scarcely" §41.1(c); "to dislike" §50.1; "to get sleepy" §50.3; "to have a good time" §50.2; "to like" §50.1

Impersonals §50, §52, §58
-in (plural suffix) §32.3
Infinitives. See Verbs.
Interrogative sentences §13
Interrogatives with mágar §69

-jât (plural suffix) §32

Kodâm §30

-kâr §67Ke, relative §40; emphasizing §98; temporal §57Kist §19

Ma- (negative imperative prefix) §80
Mágar §69
Materials, p. 142
mí- (progressive prefix) §27, §35
Mishaps, p. 153
Months of the year, Appendix B
Moods. See Verbs, indicative, infinitive, imperative, irrealis, subjunctive

ná- (negative prefix) §45
nâ- (negative prefix) §74
Nouns, abstraction of §66; agent §65; compounds §67; diminutive §77; nonspecific plural §8; nonspecific, as direct objects §25(f); plurals §32; predicate §15; specific plural §7; state §4; vocative §20, §81; with numbers §38.1
Numbers, cardinal §38; ordinal §39
Numerical expressions §44

ô (archaic vowel) §78
 -om(in) (ordinal suffix) §39
 Order, adjectival §6; word §1, p. 38
 note 2

Participial absolute §53
Participles, past §28; other §65
Plural suffixes §7, §32
Possession §21; pronominal §33, §36
Prefixes: bé- §48, §84; bi- §67; hami§86; má- §80; mí- §27, §35; ná- §45
Prepositions §21.3(a), §96; tâ Appendix A; colloquial §100; with comparatives §31.1; as classical postposition §83

Pronouns, -d- with \$79; demonstrative \$9; demonstrative as direct objects \$25(b); enclitic \$36, \$82, \$99; independent \$16; personal, as direct objects \$25(b); possessive \$33; reflexive \$25(e), \$37; relative, non-restrictive \$40.3; relative, restrictive \$40; with verbs \$24

Proper names as direct objects §25(a)

 -râ specific direct-object marker §25; dative/oblique marker §82
 Relative clauses §40
 Reported speech §54
 Resumptive sentences §46

Sense perception, verbs of §54 State, absolute §4.1; nonspecific §4.2

Stress, word p. xvii; sentence §2
Suffix, nonspecific plural §8; specific plural §7
Sufficient A \$65.20, al. \$770, \$2.20.1

Suffixes: -â §65.2; -ak §77; -ân §32.1, §65.3; -ande §65.1; -âne §68; -ât §32.2; -che §77; -chi §65.4(2); -esh §73; -gar §65.4; -jât §32; -hâ §7, §32; -i §66; -in §32.3; -kâr §67; -om §39; plural §32; -tar §31; -un §32.3 Syllabification, p. xvi

Tanvin, p. xxix(4)
-tar (comparative suffix) §31
-tarin (superlative suffix) §31
Tashdid, p. xxx(6)
Te-tammat (5), p. xxix(3)
Time, Appendix B; counting §38.1; temporal duration §63
Topic-comment sentences §46
Travel vocabulary, p. 161

-un (plural suffix) §32.3

Verbs, agreement with plural subjects §10; budan, archaic present stem §88; classical negative imperative §80; colloquial inflections §94; colloquial present and past progressive §96; colloquial stems §95; compound §26, §47; conditional §61; continuous §27; continuous and progressive §96; copulas, archaic negative §89; copulas, colloquial §93; copulas, present §17, §93; factitive §72; future tense §43; gnomic past §91; habitual §27; imperative

w§45; impersonal §52; impersonal constructions §50; infinitival adjectives §74; infinitives §23; infinitives. back-formed §56; infinitives, denominative §56; infinitives, uses of §60; irrealis §61; long copulas §22: negative §24.2; negative copulas §18; optative §48; participles §65: passive §75; past absolute §24; past habitual §87; past perfect narrative §42; past stem §24; past subjunctive §55; perfective aspect §84; present indicative §34; present perfect §29: present perfect, archaic §90; present stem §34; present subjunctive §48; remote past absolute §41; reported speech and sense perception §54; specific direct objects §25; subjunctive, adjectival clauses §59; subjunctive, adverbial clauses §64; subjunctive, complementary §49; subjunctive, uses of §49, §51, §59, §64; verbal nouns §73

Vocative §20, §81

Weights and measures, p. 81; as counting words §38.2

- -y- §24.2(b), §45.1(c), §45.4, §65
- -(y)â (vocative enclitic) §81; (verbal adjective) §65.2
- -(y)ân (plural suffix) §32.1; (manner participle) §65.3
- -(y)ande (agent participle) §65.1
- -(y)âne (manner suffix) §68
- -(y)esh (verbal noun formative) §73



An Introduction to Persian 4th Revised Edition by W.M. Thackston

An Introduction to Persian is an introduction on the elementary level to the modern Persian language. Each lesson is provided with specific exercises and drills for the major grammatical and syntactical points introduced therein. The vocabulary included at the end of each lesson are intended for active acquisition. Specialized supplementary vocabulary lists are also scattered throughout the book. In part two the outstanding differences between modern and classical usage are given. In part three the distinguishing features of ordinary colloquial Persian are given.

This long-awaited text once more demonstrates ... Thackston's mastery over the Persian language and its intricacies, both in its modern and classical form. Thackston makes Persian grammar clear and understandable. His emphasis is on the spoken and written language in today's Iran, on the Persian which is taught in schools and spoken and understood by all the different ethnic groups in Iran.... This new edition is a major contribution for those involved in teaching the Persian language. It also makes the learning of Persian more accessible and enjoyable.

- Haleh Esfandiari, Princeton University. MESA Bulletin

Thackston's new edition—which it must be said is difficult to fault. It is both meticulous and systematic, without being idiosyncratic. ... a number of points that are a common source of error are well treated ... makes it the most useful for serious students of Persian as it is used outside Iran.

- Brian Spooner, University of Pennsylvania. AACAR Bulletin

... when compared with the very uneven and error-riddled courses otherwise available, this is probably the best for the serious student.

- John R. Perry, University Of Chicago. JAOS

When compared with Lambton's Persian Grammar, the only other important teaching grammar in print, Thackston's book meets current student needs more adequately.

- William Hanaway, University of Pennsylvania BRISMES Journal

Wheeler M. Thackston is Professor of Persian and other Near East Languages at Harvard University.

